This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

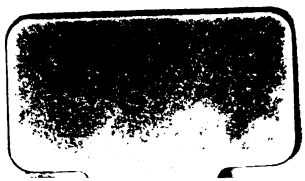
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

600094085W



MATERIALS FOR TRANSLATING

FROM

ENGLISH INTO GERMAN.

By A. HEIMANN, Ph. D.,

PROFESSOR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE,
IN UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, LONDON.

LONDON:
DAVID NUTT, 270, STRAND.

M.DCCC.LI.

303. c. 75.

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

I.

FIFTY LESSONS ON THE ELEMENTS OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE. 5*s.*

II.

GRAMMAR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE. 6*s.* (Also under the Title: WENDEBORN'S GERMAN GRAMMAR, 11th Edition, entirely remodelled).

III.

ERMELER'S DEUTSCHES LESEBUCH, adapted to the English Student. 5*s.*

IV.

THE FIRST GERMAN READING BOOK for English Children and Beginners. 4*s.*

V.

HENRY TAYLOR'S PHILIP VAN ARTEVELDE, Part I., translated into German Verse. 4*s.* 6*d.*

LONDON:
PRINTED BY J. WERTHEIMER AND CO.,
CIRCUS PLACE, FINSBURY CIRCUS.

PREFACE.

A PROFICIENT scholar in German ought to be able to do four things well: first of all, to explain the whole structure of the language; next, to read German books; then, to speak correctly and with some fluency; and finally, to write a letter, or to translate a part of an English book into German, if possible at sight, without the assistance of Dictionary and Grammar. The greatest number of pupils master the three first points, but very few succeed in the last. It is acknowledged to be the most difficult of all. Now, in order to smooth the way towards acquiring it, I have undertaken this volume. It contains a variety of fragments, taken from good prose-writers, with notes, which both explain grammatical difficulties, and give a complete vocabulary, since it has been found, that small Dictionaries afford but insufficient aid, and the large ones, on account of the great number of meanings mentioned under one word, often impede and puzzle the student instead of guiding him.

For those who occasionally perceive, that they are unacquainted with certain principles of the German language, a course of Exercises on the chief parts of

Grammar has been given as an Introduction; and students are advised, as soon as they feel embarrassed in the application of a rule, to translate that chapter of the Introduction, which refers to it.

I am convinced that those who have gone through a good part of this book, will gain a facility in expression, which must ultimately not only make the task of writing a composition or rendering an English piece into German very easy, but also contribute to a greater proficiency in speaking, and to a better understanding of the classical writers of Germany.

A. H.

University College, London,
April, 1851.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

		PAGE.
EXERCISES ON THE CHIEF RULES OF GRAMMAR		1—100
CHAP. I.	On the arrangement of Words in a Sentence	1
II.	On the Articles	
III.	On the Declension of Substantives	15
IV.	On the Declenson of Nouns Proper	16—18
V.	On the Declension of Adjectives	18—25
VI.	On the Declension of Adjectives in the Comparative and Superlative.	26—28
VII.	On Numbers	28—33
VIII.	On Pronouns	33—39
IX.	On Verbs Auxiliary, Active, Passive, Neuter, and Reflective	39—46
X.	On Compounded Verbs	46—50
XI.	On Verbs of Mood	50—54
XII.	On the Indicative and Subjunctive	55—62
XIII.	On the Imperative	63—66
XIV.	On the Infinitive	66—69
XV.	On the Participles	69—75
XVI.	On Verbs construed with a Genitive or Dative Case	75—73
XVII.	On Adverbs	79—84
XVIII.	On Prepositions	84—92
XIX.	On Conjunctions	92—98
XX.	On Interpunctions	98—100

PART II.

TRANSLATION OF CONNECTED PIECES		101—210
I.	The Desolation of Tyranny (*Lane, Notes to Arabian Nights*)	101—102
II.	Perfection (*Colton, Lacon*)	102—103
III.	Vicar of Wakefield (*Washington Irving*)	103—104
IV.	A Tale of Terror (*Half Hours*)	105—109

		PAGE.
V.	Desire of Knowledge (*Boswell*)	110—111
VI.	The Sack of Magdeburg (*Half Hours*)	111—121
VII.	Letter to a Friend	121
VIII.	Letter to a Friend	122
IX.	Griseldis (*Letters from the Baltic*)	123—128
X.	Character of Oliver Goldsmith (*Washington Irving*)	128—130
XI.	Goldsmith's Parentage and Birthplace (*Washington Irving*)	130—132
XII.	Goldsmith's Father (*Washington Irving*)	132—134
XIII.	Goldsmith Rejected by the Bishop (*Washington Irving*)	134—135
XIV.	Goldsmith's Letter to his Mother	135—142
XV.	Letter to a Friend	142
XVI.	Wolves in Courland (*Letters from the Baltic*)	143—147
XVII.	The Spectator's Introduction (*Addison*)	147—153
XVIII.	The Vanity of a Great Man (*Half Hours*)	153—154
XIX.	On Popular Superstition (*Addison*)	154—159
XX	On Stories of Ghosts (*Addison*)	159—164
XXI.	Letter to a Friend	164—165
XXII.	Paoli and Napoleon (*Lockhart*)	166—168
XXIII.	Napoleon at Toulon (*Lockhart*)	168—177
XXIV.	Josephine de Beauharnois (*Lockhart*)	177—179
XXV.	The Battles of the Pyramids and of Aboukir (*Lockhart*)	179—185
XXVI.	The Voyage (*Washinyton Irving*)	185—188
XXVII.	Character of Lorenzo de' Medici (*Roscoe*)	188—191
XXVIII.	Influence of Liberty on the Florentines (*Roscoe*)	191—193
XXIX.	On Dr. Johnson's Lives of the Poets (*Roscoe*)	193—194
XXX.	Study of Ancient Literature in Italy (*Roscoe*)	194—195
XXXI.	Character of the Earl of Strafford (*Macaulay*)	195—196
XXXII.	Christian, King of Denmark and Sweden, in Italy (*Roscoe*)	196—198
XXXIII.	William, Prince of Orange (*Macaulay*)	198—200
XXXIV.	Generosity of Louis the Fourteenth (*Macaulay*)	201—204
XXXV.	Sir Robert Walpole's Reply to Sir John St. Aubin's Speech for Repealing the Septennial Act	205—207
XXXVI	On Sincerity (*Tillotson*)	208—210

MATERIALS

FOR

TRANSLATING FROM ENGLISH INTO GERMAN.

PART I.

EXERCISES ON THE CHIEF RULES OF GRAMMAR.

I. On the Arrangement of Words.

1. The sons[a] of Junius Brutus had conspired[b] against[c] the republic[d] of Rome[e]; their father, therefore[f], punished[g] them very severely[h], for[i] he ordered[j] them to be beheaded[k] in spite[l] of the intercession[m] of the Romans[n] in their favour.[o]

2. There are[a] few writers[b], for[c] whom the reader feels[d] such personal[e] kindness[f] as for Oliver Goldsmith.

3. He had no[a] intention[b] of leaving[c] his children money,

---

1. [a] Sohn (*pl.* Söhne). [b] ſich verſchwören, and the Participle stands at the end of the sentence. [c] gegen with Acc. [d] Freiſtaat, *m.* [e] Rom. [f] daher; and mark, the Adverb can never stand between the Subject and the Verb. [g] beſtrafen. [h] ſtrenge. [i] denn, a conjunction which has no influence on the construction of the sentence. [j] laſſen, which is always followed by an infinite act. [k] *say*, the head to be cut off to them ihnen den Kopf abſchlagen. [l] ungeachtet with Gen. [m] Fürbitte, *f.* [n] Römer. [o] *say*, to their favour zu ihren Gunſten.

2. [a] es giebt. [b] Schriftſteller. [c] für with Acc. [d] mark, in a relative sentence the Verb stands last. [e] perſönlich. [f] Wohlwollen, *n.*

3. [a] kein, keine, kein. [b] Abſicht, *f.* [c] *say*, to leave zu hinterlaſſen, and mark, the Infin. stands at the end of the sentence.

for that was dross[d]; he resolved[e] they should[f] have learning[g]; for learning, he used[h] to observe[i], was better than silver or gold.

4. The same ambition[a] that actuates[b] a monarch[c] at[d] the head[e] of his army[f], influenced[g] my father at the head[h] of his table.

5. For this purpose[a] he undertook[b] to instruct[c] us himself, and took[d] as much[e] care[f] to form[g] our morals[h] as[i] to improve[j] our understanding.[k]

6. We were perfectly[a] instructed in the art[b] of giving away[c] thousands before[d] we were taught[e] the necessary[f] qualification[g] of getting[h] a farthing.[i]

7. It was the pride[a] and boast[b] of Elizabeth Delap, when[c] nearly[d] ninety years of age[e], that she was the first that had put[f] a book into Goldsmith's hands.

8. At[a] the return[b] of peace[c] he resumed[d] the ferule[e] and gave up[f] the sword.[g]

---

[d] Schlacke, *f.* [e] beſchließen. [f] ſollen. [g] Kenntniß, *f.*, and take the plural —e. [h] pflegen, and observe, in small inserted sentences the Verb precedes the Nom. [i] bemerken.

4. [a] Ehrgeiz, *m.* [b] antreiben. [c] König. [d] an with Dat, [e] Spitze, *f.* [f] Heer, *n.* (Gen.—es). [g] leiten. [h] Ehrenplatz, *m.* (Gen.—es).

5. [a] deßhalb. [b] unternehmen, and mark to insert *it* es after *undertook*. [c] unterrichten. [d] ſich geben. [e] eben ſo viel. [f] Mühe, *f.* [g] verbeſſern. [h] Sitte, *f.* [i] als. [j] bilden. [k] Verſtand, *m.*

6. [a] vollkommen. [b] Kunſt, *f.* [c] fortgeben. [d] *before* is either a Preposition, and then it is in German vor, or an Adverb, and then it is vorher, or, as here, a Conjunction, the French *avant que*, and then it is ehe daß. This daß after ehe, however, is generally omitted; but he, implying still a relative Conjunction, requires the Verb to stand at the end of the sentence. [e] *say*, we learned lernen. [f] nöthig. [g] Tüchtigkeit. [h] erwerben. [i] Heller, *m.*

7. [a] Stolz, *m.* [b] Ruhm, *m.* [c] als, and *say*, when she was. [d] faſt. [e] *say*, old alt. [f] geben.

8. [a] bei with Dat. [b] Rückkehr, *f.* [c] Friede, *m.* (G. —ns), and mark, when an adverbial expression begins, the Verb precedes the Nominative. [d] wiederergreifen. [e] Ruthe, *f.* [f] aufgeben. [g] Schwert, *n.*

9. Whilst[a] Scipio destroyed[b] Carthage[c], Mummius conquered[d] Corinth.

10. Although[a] the Carthaginians[b] were practised[c] sailors[d], they were conquered[e] by the Romans at[f] sea.[g]

11. If we come into a more contracted[a] assembly[b] of[c] men[d] and women, the talk[e] generally[f] runs[g] upon[h] the weather[i], the fashions[j], news[k], and the like[l] public[m] topics.[n]

12. He[a] only knows[b] how[c] to conquer[d], said Lorenzo de Medici, who knows how to forgive.[e]

13. Crœsus said to[a] Solon: I have a great desire[b] of asking[c] thee, whom[d] thou of[e] all men that thou knowest[f] thinkest[g] to be the happiest.[h]

14. Though the faculties[a] of the human[b] race[c] may[d]

---

9. [a] wâhrend, and mark, here are two sentences: the first beginning with *whilst* is relative, and requires the Verb to stand last; in reference to the second which begins with Mummius, it is an adverbial expression, and therefore the Verb in the second must precede the Nominative. Or in other words, when the subordinate sentence precedes, the chief sentence is headed by the Verb. [b] zerſtören. [c] Carthago. [d] erobern.

10. [a] obgleich, in Latin *quamquam*, in French *quoique*, therefore a relative conjunction. [b] Karthager. [c] geübt. [d] Matroſe, *m.* (*pl.*—n). [e] beſiegen, and mark, when the subordinate sentence, introduced by obgleich, precedes, the chief sentence must contain the adverb doch *still*. [f] zu with Dat. [g] See, *f.*, and add the Defin. Article.

11. [a] abgeſchloſſen. [b] Geſellſchaft. [c] von with Dat., and observe, the English Genitive is expressed by von generally in Substantives of the plural number, when used without Adjective or Article. [d] Mann (*pl.* Männer). [e] Geſpräch, *n.* [f] gewöhnlich. [g] ſich verbreiten. [h] über with Acc. [i] Wetter, *n.* [j] Mode, *f.* [k] Neuigkeit. [l] the like dergleichen. [m] allgemein. [n] Ding, *n.* (*pl.*—e).

12. [a] derjenige. [b] verſtehen. [c] *how* is not translated. [d] ſiegen. [e] vergeben.

13. [a] zu. [b] Wunſch, *m.* [c] fragen. [d] wer. [e] von. [f] kennen. [g] to think to be halten für. [h] glücklich.

14. [a] Fähigkeit. [b] menſchlich. [c] Geſchlecht, *n.* (G. —es). [d] mögen.

remain[e] torpid[f] for generations[g], when[h] once roused[i] into action[j], they cannot speedily[k] be lulled[l] again into inactivity[m] and repose.[a]

15. When the great hord[a] of Kalmucs[b] thought[c] themselves oppressed[d] by[e] the Russian[f] sway[g], they broke up[h], and removed[i] to Chinese[j] Tartary[k] in[l] 1771, where they still now are roaming about.[m]

16. All the men of the revolution[a] Napoleon at last[b] pressed[c] into the back-ground.[d]

17. If it were possible[a] that our hearts[b] possessed[c] all good qualities[d] excepted[e] humility[f], they would, without[g] this virtue[h], have no real[i] merit[j].

18. In order[a] to see the world[b], Solon travelled[c] in foreign countries[d], and he came[e] to[f] Egypt[g] to[h] Amasis, and then to Sardes to Crœsus.

---

[e] bleiben. [f] erſtarrt. [g] Zeitalter hindurch. [h] ſobald, and mark, the sentence beginning with *when* is an adverbial expression like the first which begins with *though*; now, two adverbs cannot head a sentence, therefore the second, beginning with *when*, must stand after the Nominative of the chief sentence, which is introduced by *they cannot*. [i] erwecken. [j] *say*, to the acting zum Handeln. [k] ſchnell. [l] einſchläfern. [m] Unthätigkeit, *f.* [n] Ruhe, *f.*

15. [a] Horde, *f.* [b] Kalmuck (G. —en). [c] halten für. [d] unterdrücken. [e] durch with Acc. [f] ruſſiſch. [g] Herrſchaft. [h] aufbrechen. [i] ziehen. [j] chineſiſch. [k] Tartarei, *f.*, and observe, the Def. Art. generally stands before names of countries of feminine gender. [l] *say*, in the year. [m] umherziehen.

16. [a] Revolution, *f.*, and mark, the expression *all the men of the revolution* is the object of the sentence, and when the object begins, the Verb must precede the Nominative. [b] endlich. [c] drängen. [d] Hintergrund, *m.*

17. [a] möglich. [b] Herz, *n.* (G. —ens, *pl.* —en). [c] beſitzen. [d] Eigenſchaft. [e] ausnehmen. [f] Demuth, *f.* [g] ohne with Acc. [h] Tugend, *f.* [i] wahr. [j] Verdienſt, *n.*

18. [a] um, and mark, the sentence beginning with *in order*, is an adverbial expression implying intention. [b] Welt, *f.* [c] reiſen. [d] außer Landes. [e] The inversion does not take place in a sentence joined by *and* und to a preceding inverted sentence. [f] nach [g] Egypten. [h] zum.

19. When Jouvenet was maimed[a] by a paralytic stroke[b], he successfully[c] commenced[d] painting[e] with his[f] left hand; and there is known[g] a copper-plate[h] of[i] one[j] of his historical[k] pictures[l] with the signature[m]: *P. Jouvenet, dextrâ paralyticus, sinistrâ pinxit.* P. Jouvenet, paralyzed on[n] his[o] right, painted with his left.

20. On[a] these occasions[b] a man[c] gives loose[d] to every[e] passion[f], and every thought[g] that is uppermost[h], discovers[i] his most retired[j] opinions[k] of[l] persons[m] and things[n], and exposes[o] his[p] whole[q] soul[r] to the examination[s] of his friends.

21. He was the first[a] man[b] who, for[c] a month[d], had talked to[e] me with smiles.[f]

22. In this office[a] Mr. Crispe kindly[b] offers[c] all his majesty's[d] subjects[e] a generous[f] promise[g] of[h] thirty pounds a year[i], for which[j] all[k] they give in return[l] is their liberty[m] for life[n] and permission[o] to let[p] him transport[q] them to America as slaves.[r]

---

19. [a] lähmen. [b] Schlagfluß, *m.* [c] mit glücklichem Erfolge. [d] anfangen. [e] *say*, to paint zu malen. [f] *say*, the. [g] *say*, one knows. [h] Kupferſtich, *m.* [i] nach with Dat. [j] einer, eine, eines. [k] hiſtoriſch. [l] Gemälde, *n.* [m] Unterſchrift, *f.* [n] an with Dat. [o] *say*, the.

20. [a] Bei with Dat. [b] Gelegenheit. [c] man. [d] to give loose freien Lauf laſſen. [e] jeder, jede, jedes. [f] Leidenſchaft. [g] Gedanke, *m.* (G. —ns). [h] *say*, of which his heart is full. [i] enthüllen. [j] geheimſt. [k] Anſicht, *f.* [l] über with Acc. [m] Perſon, *f.* [n] Sache, *f.* [o] offen darlegen. [p] *say*, the. [q] ganz. [r] Seele, *f.* [s] Prüfung.

21. [a] erſt. [b] Menſch. [c] ſeit with Dat. [d] Monat, *m.* [e] anreden with Acc. [f] *say*, smilingly lächelnd.

22. [a] Geſchäfts-zimmer, *n.* [b] freundlich. [c] anbieten. [d] Majeſtät. [e] Unterthan, *m.* (G. —en); mark, this must follow after *all.* [f] großmüthig. [g] Verſprechen, *n.* [h] von. [i] *say*, the year. [j] wofür. [k] understand *that* das, which cannot be omitted in German. [l] als Vergeltung. [m] Freiheit. [n] auf Lebenszeit. [o] Erlaubniß, *f.* [p] geſtatten with Dat. [q] hinüberſchaffen. [r] Sclave, *m.* (*pl.* —n).

23. I was happy at finding[a] a place[b] where I could lose my fears[c] in desperation.[d]

24. After a few[a] questions[b] he found I was[c] fit[d] for every thing[e] in the world.[f]

25. It is remarkable[a] that nature[b] has given to those[c] insects[d], which produce[e] wax[f] and honey[g] out of flowers and live in a wonderful[h] confederacy[i], several[j] particular[k] sounds[l] that intimate[m] the special[n] occurrences[o] of their state.[p]

26. It is known that bees[a], when they are about[b] swarming[c], or when a war[d] commences, announce[e] this by peculiar[f] sounds.[g]

II. On the Articles.

1. Helvetius is right[a] in saying[b], that the hand has been to man[c] a great assistance[d] for[e] his understanding.[f]

---

23. [a] *say*, to find. [b] Ort, *m.* [c] *say*, fear Furcht, *f.* [d] Verzweiflung.

24. [a] einige. [b] Frage, *f.* [c] take Subjunctive Present. [d] tauglich, which, as the predicate, must stand at the end. [e] zu allem. [f] Welt, *f.*

25. [a] merkwürdig. [b] die Natur. [c] der, die, das. [d] Insect, *n.* (*pl.* —en). [e] bilden. [f] Wachs, *n.* [g] Honig, *m.* [h] wunderſam. [i] Staatenverein, *m.* [j] mehrere. [k] beſondere. [l] Laut, *m.* (*pl.* —e). [m] andeuten. [n] beſonder. [o] Ereigniß, *n.* (*pl.* —e). [p] Staat, *m.* (G. —es).

26. [a] Biene, *f.* [b] wollen. [c] ſchwärmen. [d] Krieg, *m.* [e] ankündigen. [f] eigenthümlich. [g] Ton, *m.* (*pl.* Töne).

1. [a] *say*, has right. [b] *say*, when he says. [c] *man* is Menſch, when referring to the whole species of mankind, and requires in German the definite article, because all substantives implying the whole species are preceded by such an article. [d] Hülfsmittel, *n.* [e] *say*, of. [f] Verſtand, *m.*

2. Avarice[a] is the root[b] of many evils[c]; lavishness[d] is a tree full of bitter fruit.[e]

3. Arnold's original[a] sketches[b] on[c] history[d] and theology[e] were at first remarkable[f] rather[g] as proofs[h] of industry[i] than of power.[k]

4. He was admitted[a] upon[b] the footing[c] of half[d] friend, half underling.[e]

5. Luther[a], by his translation[b] of the Bible[c], has given the sacred scriptures[d] into the hands of the people[e] for[f] investigation[g] and examination.[h]

6. The swiftness[a] of the wind[b] which has even[c] become a proverb[d], is far[e] smaller[f] than people[g] generally[h] imagine.[i]

7. Man is mortal.[a]

8. Dogs[a] are faithful[b] animals.[c]

9, Virtue[a] rewards[b] itself.

10. Innocence[a] and virtue are always related[b] to each other.[c]

---

2. [a] Geiz, *m.*, and observe, that the definite article stands before names of abstract things, if their whole essence is expressed. [b] Wurzel, *f.* [c] Uebel, *n.* [d] Verſchwendung. [e] *say*, fruits Frucht, *f.* (*pl.* Früchte).

3. [a] urſprünglich. [b] Aufſatz, *m.* (*pl.*—ſätze). [c] über with Acc. [d] Geſchichte, *f.*, and mark, the definite article stands before the names of sciences. [e] Theologie, *f.* [f] merkwürdig. [g] vielmehr. [h] Beweis, *m.* (*pl.*—e). [i] Fleiß, *m.* [k] Kraft, *f.*

4. [a] to admit zulaſſen. [b] auf with Acc. [c] Fuß, *m.* [d] *say*, half a. [e] Untergebener.

5. [a] Put in the translation the verb *has* immediately after *Luther*. [b] Ueberſetzung. [c] Bibel, *f.* [d] Schrift, *f.* (*pl.*—en). [e] Volk, *n.* [f] zu with Dat. [g] Forſchen, *n.*, to be preceded by the definite article so as to make it coalesce with zu into one word. [h] Prüfen, *n.*

6. [a] Geſchwindigkeit. [b] Wind, *m.* [c] ſogar. [d] zum Sprichwort werden. [e] weit. [f] geringer. [g] man. [h] gewöhnlich. [i] glauben.

7. [a] ſterblich.

8. [a] Hund, *m.* (*pl.*—e). [b] treu. [c] Thier, *n.* (*pl.*—e).

9. [a] Tugend, *f.* [b] belohnen.

10. [a] Unſchuld, *f.* [b] verwandt. [c] mit einander.

11. Hope[a] does not allow[b] us to be confounded.[c]

12. The lion[a], tiger[b], lynx[c], and wolf[d] are ravenous[e] beasts.[f]

13. Riches[a] and honour[b] alone do not make happy.

14. I have bought the house[a], garden[b] and meadows[c] of my neighbour.[d]

15. He was dazzled[a] by the glitter[b] of gold.[c]

16. He spoke[a] to[b] her words[c] of consolation[d] and faith.[e]

17. He did not succeed[a] from[b] want[c] of earnestness[d] and application.[e]

18. A feeling[a] of anger[b] seized[c] me at[d] this moment.[e]

19. The Greeks[a] represented[b] Death[c] almost[d] like[e] Sleep.[f]

20. The best merchant[a] is war[b]; it makes gold out of[c] iron.[d]

---

11. [a] Hoffnung. [b] laſſen. [c] zu Schanden werden.

12. [a] Löwe; mark, when the subject or object of a sentence contains more than one Substantive of the same gender and number, the article need only stand before the first; if they have different genders and numbers, then the article must be repeated before each separately. [b] Tiger. [c] Luchs. [d] Wolf. [e] reißend. [f] Thier.

13. [a] Reichthum, *m.* (*pl.* —thümer). [b] Ehre, *f.*

14. [a] Haus, *n.* [b] Garten, *m.* [c] Wieſe, *f.* [d] Nachbar (G. —n).

15. [a] blenden. [b] Glanz, *m.* [c] Gold, *n.*, and observe, the definite article stands before names of materials, if the whole matter is implied.

16. [a] ſprechen. [b] zu. [c] Wort, *n.* (*pl.* —e). [d] Troſt, *m.* [e] Glauben, *m.*

17. [a] *say*, it did not succeed to him; to succeed gelingen. [b] aus. [c] Mangel, *m.* [d] Ernſt, *m.* [e] Fleiß, *m.*

18. [a] Gefühl, *n.* [b] Zorn, *m.* [c] überkommen. [d] in with Dative. [e] Augenblick, *m.* (G. —es).

19. [a] Griecke, *m.* [b] darſtellen. [c] Tod, *m.*, and mark, the definite article stands before the names of abstract things, if they are represented as personal beings. [d] faſt. [e] ähnlich with the Dative, by which it is preceded. [f] Schlaf, *m.* (G. —es).

20. [a] Kaufmann. [b] Krieg, *m.* [c] aus. [d] Eiſen, *n.*

21. Childhood[a] and old age[b] appear[c] to me equally[d] venerable[e]; the first[f], because[g] it seems[h] just[i] to come[j] from[k] the hands of God; the latter[l], because it returns[m] thither.[n]

III. On the Declension of Substantives.

1. Any[a] means[b] are just[c] to malice.[d]
2. Every day lasts[a] long to laziness.[b]
3. Patients[a] want[b] rest.[c]
4. Docile[a] dogs[b] give pleasure to children.[c]
5. Glass[a] has been invented[b] by the Phœnicians.[c]
6. The diet[a] in Sweden[b] consists[c] of[d] four classes[e], the nobility[f], the clergy[g], the citizens[h], and peasants.[i]

---

21. [a] Kindheit. [b] old age Alter, *n.* [c] vorkommen. [d] gleich. [e] ehrwürdig. [f] *say*, that one jener, jene, jenes. [g] weil. [h] ſcheinen. [i] eben erſt. [j] kommen. [k] von. [l] *say*, this one dieſer, dieſe, dieſes. [m] zurückkehren. [n] dahin.

1. [a] alle. [b] Mittel, *n.*, and mark, Substantives masculine and neuter in el, en, er, have no termination in Nominative plural. [c] recht. [d] Bosheit.

2. [a] bauern. [b] Faulheit.

3. [a] Kranke, and observe, Substantives which originally are Adjectives, are declined like the definite article, if no article precedes. [b] bedürfen with Gen. [c] Ruhe, *f.*

4. [a] gelehrige. [b] Hund, *m.*, and mark, all Substantives masculine of one syllable have in Plural Nominative an e, and the vowel generally is modified; but in Hund the vowel does not change. [c] Kind, *n.*, and observe, 1) Substantives neuter of one syllable have in Nominative Plural an er, and a modification of the vowel; and 2) the Dative Plural ALWAYS has an n added to the Nominative Plural.

5. [a] Glas, *n.* [b] erfinden. [c] Phönizier (cf. Note 1. [b]).

6. [a] Reichstag, *m.* [b] Schweden. [c] beſtehen. [d] aus with Dative. [e] Stand, *m.* (cf. Note 4. [b] and [c] 2.) [f] Adel, *m.* [g] Geiſtlichkeit. [h] Bürgerſchaft. [i] Bauerſchaft.

7. The nobleness[a] of the mind[b] shows itself[c] in words[d] and deeds.[e]

8. Admiral Horn died[a] on[b] the scaffold.[c]

9. The merchants[a] in the city[b] assemble[c] on[d] the exchange.[e]

10. The height[a] of the Brocken[b] in the Harz mountains[c] amounts to[d] 3,500 feet.[e]

11. Also in the ocean[a] are found[b] mountains[c] and valleys.[d]

12. The nature of things[a] is changeable.[b]

13. The laws[a] of religion and of morals[b] are the conditions[c] of our spiritual[d] existence.[e]

14. The desire of knowledge[a] strives[b] not so much

---

7. [a] Adel, *m.* [b] Seele, *f.* [c] ſich ausſprechen. [d] Wort, *n.*, and mark, it has two forms in Plural, Worte and Wörter; the first means *words connected*, the second signifies *words detached.* [e] That, *f.*

8. [a] ſterben. [b] auf with Dat. [c] Blutgerüſt, *n.*, and mark, Substantives masculine or neuter, not terminating in el, en, er, or e, have in Singular Genitive an es, and in the Dative an e.

9. [a] der Kaufmann (*pl.* Kaufleute); Substantives compounded with Mann, change this in plural in Leute. [b] Stadt, *f.* [c] ſich verſammeln. [d] auf with Dat. [e] Börſe, *f.*

10. [a] Höhe, *f.* [b] Brocken, *m.* [c] *mountains* as a coherent chain or mass of mountains is Gebirge, *n.* [d] to amount to betragen. [e] Fuß, *m.*, and mark, Substantives implying measure and at the same time the things measured, have no plural.

11. [a] Weltmeer, *n.* [b] to be found ſich finden. [c] Berg, *m.* [d] Thal, *n.*

12. [a] Ding, *n.*, and mark, if Ding means *thing*, the Plural has e; but if it implies small, indifferent or ridiculous things, it has er. [b] veränderlich.

13. [a] Geſetz, *n.* [b] *morals*, when meaning those qualities of good habits which are innate in human beings, is Sitten, but when implying the *science of ethics*, is Sittenlehre, *f.* [c] Bedingung. [d] geiſtig. [e] Daſein, *n.*

14. [a] desire of knowledge Wißbegierde, *f.* [b] ſtreben.

after a mass[c] af acquirements[d] as rather[e] to know thoroughly[f] what is investigated.[g]

15. Crows[a], jackdaws[b], magpies[c], and their like[d], distinguish themselves[e] from other birds[f] by their croaking[g] and chattering.[h]

16. Simplicity[a] and stupidity[b] sometimes[c] get on[d] better than cunning[e], alike as cowardice[f] sometimes gains[g] the victory[h] over[i] audacity.[j]

17. Newspapers[a] give food[b] to curiosity[c], learned reviews[d] to polymathy[e], and life and a few[f] books to the desire of knowledge.

18. The roaring[a] of the lion[b] announces[c] the king of beasts.[d]

19. What a gradation[a] from the croaking[b] of the raven[c] up to[d] the song[e] of the nightingale[f]!

20. The spots[a] suit well[b] the tiger[c] and panther[d], and the long sneaking[e] form[f] suits well the marten.[g]

---

[c] Menge, *f.* [d] Kenntniß, *f.*, and mark, feminine Substantives in niß have in Nominative Plural an e against the rule. [e] vielmehr. [f] gründlich. [g] erforſchen.

15. [a] Krähe, *f.* [b] Dohle, *f.* [c] Elſter, *f.* [d] *say*, of their like (ihr Gleiches, Gen. ihres Gleichen); in the same way *my like* meines Gleichen. [e] ſich unterſcheiden. [f] Vogel, *m.*, which is one of those Substantives in el, that modify the vowel in plural, Vögel. [g] Gekrächze, *n.* [h] Geſchwätz, *n.*

16. [a] Einfalt, *f.* [b] Dummheit. [c] zuweilen. [d] fortkommen. [e] Schlauheit. [f] Feigheit. [g] erhalten. [h] Sieg, *m.* [i] über with Acc. [j] Kühnheit.

17. [a] Zeitung. [b] Nahrung. [c] Neugier, *f.* [d] die gelehrten Jahrbücher. [e] Vielwiſſerei. [f] wenige.

18. [a] Gebrüll, *n.* [b] Löwe, *m.* [c] ankündigen. [d] Thier, *n.*, which, against the rule, has in Plural an e.

19. [a] Abſtufung. [b] Krächzen, *n.* [c] Rabe, *m.* [d] bis zu with Dat. [e] Geſang, *m.* [f] Nachtigall, *f.*

20. [a] Flecken, *m.* [b] wohl ſtehen with Dat. [c] Tiger, *m.* [d] Panther, *m.* [e] ſchleichend. [f] Geſtalt, *f.* [g] Marder, *m.*

21. What a difference[a] between[b] the cooing[c] of the turtle-dove[d], the chirping[e] of the sparrow[f], and the stupid[g] cackling[h] of the duck[i]!

22. The faculties[a] of the mind[b] have many points of contact[c] together.[d]

23. The senate[a] and the people loaded[b] Julius Cæsar with honours[c] without measure[d] and limit.[e]

24. How wonderful[a] is the instinct[b] of birds with respect[c] to[d] the structure[e] of their nests[f]!

25. In some nests hair[a], wool[b], and rushes[c], are dexterously[d] interwoven[e]; in some all the parts[f] are firmly[g] fastened[h] by a thread[i] which the bird makes of hemp[j], wool, hair, or more commonly[k] of spiders' webs.[l]

26. Many birds, as[a] for instance[b] the blackbird[c] and the lapwing[d], after they have constructed[e] their nest, plaster[f] the inside[g] with mortar[h] which cements[i] and binds the whole[j] together; they then stick[k] upon it[l], while[m] quite wet, some wool or moss, to give it the necessary[n] degree[o] of warmth.[p]

---

21. [a] Verſchiedenheit. [b] zwiſchen with Dat. [c] Girren, *n.* [d] Turteltaube, *f.* [e] Gezwitſcher, *n.* [f] Sperling, *m.* [g] dumm. [h] Geſchnatter, *n.* [i] Ente, *f.*

22. [a] Fähigkeit. [b] Seele, *f.* [c] Berührungspunkt, *m.* [d] mit einander.

23. [a] Senat, *m.* [b] überhäufen. [c] Ehrenbezeugung. [d] Maaß, *n.* [e] Ziel, *n.*

24. [a] Wunderbar. [b] Trieb, *m.* [c] in Bezug. [d] auf with Acc. [e] Bau, *m.* [f] Neſt, *n.*

25. [a] Haar, *n.* (*pl.*, against the rule, Haare, which is here to be used). [b] Wolle, *f.* [c] Binſe, *f.* [d] geſchickt. [e] in einander verflechten. [f] Theil, *m.* [g] dicht. [h] befeſtigen. [i] Faden, *m.* [j] Hanf, *m.* [k] gewöhnlich. [l] Spinngewebe, *n.*

26. [a] wie. [b] zum Beiſpiel (which is generally abbreviated in z. B.). [c] Amſel, *f.* [d] Kibitz, *m.* [e] bauen. [f] übertünchen. [g] Innere, *n.* [h] Mörtel, *m.* [i] verkitten. [j] Ganze, *n.* [k] heften. [l] darauf. [m] während (*say*, while it is). [n] gehörig. [o] Grad, *m.* [p] Wärme, *f.*

27. The nests of swallows[a] are[b] of a very different[c] construction[d] from those[e] of other birds.

28. They require[a] neither wool, nor hay, nor cords[b]; they make a kind[c] of mortar, with which they form[d] a nest and secure[e] habitation[f] for[g] themselves and their family.

29. To moisten[a] the dust[b] of which they build their nest, they dip[c] their breasts[d] in water, and shake[e] the drops[f] from their wet feathers upon it.[g]

30. But the nests most worthy of admiration[a] are those[b] of certain[c] Indian[d] birds, which suspend[e] them with great art from[f] the branches[g] of trees, to secure them from[h] the depredations[i] of various[j] animals and insects.[k]

31. What is it that teaches[a] the bird to place[b] her nest in[c] a situation[d] sheltered[e] from[f] the rain[g], and secure[h] against[i] the attacks[j] of other animals?

32. Who has taught her to calculate[a] the time with such[b] accuracy[c], that she never commits[d] a mistake[e] in producing[f] her eggs[g], before[h] the nest is ready[i] to receive[j] them?

---

27. [a] Schwalbe, *f.* [b] *say*, have a very. [c] verſchieden. [d] Bildung. [e] take the demonstrative pronoun der, die, das.

28. [a] erfordern. [b] Schnur, *f.* (*pl.* Schnüre). [c] Art, *f.* [d] bauen. [e] ſichern. [f] Wohnung with the indefinite article. [g] to be expressed by the Dative.

29. [a] befeuchten. [b] Staub, *m.* [c] tauchen. [d] take the Singular. [e] ſchütteln. [f] Tropfen, *m.* [g] *say*, there upon.

30. [a] merkwürdigſt. [b] cf. Note 27. e. [c] gewiß. [d] Indiſch. [e] hängen. [f] an with Acc. [g] Zweig, *m.* [h] vor with Dat. [i] Plünderung. [j] verſchieden. [k] Inſect, *n.* (*pl.* —en).

31. [a] lehren which is construed with an infinitive *without* zu. [b] ſetzen, which must stand at the end of the sentence. [c] an, Acc. [d] Ort, *m.* [e] ſchützen (*say*, which is sheltered). [f] gegen, Acc. [g] Regen, *m.* [h] ſicher. [i] vor, Dat. [j] Angriff, *m.*

32. [a] berechnen. [b] ſolch. [c] Genauigkeit. [d] begehen. [e] Fehler, *m.* [f] Legen, *n.* (*say*, in the laying of). [g] Ei, *n.* [h] ehe. [i] bereit. [j] aufnehmen.

33. Admire[a] in all these things the power, the wisdom, and the goodness of the Creator[b]!

34. The bushmen[a] appear to be the remains[b] of Hottentot[c] hordes[d] who have been driven[e], by the gradual[f] encroachments[g] of the European[h] colonists[i], to seek for[j] refuge[k] among[l] the inaccessible[m] rocks[n] and sterile[o] deserts[p] of the interior[q] of Africa.[r]

35. Most[a] of the hordes known[b] in the colony[c] by[d] the name[e] of bushmen are now entirely[f] destitute[g] of flocks[h] or herds[i], and subsist[j] partly[k] by[l] the chase[m], partly on[l] the wild roots[n] of the wilderness, and in[o] times of scarcity[p] on reptiles[q], grasshoppers[r], and the larvae[s] of ants[t], or by plundering[u] their hereditary[v] foes[w] and oppressors[x], the frontier[y] boers.

36. In seasons[a] when[b] every green herb[c] is devoured[d] by swarms[e] of locusts[f], and when the wild game[g] in consequence[h] desert[i] the pastures[j] of the wilderness, the bush-

---

33. [a] bewundern. [b] Schöpfer.

34. [a] Buſchmann (*pl.* —männer, against the rule). [b] Ueberbleibſel, *n.* [c] Hottentotten. [d] Horde, *f.* [e] treiben. [f] allmählig. [g] Eingriff, *m.* [h] Europäiſch. [i] Coloniſt, *m.*, and mark, all foreign nouns masculine, with the accent on the last, have en in the cases. [j] ſuchen. [k] Zuflucht, *f.* [l] zwiſchen, Dat. [m] unzugänglich. [n] Felſen, *m.* [o] unfruchtbar. [p] Wüſte, *f.* [q] Innere, *n.* (G. —n). [r] Africa (G. —s).

35. [a] die meiſten. [b] bekannt (*say*, which are known). [c] Colonie, *f.* [d] unter, Dat. [e] Name, *m.* [f] gänzlich. [g] to be destitute ermangeln with Gen. [h] Schaafheerde, *f.* [i] Rinderheerde, *f.* (*say*, Schaaf- und Rinderheerde). [j] leben. [k] theils. [l] von, Dat. [m] Jagd, *f.* [n] Wurzel, *f.* [o] zu, Dat. [p] Mangel, *m.* [q] Wurm, *m.* (*pl.* Würmer, against the rule). [r] Grille, *f.* [s] Puppe, *f.* [t] Ameiſe, *f.* [u] Plünderung, *f.* (*say*, by the plundering of). [v] Erb. [w] hereditary foe Erbfeind. [x] Unterdrücker, *m.* [y] frontier Boer Gränzbauer, *m.* (*pl.*—n, against the rule).

36. [a] Jahr, *n.* (*pl.* —e, against the rule). [b] da. [c] Pflanze, *f.* [d] verſchlingen. [e] Schwarm, *m.* [f] Heuſchrecke, *f.* [g] Wild, *n.*, wild game. [h] demzufolge. [i] verlaſſen, and mark, the Verb must agree in number with the Subject. [j] Weideplatz, *m.*

man finds a resource[k] in the very[l] calamity[m] which would overwhelm[n] an agricultural[o] or civilized[p] community.[q]

37. He lives by[a] devouring[b] the devourers[c]; he subsists[d] for weeks[e] and months[f] on[g] locusts alone[h], and also preserves[i] a stock[j] of this food[k] dried[l], as we do[m] herrings[n] or pilchards[o] for[p] future[q] consumption.[r]

38. The city of[a] Jalappa in Mexico is very beautifully[b] situated[c] at[d] the foot of Macaltephec, at[e] an elevation[f] of 4335 feet[g] above[h] the level[i] of the sea.[j]

39. Mountains bound[a] the horizon[b], except[c] on[d] one side[e], where a distant[f] view[g] of the sea adds to[h] the beauty[i] of the scene.[j]

40. Evergreen[a] forests[b] clothe[c] the surrounding[d] hills[e]; in the foreground[f] are delightful[g] gardens[h] with fruits[i] of every clime[j],—the banana[k] and fig[l], the orange[m], cherry and apple.

41. The town is irregularly[a] built[b], but very picturesque[c]; the houses[d] are in the style[e] of the old houses of Spain with windows[f] down[g] to the[h] ground.[i]

---

[k] Hülfsquelle, *f.* [l] ſelb. [m] Elend, *n.* [n] überwältigen. [o] ackerbautreibend. [p] geſittet. [q] Gemeinde, *f.*

37. [a] durch, Acc. [b] *say*, the devouring of Verſchlingen, *n.* [c] Verſchlinger. [d] ſich ernähren. [e] Woche, *f.* (*say*, weeks long). [f] Monat, *m.* [g] von with Dat. [h] allein. [i] aufſpeichern. [j] Vorrath, *m.* [k] Speiſe, *f.* [l] gedörrt. [m] thun (*say*, as we do it with). [n] Häring, *m.* [o] Strömling, *m.* [p] zu, Dat. [q] künftig. [r] Verbrauch, *m.*

38. [a] *of* after the common name and before the proper name is not expressed. [b] ſchön. [c] to be situated liegen. [d] an, Dat. [e] in, Dat. [f] Erhebung. [g] Fuß, *m.* (which has no plural when implying measure. [h] über, Dat. [i] Fläche, *f.* [j] Meer, *n.*

39. [a] begränzen. [b] Geſichtskreis, *m.* [c] ausgenommen. [d] an, Dat. [e] Seite, *f.* [f] fern. [g] Anblick, *m.* [h] to add to erhöhen. [i] Schönheit. [j] Landſchaft, *f.*

40. [a] Immergrün. [b] Wald, *m.* (*pl.* Wälder, against the rule). [c] bekleiden. [d] umliegend. [e] Hügel, *m.* [f] Vordergrund, *m.* [g] reizend. [h] Garten, *m.* (*pl.* Gärten). [i] Frucht, *f.* (*pl.* Früchte). [j] Himmelſtrich, *m.* [k] Banana, *f.* [l] Feige, *f.* [m] Apfelſine, *f.*

41. [a] unregelmäßig. [b] bauen. [c] maleriſch. [d] Haus, *n.* [e] Bauart, *f.* [f] Fenſter, *n.* [g] hinunter. [h] bis zu, Dat. [i] Erdboden, *m.*

IV. On the Declension of Nouns Proper.

1. I always read with pleasure Virgil's[a] books on[b] agriculture[c], and the celebrated[d] ode[e] of Horace[f] on[g] the beauty of country life.[h]

2. Homer compares[a] the lovely[b] voice[c] of[d] Nestor to[e] the sound[f] of a cicada.[g]

3. We visited[a] the grave[b] of that excellent[c], by friend and foe respected[d], Günther.

4. She moved[a] the succession[b] of her cousin[c], the Count Palatinate[d], Charles[e] Gustavus.[f]

5. You then wished to appear in the character[a] of robber Moor[b] in Schiller's first tragedy.[c]

6. Raumer has written the history of the Emperor[a] Frederic[b] the second.

7. That has occurred[a] in[b] the reign[c] of Duke[d] Charles.

---

1. [a] Nouns proper, without preceding article, have in Genitive an **s**; the other cases are unchanged. [b] von. [c] Landbau, and do not forget the article. [d] berühmt. [e] Ode. [f] Horaz, and mark, Nouns proper, ending in a hissing sound, are avoided in the Genitive, unless the Article is put before them, as, des Horaz; or the Genitive is expressed by vom, von dem. [g] über. [h] Landleben, *n.*

2. [a] vergleichen. [b] lieblich. [c] Stimme, *f.* [d] this can be expressed by des Nestor, or by Nestors, which, however, is to be placed after *compares.* [e] mit. [f] Ton, *m.* [g] Cicade, *f.*

3. [a] besuchen. [b] Grab, *n.* [c] brav. [d] achten.

4. [a] in Vorschlag bringen. [b] Nachfolge, *f.* [c] Vetter. [d] Pfalzgraf. [e] Karl. [f] Gustav.

5. [a] Rolle, *f.* [b] although *robber* is in itself only a common name, still having as a character in a great play received an uncommon celebrity, it is treated like a Noun proper; in the same way are regarded Kaiser Friedrich, Herzog Karl, and some other. [c] Trauerspiel, *n.*

6. [a] Kaiser. [b] Friedrich (cf. Note 5. [b]).

7. [a] sich ereignen. [b] unter. [c] Regierung. [d] say either Herzog Karls, or des Herzog Karl (cf. Note 5. [b]).

8. Hiero had the good sense[a] to retain[b] Simonides and Pindar at[c] his court.

9. Name[a] to me that poet who dares[b] to compare himself to Homer and Virgil.

10. The victory on the white mountain placed[a] Ferdinand in possession[b] of all his states.[c]

11. Nothing looked less like[a] Elizabeth than to promise, when[b] she was still uncertain, whether[c] she could keep[d] it.

12. I found Julia quite so again, as I had seen her five years before at Mannheim.

13. The heirs[a] of Margaret were her best friends, since[b] she had lost her only child, Clara.

14. A considerable[a] part of Brabant resisted[b] the arms of Duke Alexander of Parma.

15. The death of Socrates has been described[a] by his two pupils[b] and admirers[c], Plato and Xenophon.

16. The Irokese[a] blacken[b] the face of him[c] who overcomes[d] his neighbour by telling a falsehood.[e]

17. The Earls[a] of Shrewsbury and Kent received from Burleigh the commission[b] to assist[c] at[d] the execution[e] of the death-warrant.[f]

---

8. [a] Klugheit. [b] feſſeln. [c] an with Acc.

9. [a] aufſtellen. [b] dürfen.

10. [a] ſetzen. [b] Beſitz, *m.* [c] Staat, *m.* (*pl.* —en).

11. [a] ähnlich. [b] wo. [c] ob. [d] halten.

13. [a] Erbe, *m.* [b] nachdem.

14. [a] bedeutend. [b] widerſtehen, which is inseparable.

15. [a] beſchreiben. [b] Schüler. [c] Bewunderer.

16. [a] Irokeſe, *m.* [b] ſchwärzen. [c] derjenige. [d] beſiegen. [e] *by telling a falsehood* express by the adverbially used Participle Present of lügen.

17. [a] Graf (G. —en). [b] Auftrag, *m.* [c] beiwohnen, and mark, the Particle zu stands between the two compounds. [d] *at the* express by the Dative. [e] Vollziehung [f] Todesurtheil, *n.*

18. They appeared on the seventh of February in Fotheringay, announced[a] their intention[b], and pointed out[c] the next[d] day as the last in Mary's life.

V. On the Declension of Adjectives.

1. In those[a] countries[b] which are most[c] blessed[d] by nature, men are generally lazy[e], ignorant[f] and rude.[g]

2. The ancients[a] are by no means[b] dead[c], as people[d] are accustomed[e] to say; only their languages[f] are dead; the spirit[g], which breathes[h] in the latter[i], is eternally[j] alive.[k]

3. The noble[a] mind[b] raises[c] the cripple[d] above[e] others who merely[f] possess a beautiful person.[g]

4. Is it just[a] or unjust[b] to allow[c] among[d] brothers and sisters a distinction[e] which destroys[f] all[g] mutual[h] confidence[i]?

---

18. [a] verkündigen. [b] Absicht, *f.* [c] bezeichnen. [d] folgend.

1. [a] express by the Pronoun Dem. der, die, das. [b] Land, *n.* [c] am meisten. [d] geeignet, and mark, Adjectives are not declined, when they are the Predicates in sentences. [e] faul. [f] unwissend. [g] roh.

2. [a] alt, and observe, 1) Substantives, which originally are Adjectives, are declined like the latter; 2) Adjectives, preceded by the Def. Article, or Pronouns Dem. and Relat., have in Nom. Sing. an e, and en in the other cases, except the Acc. Sing., Neut., and Fem., which must be like their Nom., and therefore have e. [b] keineswegs. [c] todt. [d] wie man. [e] to be accustomed pflegen. [f] Sprache, *f.* [g] Geist, *m.* [h] wehen. [i] *say*, in these in diesen; observe, *the first* and *the latter* are often expressed by the Pronouns Demonstr. jener and dieser. [j] ewig. [k] lebendig.

3. [a] edel. [b] Seele, *f.* [c] erheben. [d] Krüppel, *m.* [e] über, Acc. [f] bloß. [g] Körper, *m.*

4. [a] recht. [b] unrecht. [c] dulden. [d] unter, Dat. [e] Rangordnung, *f.* [f] aufheben. [g] aller, alle, alles, which has the same power before the Adjective as the Def. Article. [h] wechselseitig. [i] Vertrauen, *n.*

5. A simple[a] and inarticulate[b] sound[c] excites[d] already a dark[e] idea[f] of[g] the being[h] from[i] which it issues.[j]

6. Sight[a] and hearing[b] are the noblest senses.[c]

7. Even[a] among Negroes[b] one[c] finds beautiful[d] faces.[e]

8. The grateful[a] citizens[b] erected[c] monuments[d] to the fallen warriors.

9. For proper[a] dogs of draught[b] they choose[c] in Siberia[d] especially[e] those which have high[f] legs[g], long ears[h], a pointed[i] muzzle[j], a broad back[k], and a big[l] head.[m]

10. Between wisdom and virtue there is a great difference.[a]

11. The wise man is always prudent[a], but the prudent man is not always wise.

12. We often say, he is a sensible[a] man, of a person[b],

---

5. [a] einfach, and observe, if an Indef. Article precedes the Adjective, the latter has in the Nom. Sing. the terminations of the Def. Article er, e, es, as, ein guter Knabe, eine gute Mutter, ein gutes Buch. The other cases have en, except Acc. Fem. and Neut. Sing., which must be like their Nom.; therefore eine gute Mutter, ein gutes Buch are both the Nom. and the Acc. [b] unartikulirt. [c] Laut, *m.* [d] erregen. [e] dunkel. [f] Vorstellung. [g] *of*, when it means as much as *about*, is von, Dat. [h] Wesen, *n.* [i] aus, Dat. [j] kommen.

6. [a] das Gesicht. [b] das Gehör. [c] Sinn, *m.*

7. [a] selbst. [b] Neger, *m.* [c] man. [d] schön, and mark, if an Adjective is preceded neither by an Article nor Pronoun, it is declined like the Def. Article, as, guter Mann, gute Frau, gutes Kind, gutes Mannes, etc. [e] Gesicht, *n.* (this word has in Plural Gesichter, when meaning *face*, but Gesichte, when meaning *vision*).

8. [a] dankbar. [b] Bürger. [c] errichten. [d] Denkmal, *n.*

9. [a] eigentlich. [b] Zughund, *m.* [c] wählen. [d] Sibirien. [e] vorzüglich. [f] hoch, and mark, all words terminating in ch, lose the c, when prolonged by a syllable beginning with e. [g] Bein, *n* (*pl.* —e, against the rule). [h] Ohr, *n.* (*pl.* —en). [i] spitz. [j] Schnauze, *f.* [k] Kreuz, *n.* [l] dick. [m] Kopf, *m.*

10. [a] Unterschied, *m.*

11. [a] klug.

12. [a] klug. [b] Mensch, *m.* (declined in the cases like an Adjective, which it originally was).

who only transacts[c] his affairs[d] with much acuteness[e], and who sometimes does not feel[f] any great scruple[g] about[h] a bad trick.[i]

13. This is a malicious[a] policy.[b]

14. Appearance[a] goes far[b] in the world[c]; we, therefore, ought[d] also to value[e] the good appearance.

15. He had the strange[a] fashion[b] of making a number[c] of deep[d] bows[e], when leaving[f] the room.

16. The prison[a] was seized[b] by the fire[c]; the flames[d] raged[e] in[f] a terrible[g] way[h], and with them a swarm of criminals[i], who else[j] were hidden[k], but now set at liberty[l] in consequence[m] of this occurrence.[n]

17. He gave them bad food[a] to eat, and bad garments[b] to cover themselves[c] with.[d]

18. Agriculture[a] often is a faithful[b] guardian[c] of patriotic[d] virtues, and an excellent[e] school of a simple, pious disposition.[f]

19. The feeling[a] of one's[b] own[c] sufferings[d] as well as the sight[e] of foreign ones[f] makes most[g] men dissatisfied.[h]

20. All sufferings of living beings[a] are, according[b] to

---

[c] betreiben. [d] Geſchäft, *n.* (*pl.* —e). Feinheit. [f] *say*, makes to himself no great. [g] Gewiſſen, *n.* [h] über, Acc. [i] Streich, *m.*

13. [a] boshaft. [b] Klugheit.

14. [a] der Schein. [b] *say*, does much. [c] Welt, *f.* [d] ſollten. [e] halten auf, Acc.

15. [a] ſonderbar. [b] Mode, *f.* [c] Menge, *f.* [d] tief. [e] Verbeugung. [f] *say*, when (wenn) he left.

16. [a] Gefängniß. [b] ergreifen. [c] Feuer, *m.* [d] Flamme, *f.* [e] wüthen. [f] auf, Acc. [g] ſchrecklich. [h] Weiſe, *f.* [i] Verbrecher. [j] ſonſt. [k] verbergen; *say*, of else hidden, but now at liberty set criminals. [l] in Freiheit ſetzen. [m] durch, Acc. [n] Ereigniß, *n.* (*pl.* —e),

17. [a] Nahrung. [b] Kleid, *n.* [c] ſich bedecken. [d] damit.

18. [a] der Ackerbau. [b] treu. [c] Hut, *f.* [d] vaterländiſch. [e] vorzüglich. [f] Geſinnung.

19. [a] Gefühl, *n.* [b] *say*, the. [c] eigen. [d] Leiden, *n.* [e] Anblick, *m.* [f] *say*, sufferings. [g] *say*, the most. [h] unzufrieden.

20. [a] Weſen, *n.* [b] gemäß, Dat., and generally stands after its case.

their first origin[c], an effect[d] of the necessary[e] nature of things.

21. By the art[a] of the physician[b] and surgeon[c] frequently the most dangerous[d] diseases[e] as well as the worst[f] wounds[g] and bruises[h] of the body are easily cured.[i]

22. Often even[a] hereditary[b] defects[c] and infirmities[d] can be removed[e] by this wonderful[f] art.

23. Be it want[a] of necessary[b] food[c], be it real[d] or imaginary[e] oppression which[f] impels[g] nomadic tribes[h], they never hesitate[i] long to leave[j] their native country[k], and to seek in a foreign land[l] new pastures and new habitations.

24. Imagination[a] paints[b] to us the pictures[c] of foreign countries and distant oceans as wonderful scenes[d] of great actions.[e]

25. Different[a] causes[b] often produce[c] similar[d] effects.[e]

26. The youthful[a] spendthrift[b] not rarely[c] turns into[d] an avaricious[e] old man.[f]

27. The fortune[a] of avaricious hoarders[b] often falls into the hands of squandering[c] and, in the very[d] sense[e] of the word, of laughing heirs.[f]

---

[c] Urſprung, *m.* [d] Folge, *f.* [e] nothwendig.

21. [a] Kunſt, *f.* [b] Arzt. [c] Wundarzt. [d] gefährlich. [e] Krankheit. [f] ſchlimm. [g] Wunde *f.* [h] Beſchädigung. [i] heilen.

22. [a] ſogar. [b] angeboren. [c] Fehler, *m.* [d] Gebrechen, *n.* [e] heben. [f] wunderbar.

23. [a] Mangel, *m.* [b] erforderlich. [c] Nahrung. [d] wirklich. [e] vermeint. [f] this refers to *it*, and must be translated by was, which is used, when relating to some indefinite or general word. [g] antreiben. [h] *say*, the nomade, sing., Nomade, *m.* [i] anſtehen. [j] verlaſſen. [k] Heimath, *f.* [l] Fremde, *f.*

24. [a] die Einbildung. [b] malen. [c] Bild, *n.* [d] Schauplatz, *m.* [e] That, *f.*

25. [a] verſchieden. [b] Urſache, *f.* [c] erzeugen. [d] ähnlich. [e] Wirkung.

26. [a] jugendlich. [b] Verſchwender. [c] ſelten. [d] *say*, becomes. [e] geizig. [f] Greis.

27. [a] Vermögen, *n.* [b] Sammler. [c] verſchwenderiſch. [d] eigentlich. [e] Sinn, *m.* [f] Erbe, *m.*

28. The divine[a] gift[b] of speech[c] puts[d] all organs[e] of the brain[f], all senses[g] and capacities[h] in motion.[i]

29. Useless[a] words often spoil[b] the best transaction.[c] We often offend[d] by a hasty[e] word, and create[f] unnecessary[g] enmities[h], which we can hardly[i] reconcile[j] by great[k] exertions.[l]

30. Much talking[a] is seldom a sign[b] of good speaking.[c]

31. Docile[a] dogs give[b] pleasure[c] both[d] to little children and to wise men.

32. An anxious[a] physician makes the parents[b] uneasy[c] on account[d] of their sick child.

33. The poor family is the object[a] of general[b] sympathy[c]; soon, however, its miserable[d] condition[e] will be alleviated[f] by some[g] generous[h] philanthropists.[i]

34. By all solid[a] grammarians[b] Luther's translation[c] of the Bible[d] is considered[e] as rule[f] and basis[g] of a classical[h] diction[i] in German.[j]

35. Not only Klopstock, but[a] many other authors[b] of[c]

---

28. [a] göttlich. [b] Geſchenk, *n.* [c] Rede, *f.* [d] ſetzen. [e] Werkzeug, *n.* (*pl.* —e). [f] Gehirn, *n.* [g] Sinn, *m.* [h] Fähigkeit. [i] Bewegung.

29. [a] unnütz. [b] verderben. [c] Sache, *f.* [d] verletzen. [e] übereilt. [f] to create ſich zuziehen. [g] unnöthig. [h] Feindſchaft. [i] kaum. [j] ausſöhnen. [k] viel. [l] Mühe, *f.*

30. [a] *say*, the much talking; to talk reden. [b] Zeichen, *n.* [c] *say*, of the good speech.

31. [a] gelehrig. [b] gewähren. [c] Vergnügen, *n.* [d] both—and ſowohl—als auch.

32. [a] ängſtlich. [b] Eltern. [c] unruhig. [d] wegen, Gen.

33. [a] Gegenſtand, *m.* [b] *say*, of the general allgemein. [c] Mitleid, *n.* [d] elend. [e] Lage, *f.* [f] mildern. [g] einige. [h] edelmüthig. [i] *say* men's friend Menſchenfreund, *m.*

34. [a] gründlich. [b] Grammatiker. [c] Ueberſetzung. [d] Bibel, *f.* [e] anſehen. [f] Norm, *f.* [g] Grundtext, *m.* [h] claſſiſch. [i] Ausdruck. [j] *say*, the German das Deutſche.

35. [a] ſondern, when denying a negative expression. [b] Schriftſteller. [c] von expresses *of* referring to a quality.

the first rank[d] have drawn[e] from this rich source[f], and have formed[g] their style[h] principally[i] according[j] to this rule.

36. It is remarkable[a], that into no modern[b] language so many biblical[c] phrases[d] and expressions[e] have been received[f], and have formally[g] passed over[h] into[i] life as in the German.

37. The birds of prey[a] have a repugnant[b] and often terrible[c] cry[d]; it is the voice[e] of passion.[f]

38. A great natural philosopher[a] possessed among[b] his domestic animals[c] a monkey[d], who was once missing[e], and whom he, after a long search[f], at last[g] found in his library.

39. There the animal sat on[a] the ground[b], and had the plates[c] of an unbound[d] natural-historical[c] work[f] spread[g] round about him.[h]

40. Astonished[a] at this intent[b] study[c] of his house-friend[d], the master approached[e], and saw with[f] wonder and to his great annoyance[g], that the sweet-toothed[h] monkey had eaten out[i] all the[j] chafers[k], which he had here and there[l] found depicted.[m]

41. The story[a] is merry enough!

---

[d] Rang, *m.* [e] ſchöpfen (aus). [f] Quelle, *f.* [g] bilden. [h] Stil, *m.* [i] vorzüglich. [j] nach, Dat.

36. [a] merkwürdig. [b] neuer. [c] bibliſch. [d] Wendung. [e] Ausdruck, *m.* [f] aufnehmen. [g] gänzlich. [h] übergehen. [i] *say*, into the.

37. [a] bird of prey Raubvogel, *m.* [b] widerlich. [c] furchtbar. [d] Ruf, *m.* [e] Stimme, *f.* [f] Leidenſchaft.

38. [a] Naturforſcher. [b] unter, Dat. [c] Hausthier, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [d] Affe, *m.* [e] to miss vermißt werden. [f] *say*, after long searching; searching das Suchen. [g] endlich.

39. [a] an, Dat. [b] Erde, *f.* [c] Kupfer, *n.* [d] ungebunden [e] naturhiſtoriſch. [f] Werk, *n.* [g] zerſtreuen. [h] um ſich her.

40. [a] erſtaunen (über, Acc.). [b] eifrig. [c] Studium, *n.* [d] Hausfreund, *m.* [e] ſich nahen. [f] *say*, to his zu—Verwunderung. [g] Verdruß, *m.* [h] genäſchig. [i] herausſpeiſen. [j] *say*, the all der geſammte. [k] Käfer, *m.* [l] hier und da. [m] abmalen.

41. [a] Geſchichte, *f.*

42. A well-digested[a] plan[b], when[c] completely carried out, makes[d] us forget all the trouble[e], which the means[f] may have given[g], in order to arrive[h] at[i] that aim[j].

43. You, beloved[a] brothers and sisters, fare[b] well!

44. Then, you mighty lords[a] of the earth, I was learning to know the littleness[b] of human grandeur.[c]

45. We cannot call beautiful the sound[a] even[b] of one single[c] land-animal.[d]

46. Words and adorned[a] speeches are no sure[b] proof[c] of true[d] gratitude.[e]

47. The whole property[a] of this savage[b] consisted[c] in a miserable hut of clay[d], a bow[e], and some arrows.[f]

48. The miser collects[a] money and valuables[b] without[c] any[d] purpose.[e]

49. The spendthrift has a useless[a], but the miser no[b] enjoyment[c] of[d] his property.[e]

50. His cheerful[a] song[b] is a true[c] companion[d] to the traveller.[e]

---

42. [a] wohlausgedacht. [b] Plan, *m.* [c] *say*, when it stands there,—carried out ausführen. [d] laſſen. [e] *say*, all that the means may have had troublesome unbequem. [f] Mittel, *n.* [g] *say*, had. [h] gelangen. [i] zu. [j] Zweck, *m.*

43. [a] geliebt, and mark, the Adjective after the Pronoun personel is so declined, af if the Indef. Article preceded. [b] leben.

44. [a] mighty lord mächtig. [b] Kleinheit. [c] Größe, *f.*

45. [a] Ton, *m.* [b] ſelbſt. [c] einzig. [d] Landthier, *n.*

46. [a] ſchmücken. [b] ſicher. [c] Beweis, *m.* [d] wahrhaft. [e] Dankbarkeit.

47. [a] Eigenthum, *n.* [b] Wild. [c] beſtehen. [d] Erdhütte, *f.* [e] Bogen, *m.* [f] Pfeil, *m.*

48. [a] *the miser* is to be expressed by the Adjective geizig. [a] zuſammenraffen. [b] Gut, *n.* (*pl.* Güter). [c] ohne, Acc. [d] irgend ein. [e] Zweck, *m.*

49. [a] unnütz. [b] kein. [c] Genuß, *m.* [d] von. [e] das Seinige.

50. [a] fröhlich. [b] Geſang, *m.* [c] treu. [d] Begleiter. [e] der Reiſende.

51. Nature gave to some birds only one single[a] melodious[b] sound[c], or a simple[d] musical[e] set[f] of tones[g], which they incessantly[h] repeat[i]; for instance[j] to the titmouse[k] who, by means of them[l], announces[m] his own[n] lively[o] disposition.[p]

52. If a part[a] is missing[b] in a totality[c], the latter[d] is incomplete[e] and faulty[f]; the missing part, however, must not be the most important[g] of the whole, else[h] the latter is entirely[i] destroyed[j], and not merely[k] incomplete.[l]

53. The neighing[a] of the horse, the noblest[b] of all animals, belongs[c] to the most expressive[d] and most powerful[e] sounds of the animal[f] chest.[g]

54. He wished so to live, that his first grey[a] hair[b] might not come from[c] repentance[d] of a bad action.

55. A really[a] good servant[b] must have open[c] eyes[d], closed[e] lips[f], clean[g] hands and speedy[h] limbs.[i]

56. You will see me again in a few[a] hours.

57. Have you so little curiosity[a], as[b] not to ask me for[c] my secret[d]?

---

51. [a] einzig. [b] melodiſch. [c] Laut, *m.* [d] einfach. [e] muſikaliſch. [f] Satz, *m.* [g] Ton, *m.* [h] unaufhörlich. [i] wiederholen. [j] zum Beiſpiel. [k] Meiſe, *f.* [l] damit. [m] ankündigen. [n] eigen. [o] lebhaft. [p] Weſen, *n.*

52. [a] Theil, *m.* [b] fehlen. [c] das Ganze. [d] dieſer, dieſe, dieſes. [e] unvollſtändig. [f] fehlerhaft. [g] wichtigſt. [h] ſonſt. [i] ganz. [j] zerſtören. [k] bloß, [l] unvollkommen.

53. [a] Wiehern. [b] edelſt, which must agree with *horse*. [c] gehören (zu). [d] ausdrucksvoll. [e] mächtigſt. [f] thieriſch. [g] Bruſt, *f.*

54. [a] grau. [b] Haar, *n.* [c] durch, Acc. [d] Reue, *f.* (über, Acc).

55. [a] wirklich. [b] der Bediente. [c] offen. [d] Auge, *n.* (*pl.* —n). [e] ſchließen. [f] *say*, a closed mouth Mund, *m.* [g] rein. [h] ſchnell. [i] Fuß, *m.*

56. [a] wenig and viel are not declined, when referring to intensity; but when referring to number, they are declinable.

57. [a] Neugier, *f.* [b] *say* that you do not, etc. [c] um, Acc. [d] Geheimniß, *n.*

VI. On the Declension of Adjectives in the Comparative and Superlative.

1. The lofty[a] vault[b] of God's house[c] resounds[d] from the chaunt[e] of the assembled[f] congregation[g]; and this chaunt accompanied[h] by the tones of the organ[i], rises[j] to the loftier vault[k] of heaven.

2. The transplanting[a] of the sugar-cane[b] from the Levant[c] to the occident[d] became of far[e] greater importance[f] for the commerce of the world[g] and for the fates[h] of countries and nations than silk-weaving.[i]

3. Gustavus Adolphus was the first general of his century, and the bravest soldier of his army.

4. Acquainted[a] with the tactics[b] of the Greeks[c] and Romans[d], he had invented[e] a better strategy[f], which served as model[g] to the greatest generals of the following times.

5. Deeper meaning[a] lies in the fabulous story[b] of my childhood than in that truth which life is teaching.

6. The human mind requires[a] frequent[b] contemplations[c] of that[d] which[e] is[f] to raise[g] the spirit above the earth.

---

1. [a] hoch. [b] Gewölbe, *n.* [c] Gotteshaus, *n.*, *neuter* (because the compounded Substantive takes the gender of the second part, as this is the chief of the whole). [d] wiederhallen. [e] Geſang, *m.* [f] verſammeln. [g] Gemeinde. [h] begleiten. [i] Orgel, *f.* [j] ſich erheben. [k] Wölbung.

2. [a] Verpflanzung. [b] Zuckerrohr, *n.* [c] Levante, *f.* [d] Abendland, *n.* [e] weit. [f] Wichtigkeit. [g] Welthandel, *m.* [h] Schickſal, *n.* (*pl.* —e). [i] Seidenweberei.

4. [a] Vertraut. [b] Taktik, *f.* [c] Grieche. [d] Römer. [e] erfinden. [f] Kriegskunſt, *f.* [g] zum Muſter dienen.

5. [a] Bedeutung. [b] Mährchen, *n.*

6. [a] bedürfen, which is construed with the Genitive or Accusative, as *I do not want him* ich bedarf ſeiner nicht, or ich bedarf ihn nicht. [b] oft, and take the comparative. [c] Anſchauung. [d] *this* is dieſer, and *that* jener, when two things or persons are contrasted, but else it is expressed by the longer forms of the Article, der, die, das, Gen. deſſen, deren, deſſen, Gen. pl. deren, when no relative follows, and derer when one follows; Dat. pl. denen. [e] *which* is was or das when referring to something general, and welches when relative to something definite. [f] *is to* express by ſoll. [g] erheben.

7. The philosopher[a] must dig[b] after excellent[c] thoughts[d], alike as[e] the miner[f] after the noblest[g] metals.[h]

8. The most solid[a] gold lies deepest[b]; who, however, would penetrate[c] so far[d], if he were[e] to disdain[f] the—at first[g] small[h]—yieldings[i] of the undertaken[j] working of the mine[k]?

9. The lion, in the divinations[a] of the prophets[b], was the symbol[c] of the highest strength[d] and generosity.[e]

10. In agriculture[a] we recognise[b] the foundation[c] of all civil[d] order[e], and the safest[f] and richest source[g] of prosperity.[h]

11. Nature has granted[a] to the tiniest[b] German bird, the wren[c], a very clear[d] set of sounds[e], which it recites[f] during[h] rain and wind, yea[i] in the severest[j] frost[k] and snow-storm[l], all the time[m] merrily[n] turning[o] around[p] on the highest[q] points of houses and trees.

---

7. [a] Denker. [b] graben, forſchen. [c] vorzüglich, *say*, the most excellent. [d] Gedanke, *m.* (which, like Name, Friede, Glaube, originally had an n in Nom. sing.). [e] wie. [f] Bergmann. [g] edel. [h] Metall, *n.*

8. [a] gediegen. [b] am tiefſten (an dem tiefſt-en; this is the way of forming the superlative of the Adverb, and an dem are contracted in am). [c] gelangen. [d] bis dahin. [e] *to be to*, express by wollen. [f] verſchmähen. [g] zuerſt or anfänglich. [h] gering. [i] Ausbeute, *f.*, only used in the singular. [j] unternehmen. [k] Bergbau.

9. [a] Weiſſagung. [b] Prophet (which like most foreign words of the masculine gender with the accent on the ultimate has en in the cases). [c] Bild, *n.* [d] Stärke, *f.* [e] Großmuth, *f.* (against the rule, since Muth is masculine; thus also, Demuth, *f.*, humility, Wehmuth, *f.*, melancholy).

10. [a] Landbau, *m.* [b] erkennen. [c] Grundlage, *f.* [d] bürgerlich. [e] Ordnung. [f] ſicher. [g] Quelle, *f.* [h] Wohlſtand, *m.*

11. [a] verleihen. [b] klein. [c] Zaunkönig or Winterkönig. [d] hell, [e] set of sounds Geſang, *m.* [f] abſingen. [h] während. [i] ja. [j] ſcharf. [k] Froſt, *m.* [l] Schneegeſtöber, *n.* [m] *whilst*, etc., wobei. [n] luſtig. [o] ſich drehen. [p] umher. [q] ober high.

12. Since the beginning[a] of the religious war[b] in Germany up to[c] the peace[d] of Munster[e], hardly[f] any thing[g] grand and remarkable has occurred[h] in the political world of Europe, in which[i] the reformation[j] had[k] not had the most eminent[l] share.[m]

VII. On Numbers.

1. Clement[a] the twelfth[b] died[c] in the eighty-eighth[d] year of his age[e], and the[f] tenth of his pontificate[g], on the sixth of February[h] seventeen hundred and forty.

2. The cardinals[a] being[b] uncertain whom to choose[c], Prosper Lambertini, the learned[d] and tolerant[e] archbishop[f] of Ancona, said with his accustomed[g] good-humour[h]:

3. "If you want[a] a saint[b], choose Gotti; if a politician[c], Aldrosandi; but if a good man, take me."

4. His advice[a] was followed[b], and he ascended[c] the papal[d] throne[e] as[f] Benedict the fourteenth.

---

12. [a] Anfang, *m.* [b] Religionskrieg, *m.* [c] bis zu. [d] Friede, *m.* [e] Münſterſch. [f] kaum. [g] Etwas. [h] geſchehen. [i] woran. [j] Religionsverbeſſerung. [k] take the subjunctive. [l] vorzüglich. [m] Antheil, *m.*

1. [a] Clemens. [b] the ordinal numbers are to *nineteen* formed by adding t to the cardinal ones, as der Zwölfte, and from twenty by adding ſt, as der zwanzigſte. [c] ſterben (a in imperf. o in past.). [d] The *units* stand always before the *tens*, therefore *eighty-eight* is acht und achtzig, consequently the ordinal must be acht und achtzigſt. [e] Alter, *n.* [f] *the* must refer to in. [g] Prieſterthum, *n.* [h] The names of the months stand without termination after ordinal numbers, as der erſte Auguſt the first of August.

2. [a] Cardinal (*pl.* — äle). [b] *say*, when the Cardinals were. [c] wählen, and *say*, whom they were to (ſollen) choose. [d] gelehrt. [e] duldſam. [f] Erzbiſchof. [g] gewöhnlich. [h] Scherzhaftigkeit.

3. [a] brauchen. [b] Heilig. [c] Staatsmann.

4. [a] Rath, *m.* [b] befolgen. [c] beſteigen. [d] päpſtlich. [e] Thron, *m.* [f] als.

5. Napoleon's chief army[a] of[b] about[c] three hundred and fifty thousand men[d] was, in the autumn of[e] 1813, concentrated[f] in the neighbourhood[g] of Dresden.

6. He divided it in[a] three parts. With the strongest[b] he advanced[c] himself[d] into Silesia[e]; the second Oudinot led towards[f] Berlin, and the third[g] remained[h] in Dresden, in order to guard[i] the Austrian[j] boundary.[k]

7. It[a] has been calculated[b], that the entire[c] force[d] of the allied[e] princes amounted to[f] about half[g] a million of warriors.[h]

8. Napoleon had half[a] less, but his force was more concentrated, and his superior[b] military[c] talent[d] seemed to counterbalance[e] the superior power[f] of his numerous[g], but less accomplished[h] adversaries.[i]

9. In the month of August the tempest of war[a] broke forth[b] on all points, and the two[c] halves[d] of Europe once more measured[e] themselves in a fearful[f] decisive struggle.[g]

10. The first glorious fight[a] Wallmoden encountered[b] on the twenty-first of August against Davoust near Vellahn.

---

5. [a] Hauptmacht, *f.* [b] von. [c] ungefähr. [d] Mann, and remark, when the Substantive expresses the mere form of number, and, at the same time, the things numbered, it stands after numeral words in the singular. [e] *of* is either omitted or expressed by *of the year*. [f] zuſammenziehen. [g] Umgegend, *f.*

6. [a] in with Acc. [b] ſtark. [c] vorbringen. [d] ſelbſt. [e] Schleſien. [f] gegen. [g] der dritte, contracted from dreite. [h] zurückbleiben. [i] bewachen. [j] öſtreichiſch. [k] Grenze, *f.*

7. [a] *say*, man, etc. [b] anrechnen. [c] geſammt. [d] Macht, *f.* [e] verbündet. [f] betragen. [g] halb, and mark, the Article always stands in German before the word halb. [h] Krieger.

8. [a] Hälfte, *f.*, *say*, the half less. [b] überlegen. [c d] Feldherrntalent, *n.* [e] überwiegen. [f] Uebermacht, *f.* [g] zahlreich. [h] geſchickt. [i] Gegner.

9. [a] Kriegesungewitter, *n.* [b] losbrechen. [c] *the two*, when both parties are known, is die beiden. [d] Hälfte, *f.* [e] meſſen. [f] furchtbar. [g] Entſcheidungskampf, *m.*

10. [a] Gefecht, *n.* [b] beſtehen.

11. The emperor[a] Conrad the second of Germany was solemnly[b] received[c], on the twenty-second of March, one thousand and twenty-seven, by[d] pope Johann the nineteenth, and held[e] a victorious[f] entrance[g] in Rome.

12. When during three consecutive years[a], from one thousand and twenty eight to[b] one thousand and thirty, all the harvests[c] in Italy, Germany and France were destroyed[d] through the powerful[e] struggle[f] of the elements[g], through immense[h] rains[i] and fearful[j] inundations[k], there arose[l] the most terrible[m] famine[n], of which[o] history knows to such an extent.[p]

13. But[a] three centuries[b] after the loss[c] of the Holy Land arose[d] the poet, who worthily[e] celebrated[f] the heroic[g] renown[h] of Godfrey[i] de Bouillon, and longer perhaps were Achilles and Hector fallen, before[j] Homer made them immortal.[k]

14. Points, where the Ecliptic[a] crosses[b] the Aequator[c], are called aequinoctial points.[d] One[e] is called the spring point.[f]

15. This position[a] the sun occupies[b] between the twentieth and twenty-second of March[c], and this is for us the commencement[d] of[e] spring.

---

11. [a] Kaiſer. [b] feierlich. [c] empfangen. [d] *say*, by the. [e] halten. [f] ſiegreich. [g] Einzug, *m.*

12. [a] *say*, three years through hindurch. [b] bis. [c] Ernte, *f.* [d] verderben, *v. n.* [e] gewaltig. [f] Kampf, *m.* [g] Element, *n.* (*pl.* —e). [h] ungeheuer. [i] Regen, *m.* (take singular). [j] übergroß. [k] Ueberſchwemmung. [d] entſtehen. [m] gräßlich. [n] Hungersnoth, *f.* [o] say, *which* instead of *of which* [p] Ausdehnung.

13. [a] erſt. [b] Jahrhundert, *n.* [c] Verluſt, *m.* [d] auftreten. [e] würdig. [f] feiern. [g h] Heldenruhm, *m.* [i] Gottfried. [j] als. [k] der Unſterblichkeit übergeben.

14. [a] Ekliptik, *f.* [b] durchſchneiden. [c] Aequator, *m.* [d] Aequinoctialpunkt, *m.* [e] ein, which is declined as numeral, like an Adjective, when no Substantive follows. [f] Frühlingspunkt, *m.*

15. [a] Stellung. [b] haben. [c] März. [d] Anfang, *m.* [e] *say*, of the.

16. The earth accomplishes[a] its orbit[b] around the sun, a journey of a hundred and thirty one millions[c] of German miles[d], in three hundred and sixty-five days, five hours, forty-eight minutes[e] and forty-five seconds[f], which we call a solar year.[g]

17. The surface[a] of the earth consists[b] of land and water. The sea, which occupies[c] the greatest part of it[d], surrounds[e] the land, the extent[f] of which[g] amounts to[h] somewhat[i] beyond one-fourth part[j] of the whole earth, whilst[k] three-fourths are covered[l] by the sea.

18. The circumference[a] of the circle, be it large or small, is divided into three hundred and sixty equal parts, which are called degrees.[b]

19. A quadrant[a] is the fourth part of the circumference of the circle[b], therefore[c] it contains $\frac{360}{4}=90°$.[d]

20. Every right[a] angle[b] has the size[c] of a quadrant[d], namely[e] 90°. Half[f] a right angle, therefore, has $\frac{90}{2}=45°$.[g]

21. The sun rose[a] on[b] the first of December at[c] a quarter[d] to eight, and set at a quarter to four.

---

16. [a] vollenden. [b] Bahn, *f.* [c] Million, *f.* [d] Meile, *f.* [e] Minute, *f.* [f] Secunde, *f.* [g] Sonnenjahr, *n.*

17. [a] Oberfläche, *f.* [b] beſtehen (aus). [c] einnehmen. [d] *say*, of the same. [e] umgeben. [f] Ausdehnung. [g] *say*, whose (deſſen). [h] betragen. [i] etwas. [j] fractional numbers are formed from the ordinals by the addition of Theil, *n.*, shortened into tel, thus Drittel, *n.*, Viertel, *n.*, etc. [k] während. [l] bedecken.

18. [a] Umfang, *m.* [b] Grad, *m.*

19. [a] Quadrant, *m.* [b] Kreisumfang, *m.* [c] daher. [d] write this in words: three hundred and sixty fourth-parts, equal (to) ninety degrees; and mark, Grad, which is a measure, and, at the same time, the thing measured, has after numerals no plural.

20. [a] recht. [b] Winkel, *m.* [c] Größe, *f.* [d] mark, foreign Substantives in ant have en in the cases. [e] nämlich. [f] *say*, a half. [g] write this in words.

21. [a] aufgehen. [b] an, Dat. [c] um. [d] mark, *quarter-past eight* is ein Viertel auf (i. e. towards) neun; *half-past eight* is halb (understand *towards*) neun, and *quarter to nine* is drei Viertel auf neun.

22. On the first of November it rose at half-past six[a], and set at half-past four.

23. On the eleventh of October it rose at a quarter-past six, and set at a quarter-past five.

24. On the twenty-first of September it rose sixteen minutes to[a] six, and set one minute past[b] six.

25. Solon left his country[a] lest[b] he might be compelled[c] to abolish[d] one[e] or another[f] of his laws.[g]

26. A country does not produce[a] everything[b], but[c] possesses[d] one thing,[e] and lacks[f] the other[g]; thus also man alone does not suffice[h] himself,—he possesses one thing, and lacks the other.

27. The fifteenth century, with Philip de Comines as his text book[a], seems to have been the chief sphere[b] of Arnold's studies[c] in modern[d] history.

28. Indeed[a] the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries[b] have[c] produced only few[d] great authors[e] in German[f]; but these few are the more[g] remarkable.

29. The short[a] abstract[b] of all[c] religion and rule of conduct[d] is: fear God, and love thy neighbour as thyself.

30. This great man was by his affability[a], without any exterior[b] pride[c], accessible[d] to[e] anybody[f].

---

22. [a] i. e. *half (towards) seven.*

24. [a] auf. [b] nach.

25. [a] *say*, went out of the country außer Landes gehen. [b] damit —nicht. [c] nöthigen. [d] aufheben. [e] remember, no Substantive follows in the same case. [f] *say*, the other. [g] Geſetz, *n.* (*pl.* —e.)

26. [a] hervorbringen. [b] take neuter of aller, e, es. [c] as a *denial* of *not*, it is ſondern. [d] beſitzen. [e] *say*, the one. [f] bedürfen. [g] take the neuter. [h] genügen.

27. [a] Leitfaden, *say*, for the zu dem, contracted zum. [b] Haupt-ſchauplatz, *m.* [c] Studium. *n.*, and Latin Substantives in *ium* have in German ien in plural. [d] *say*, in the modern neuer.

28. [a] zwar. [b] take the singular. [c] *say*, has. [d] wenig. [e] Schrift-ſteller. [f] *say*, in German language. [g] deſto.

29. [a] kurz. [b] Inbegriff, *m.* [c] all. [d] Sittenlehre, *f.*

30. [a] Freundlichkeit. [b] äußer. [c] Stolz, *m.* [d] zugänglich. [e] für. [f] jedermann, of which only the Genitive has an s, as sign of declension.

31. The whole of[a] Germany[b] admired the discipline[c] by which the Swedish[d] armies distinguished[e] themselves in so creditable a manner.[f]

32. Every[a] extravagance[b] was in the most severe way[c] punished[d]; most severely[e], blasphemy[f], robbery[g], gambling[h], and duels.[i]

33. Every[a] fatigue[b] of war the king bore[c] like[d] the commonest soldier[e] off[f] the army.

34. Scent[a] is for[b] many a[c] flower, what singing[d] is to birds.

35. During the long course[a] of our life, one[b] must experience[c] much, and suffer[d] much, that[e] one would gladly[f] not experience.

36. The students, who were dissatisfied with the behaviour[a] of the citizens[b], were accustomed, in order to annoy[c] them, to leave the town in great numbers[d], and at[e] such occasions, they first promenaded[f] four and four[g] in a line through all the chief streets of the place.

---

31. [a] ganz. [b] Deutſchland, *n.* [c] Mannszucht, *f.* [d] Schwediſch. [e] unterſcheiden. [f] in so creditable a manner ſo rühmlich.

32. [a] all. [b] Ausſchweifung (use the plural). [c] severe ſtreng, and mark, the superlative of an Adverb like ſtreng is aufs ſtrengſte, when it means *absolutely* it was *the most severe*; [d] ahnden. [e] but when it implies that it was *comparatively the most severe*, it is am ſtrengſten. [f] Gotteslaſterung. [g] Räuberei, *f.* [h] Spiel, *n.* [i] Zweikampf, *m.*

33. [a] all. [b] Ungemach, *n.* [c] erdulden. [d] gleich with Dat. [e] der Gemeinſte. [f] aus.

34. [a] Geruch, *m.* [b] expressed by the Dat. [c] mancher, e, es. [d] Geſang, *m.*

35. [a] Zeit, *f.* [b] man. [c] erleben. [d] erdulden. [e] *that* when referring to something indefinite is was. [f] gern.

36. [a] Benehmen, *n.* [b] Bürger. [c] ärgern. [d] Maſſe, *f.* [e] beiziehen. [g] *distributive* numbers are formed by putting je (which is as much as immer *always*) before the cardinal numbers. [h] Hauptſtraße, *f.*

VIII. On Pronouns.

1. Every[a] animal has its distinct[b] character[c], or some[d] characteristic[e] feature[f] which[g] we exclusively[h] and especially[i] attribute[j] to it.

2. Give every man[a] his own.[b]

3. Germany did not possess a second man like[a] Luther, and no other[b] nation of modern[c] times[d] has to show his like.[e]

4. He[a] is mischievous[b] who rejoices[c] at the loss[d] which another has sustained.[e]

5. All countries inhabited[a] by Germans on the left[b] of the Rhine had been incorporated[c] into the Roman[d] Empire[e], and the same[f] fate[g] threatened[h] also those[i] between the Elbe[j] and Rhine.

6. The hair[a] of[b] queen Christina of Sweden was her greatest ornament[c], but she bestowed[d] no care[e] on it.[f]

---

1. [a] jeder, e, es. [b] beſtimmt. [c] Character, *m.* [d] irgend ein. [e f] characteristic feature Characterzug, *m.* [g] welcher or der. [h] ausſchließlich. [i] vorzugsweiſe. [j] beilegen.

2. [a] jeder. [b] *my own* is das Meine or das Meinige.

3. [a] wie. [b] no other kein andrer, keine andre, kein andres. [c] *say*, of the *modern* neuer. [d] take the singul. [e] *my like* is in German a Genitive, meines Gleichen, which means *of my like* (understand *station*), from the Nominative mein Gleiches my like station.

4. [a] *he who* is *a*) derjenige welcher when it refers to a certain individual, but *b*) when it refers to *mankind* in general, *he* is not translated, and *who* is expressed by wer. [b] ſchadenfroh. [c] ſich freuen über, Acc. [d] Schaden, *m.* [e] leiden.

5. [a] *say*, which were inhabited bewohnen. [b] das linke Ufer. [c] einſchließen. [d] römiſch. [e] Herrſchaft. [f] derſelbe, dieſelbe, dasſelbe. [g] Schickſal, *n.* [h] drohen with Dat. [i] der, die, das, Pron. Demonstr., which is used to avoid the repetition of a Substantive before mentioned. [j] die Elbe.

6. [a] Haar, *n.* [b] *say*, of the. [c] Schmuck, *m.* [d] verwenden. [e] Sorgfalt, *f.* [f] mark, when the pronouns der, die, das, or er, ſie, es, are joined in their neuters to prepositions, they are changed into the Adv. da, and placed before the preposit., and when the latter begins with a vowel an r is inserted, as durch das, dadurch; auf das, darauf.

7. We are all creatures[a] of the same God.

8. Humble[a] is he who[b] regards[c] all his treasures[d] as voluntary[e] and undeserved[f] presents[g] from[h] the hand of Providence.[i]

9. Only those[a] animals are speaking by[b] signs[c], to which[d] the living[e] sound[f] has been denied[g].

10. The tongue[a] even[b] of some birds is formed[c] to be able to repeat[d] human words, the sense[e] of which they certainly[g] do not comprehend[h].

11. Do you know the name of that[a] man, whose heroism[b] consisted in the bold[c] confession[d] of truth[e], whose sword[f] was the word, whose armour[g] his confidence[h] in God[i], whose pride[j] his poverty[k]?

12. There are[a] great countries on the earth, in which the weather[b] is, the whole year through[c], so mild, or perhaps even[d] hot[e], that their inhabitants[f] need[g] neither fuel[h], nor buildings[i], nor dress[j] as[k] protection[l] against the frost[m].

13. In the lives[a] of most[b] men there are[c] far more healthy days[d], than days, in which they are ill.

---

7. [a] Geſchöpf, *n.* (*pl.*—e).

8. [a] beſcheiden. [b] cf. note 4[a]. [c] betrachten. [d] Gabe, *f.* [e] freiwillig. [f] unverdient. [g] Geſchenk, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [h] aus. [i] Vorſehung.

9. [a] derjenige or der. [b] durch. [c] Zeichen, *n.* [d] welcher or der; the latter, as a relative Pronoun, has deſſen, deren, deſſen in Gen. Sing.; deren in Gen. Pl., and denen in Dat. Pl. [e] lebendig. [f] Laut, *m.* [g] verſagen.

10. [a] Zunge, *f.* [b] ſchon. [c] machen. [d] herſagen. [e] Sinn, *m.* [f] *of which* is to be put before *the sense*, and the article, of course, omitted. [g] doch. [h] begreifen.

11. [a] jener. [b] Heldenthum, *n.* [c] kühn. [d] Bekenntniß, *n.* [e] Wahrheit. [f] Schwert, *n.* [g] Rüſtung. [h] [i] Gottvertrauen, *n.* [j] Stolz, *m.* [k] Armuth, *f.*

12. [a] es giebt with Acc. [b] Witterung. [c] hindurch. [d] auch wohl. [e] heiß. [f] Bewohner. [g] bedürfen. [h] Feuerung. [i] Gebäude, *n.* [j] Kleidung. [k] zu with the Def. article. [l] Schutz, *m.* [m] Froſt, *m.*

13. [a] Take the Singular. [b] die allermeiſten. [c] To be expressed with ſein. [d] Take the Genitive.

14. There are[a] far more years, in which the harvests[b] thrive well[c], than such in which we have to complain[d] about[e] real[f] failure[g].

15. Who[a] often associates[b] with bad men, him[c] we[d] shall soon take[e] for their companion[f].

16. He who knows from[a] experience[b] what[c] illness[d] is, knows and feels the bliss[e] of health[f] far more lively[g] than he who never was indisposed.[h]

17. Who in former times[a] suffered from[b] want[c] of[d] the necessities of life[e], him the enjoyment[f] of his present[g] prosperity[h] renders far more happy than a man[i] who from his youth[j] was living in abundance.[k]

18. Among[a] millions of human beings[b] there is perhaps only one single person[c] who knows so to exert[d] his mind that it yields[e] all[f] that[g] it can yield.

19. The idea[a] of[b] that which the world requires[c] was early formed[d] in the mind of[e] Göthe.

20. "Thou art," said Solon to Crœsus, "mightily[a]

---

14. [a] Cf. Note 12. [a]. [b] Frucht. [c] gerathen. [d] klagen. [e] über, A. [f] eigentlich. [g] Mißwachs, *m.*

15. [a] Cf. Note 4. [a]. [b] umgehen. [c] der, and mark, this Pronoun demonstrative, when standing after wer, can be omitted; but only, when both occur in the Nominative case. [d] express by *one* man. [e] halten. [f] Geſell, *m.* (Gen.—en).

16. [a] aus. [b] Erfahrung. [c] *what* as the Pronoun of the *direct* or *indirect* question is always was. [d] Krankſein. [e] Glück, *n.* [f] Geſundheit. [g] lebhaft. [h] unpaß.

17. [a] ehemals. [b] leiden to suffer from, Perfect. [c] Mangel. [d] an, Dat. [e] Lebensbedürfniß, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [f] Genuß, *m.* [g] jetzig. [h] Wohlſtand, *m.* (Gen.—es). [i] derjenige. [j] von Jugend auf. [k] Ueberfluß, *m.* (Gen.—es).

18. [a] unter. [b] Menſch, *m.* (Gen. — en). [c] einzig, in masculine. [d] anſtrengen. [e] hergeben. [f] aller, e, es. [g] the relative *that*, when referring to something general, is either das or was.

19. [a] Vorſtellung. [b] von. [c] bedürfen. [d] take the reflective form, ſich bilden. [e] *in the mind of* express through bei.

20. [a] gewaltig.

rich; but that which[b] thou askest[c] of me I cannot tell thee before I have first[d] learned[e] that thou hast happily reached the end[f] of thy life."

21. King Conrad the Second established[a] a peace[b] in Germany, such as[c] was[d] unknown[e] to[f] this extent[g] since immemorable[h] times.

22. That[a] is the most open[b], instructive[c], and unreserved[d] discourse[e] which passes[f] between two persons who are familiar[g] and intimate friends.

23. The best[a] father is he[b] who teaches his children what is good and just.

24. The lark, in the corn-fields, raises[a] her song[b], and with it[c] she rises[d] high in the air[e] up to[f] the clouds.

25. The cultivation[a] of one's[b] own ground[c] creates[d] and strengthens[e] the attachment[f] towards it[g].

---

[b] *which* is, according to note 18 [g], das or was; now, to ask is fragen um, and it is to be observed, that when a relative neuter is combined with a Preposition, the Pronoun is changed into the relative Adverbs da or wo, and put before the Preposition, as durch was, wodurch, dadurch. When the Preposition begins with a vowel, an r is inserted, as aus was, woraus; however, before um it is not wo, but wa, and um was is warum or darum. [c] fragen, with Accusative of the person [d] *say*, not. [e] erfahren, *n.* [f] Ende, *n.*

21. [a] befeſtigen. [b] Friede, *m.* [c] wie er, wie ſie, wie es. [d] take the Perfect. [e] unbekannt. [f] in. [g] ausdehnung. [h] undenklich.

22. [a] *that* when an indefinite subject is das. [b] offenherzig. [c] lehrreich. [d] zutraulich. [e] Unterhaltung. [f] Statt finden. [g] *say*, hearty bosom friends.

23. [a] beſt. [b] turn it so, *that is the best father*, and cf. Note 22 [a].

24. [a] erheben. [b] Lied, *n.* [c] derſelbe, for it is to be remarked, that the cases of es *it* are not used when a Preposition precedes, and the compound Pronoun demonstrative derſelbe is used instead. [d] ſich ſelbſt erheben. [e] take the plural. [f] bis an, Acc.

25. [a] Anbau, *m.* [b] *say*, the. [c] Boden, *m.* [d] erzeugen. [e] verſtärken. [f] Liebe, *f.* [g] *say*, towards the same.

26. People[a] can lessen[b] many an[c] evil, when a number[d] of them[e], with united[f] energy[g], struggle[h] against it[i].

27. Each untractable[a] man, at variance[b] with fortune[c], wreaks[d] her[e] injuries[f] on[g] his own heart.

28. I am more afraid[a] of[b] my virtues than of my errors[c]; the first[d] easily mislead[e] me to pride[f], the latter teach me humility[g].

29. The object[a] of an idyllic[b] poem[c] is always the situation[d], that[e] of an epic[f], the action[g] of a man; the first is always descriptive[h], the latter throughly[i] narrating[j].

30. St.[a] Odilo, abbot[b] of Clugny, contributed[c] during[d] the great famine[e], which raged[f] through Italy, France, and Germany, from the year 1028 to 1030, everything[g] his church possessed in[h] gold and silver, even[i] the imperial[j] crown of Henry[k] II., which the latter[l] had presented as a gift[m] to the convent.

31. With the art[a] of weaving[b] that of dying[c] is in indissoluble[d] connection.

---

26. [a] plural of der Menſch. [b] vermindern. [c] mancher, e, es, many a. [d e] *say*, many of them, and put *of them* before *many*. [f] vereinigt. [g] Kraft, *f.*, and take the plural. [h] arbeiten. [i] cf. Note 6, [f].

27. [a] ſtörriſch. [b] zerfallen. [c] Glück, *n.* [d] rächen. [e] *her* would be in German ſein, because Glück is neuter; this would be equivocal, since it might be referred to *man*. In such cases, the Pronouns Possessive *his*, *her*, *its*, *their*, are changed for the genitive of the Demonstrative Pronoun der, die, das. [f] Unbilde, *f.* [g] an, Dat.

28. [a] ſich fürchten. [b] vor, Dat. [c] Fehler, *m.* [d] the Pronouns dieſer and jener are used to express *the latter* and *the first*. [e] verleiten. [f] Stolz, *m.* [g] Demuth, *f.*

29. [a] Gegenſtand, *m.* [b] idylliſch. [c] Gedicht, *n.* [d] Zuſtand, *m.* [e] cf. Note 5, [i]. [f] epiſch. [g] Handlung. [h] beſchreibend. [i] durchaus. [j] erzählend.

30. [a] *say*, the saint heilig. [b] Abt. [c] hergeben. [d] während, Gen. [e] Hungersnoth, *f.* [f] wüthen. [g] *say*, all, *n.*; and add *which*. [h] an. [i] ja. [j] kaiſerlich. [k] Heinrich. [l] cf. Note 28, [d]. [m] ſchenken. [n] Kloſter, *n.*

31. [a] Kunſt, *f.* [b] Weberei. [c] Färberei. [d] unauflöslich.

32. The manufacturers[a] of Italy, Germany, and the Netherlands[b] soon found their way just as well[c] to[d] the Orient[e], as those of the Orient to the first countries.

33. They were reading Göthe's epic poem that I had seen proceeding from its origin[a], and which[b] stirred up[c], in our discourse[d], all ideas[e] on[f] epic and dramatic art.

34. The portraits[a] of Guttenberg and Faust are still to be seen on a cannon, which the Swedes took with them[b] to Magdeburg during the thirty years' war, but which has been returned[c] to the people of Mayence[d] by Napoleon after the battle of Jena.

35. He who loves money more than mankind[a] is not able[b] to gain a true friend.

36. He mentioned first[a] some passages[b] drawn[c] from[d] ancient authors, by means[e] of which the reader might the easier[f] enter[g] into the spirit[h] of this history.

37. In common[a] with all other foxes[b], those of Africa are great enemies to[c] birds which lay their eggs upon the ground[d].

---

32. [a] Kunſterzeugniß, *n.* [b] Niederlande. [c] eben ſo gut. [d] nach. [e] Orient, *m.*

33. [a] entſtehen. [b] when a Substantive is explained by two adjective sentences, the first of these is introduced by der, die, das, and the second by welcher, e, es. [c] in Bewegung bringen. [d] Geſpräch, *n.*, and take the plural. [e] Idee, *f.* [f] über, Acc.

34. [a] Bildniß, *n.* [b] to take with (one) mitnehmen. [c] wiederſchenken. [d] die Mainzer.

35. [a] take the plural of Menſch. [b] im Stande.

36. [a] vorausſchicken. [b] Stelle, *f.* [c] ziehen. [d] aus. [e] vermittelſt. [f] um ſo leichter. [g] ſich hineindenken. [h] Geiſt, *m.*

37. [a] Gemeinſchaft. [b] Fuchs, *m.* (*pl.* Füchſe). [c] *say*, of the. [d] Erde, *f.*

IX. On Verbs Auxiliary, Active, Passive, Neuter, and Reflective.

1. Be prudent[a] stands in the Scriptures[b], but be without guile[c].

2. Let nothing be more sacred[a] to thee than the fulfilling[b] of a given promise[c].

3. Commerce[a] and the thereby[b] effected[c] prosperity[d] became the pillars[e] of civil[f] liberty[g]; for one had the means[h], by which[i] she could be defended[j], when necessity[k] required it.[l]

4. What will become of[a] me? A good for nothing[b], if you are lazy[c].

5. The blossom[a] of the vine[b] is lost[c] among[d] the larger leaves[e], and is only betrayed[f] by the delicate[g] lovely flavour.[i]

6. The lion roars[a], the wolves are howling[b], and the bears are growling[c].

7. Art[a] delights[b] the mind[c].

8. The spring[a] enlivens[b] nature, and gladdens[c] mankind.

9. Tyranny[a] earns[b] bad reward[c].

10. There are several[a] examples[b] known[c] of the speedy[d] and unremitting[e] flights[f] of falcons[g].

---

1. [a] klug. [b] Schrift, *f.*, take the singular. [c] Falſch.

2. [a] heilig. [b] Erfüllung. [c] Verſprechen, *n.*

3. [a] Handel, *m.* [b] dadurch. [c] ſchaffen. [d] Wohlſtand, *m.* [e] Stütze, *f.* [f] bürgerlich. [g] Freiheit. [h] Mittel, *n.* [i] wodurch. [j] vertheidigen. [k] Noth, *f.* [l] *say*, forced to it dazu zwingen.

4. [a] aus. [b] Taugenichts, *m.* [c] faul.

5. [a] Blüthe, *f.* [b] Weinſtock, *m.* [c] *say*, loses itself ſich verlieren. [d] unter, *acc.* [e] Blatt, *n.* (*pl.* Blätter). [f] *say*, betrays itself ſich verrathen. [g] zart. [h] lieblich. [i] Duft, *m.*

6. [a] brüllen. [b] heulen. [c] brummen.

7. [a] Kunſt, *f.* [b] ergötzen. [c] Geiſt, *m.*

8. [a] Frühling, *m.* [b] beleben. [c] erheitern.

9. [a] Tyrannei. [b] ernten. [c] Lohn, *m.*

10. [a] verſchieden. [b] Beiſpiel, *n.* (*pl.* —e). [c] bekannt. [d] ſchnell. [e] ausdauernd. [f] Flug, *m.*, take the singular. [g] Falke, *m.*

11. A falcon of Henry II., which had been lost[a] during[b] the chase[c] near[d] Fontainebleau, was caught[e] next day in Malta, at[f] a distance[g] of a thousand miles, and recognised[h] by[i] its collar[j].

12. In the year 1307, the Swiss[a] formed[b] their first league[c].

13. There was a king of Greece; he was called[a] Athamas, and his wife[b] was called Nephele. They had two children, a son and a daughter; the first was called Phrixus, and the latter Helle.

14. The characteristic feature[a] of an animal is often so decided[b], that all nations from the oldest times thought[c] they could not shorter[d] express[e] their opinion about[f] a man, than by[g] pointing him out[h] by means of[i] the name of an animal[j]. Thus Nero was called a tiger, Herodes a fox.

15. In their forests[a], their sandy deserts[b], and in[c] their heaths[d], the Teutonic[e], the Arab[f], and Mongol[g] nations[h] would have constantly[i] remained[j] what they were.

16. The hand of industry[a] has imperceptibly[b] extinguished[c] all the destructive[d] vestiges[e] of the great war; but the salutary[f] effects[g] by which it was accompanied[h] have remained.

17. What a weakness[a] in reasonable[b] creatures[c], that they should love[d] to astonish and terrify[e] one another.

---

11. [a] take the reflective form. [b] auf, Dat. [c] Jagd, *f.* [d] bei. [e] fangen. [f] in. [g] Entfernung. [h] erkennen. [i] an, Dat. [j] Halsband, *n.*

12. [a] Schweizer. [b] bilden. [c] Bund, *m.*

13. [a] heißen, to be called. [b] Gattin.

14. [a] Charakterzug, *m.* [b] bestimmt. [c] glauben. [d] kurz. [e] ausdrücken. [f] über, Acc. [g] *say*, if they, etc. [h] bezeichnen to point out. [i] mit. [j] Thiername, *m.*

15. [a] Wald, *m.* (*pl.* Wälder). [b] Sandwüste, *f.* [c] auf, *d.* [d] Heide, *f.* [e] deutsch. [f] arabisch. [g] mongolisch. [h] Völkerschaft. [i] ewig. [j] bleiben.

16. [a] Fleiß, *m.* (Gen.—es). [b] unvermerkt. [c] auslöschen. [d] verderblich. [e] Spur, *f.* [f] wohlthätig. [g] Folge, *f.* [h] begleiten.

17. [a] Schwachheit. [b] vernünftig. [c] Geschöpf, *n.* (*pl.* —e). [d] *say*, that they should love it; *should* express by sollen. [e] to astonish and terrify in Staunen und Furcht setzen.

18. The conspirators[a] against the life of Cæsar did not bind[b] themselves by an oath[c]; but even[d] without that they kept firmly together[e], persevered[f], and preserved silence[g].

19. The kaliph was sitting, during[a] a beautiful afternoon, comfortably[b] on his sofa; he had been sleeping a little, for it was a hot day, and he now looked[c] very cheerful[d] after his nap[e].

20. He was smoking[a] from[b] a long pipe[c] of rosewood[d], was drinking now and then[e] a little coffee, which a slave[f] poured out[g] for him, and always stroked[h] his beard[i] contentedly[j] when he had relished it[k].

21. In short[a], one could perceive from the look of the kaliph[b], that he felt quite happy[c].

22. About this hour one could very well speak to him, because he was then always very gentle[a] and affable[b].

23. On that account, his grand vizier, Mansor, called upon[a] him every day about this time.

24. Now, on that afternoon he came too, but looked[a] very thoughtful[b], quite contrary to[c] his usual custom[d].

25. The kaliph took[a] the pipe out of his mouth[b], and said, "Why do you exhibit[c] such a thoughtful countenance[d], grand vizier?"

---

18. [a] Verſchworen, part. of verſchwören. [b] verbinden. [c] Eid., *m.* [d] auch. [e] to keep together, zuſammen halten. [f] ausharren. [g] to preserve silence, ſchweigen.

19. [a] an, Dat. [b] behaglich. [c] ausſehen. [d] heiter. [e] Schläfchen, *n.*

20. [a] rauchen. [b] aus. [c] Pfeife, *f.* [d] Roſenholz, *n.* [e] hie und da. [f] Sklave, *m.* [g] einſchenken. [h] ſtreichen. [i] *say*, to himself the beard. [j] zufrieden. [k] I relish it es ſchmeckt mir.

21. [a] kurz. [b] to perceive from the look of one es einem anſehen. [c] I am quite happy, es iſt mir ganz wohl.

22. [a] mild. [b] leutſelig.

23. [a] beſuchen.

24. [a] ausſehen. [b] gedankenvoll. [c] gegen. [d] usual custom, Gewohnheit.

25. [a] thun. [b] Mund, *m.* [c] machen. [d] Geſicht, *n.*

26. The grand vizier crossed[a] his arms[b] over his chest[c], bowed[d] before his master, and replied[e].

27. "Sire! Whether[a] I exhibit a thoughtful countenance, I do not know; but here below[b], at[c] the palace[d], stands a pedlar[e]; he has such beautiful things, that it vexes[f] me not to have much superfluous[g] money."

28. The kaliph, who for some time[a] had wished to give some pleasure[b] to his grand vizier, sent down his black slave, in order to fetch up[c] the pedlar.

29. Soon the slave came back with the pedlar. This was a little clumsy[a] man, dark brown[b] in his[c] face, and in ragged[d] attire[e].

30. He carried a chest[a], in which he had all sorts of[b] merchandise, pearls and rings, richly inlaid[c] pistols[d], goblets[e] and combs[f].

31. The kaliph and his vizier looked at[a] everything, and the first bought at last beautiful pistols for himself and Mansor, but for the wife of the vizier a comb.

32. When the pedlar was already wishing to shut[a] his chest again, the kaliph perceived[b] a little drawer[c], and asked, if there were also yet[d] some merchandize.

33. The pedlar pulled out[a] this drawer, and showed in it a box[b] with a blackish[c] powder[d], and a paper with singular[e] writing[f], which neither the kaliph nor Mansor could read.

---

26. [a] kreuzweis ſchlagen. [b] Arm, *m.* (*pl.*—e). [c] Bruſt, *f.* [d] ſich verneigen. [e] erwiedern.

27. [a] ob. [b] unten. [c] bei. [d] Palaſt, *m.* [e] Krämer. [f] ärgern. [g] überflüſſig.

28. [a] lange ſchon. [b] to give pleasure, Freude machen. [c] heraufholen.

29. [a] dick. [b] ſchwarzbraun. [c] *say*, in the. [d] zerlumpt. [e] Anzug, *m.*

30. [a] Kaſten, *m.* [b] allerhand, which is indeclinable. [c] beſchlagen. [d] Piſtole, *f.* [e] Becher, *m.* [f] Kamm, *m.* (*pl.* Kämme).

31. [a] durchmuſtern.

32. [a] zumachen. [b] ſehen. [c] Schublade, *f.* [d] noch.

33. [a] herausziehen. [b] Doſe, *f.* [c] ſchwärzlich. [d] Pulver, *n.* [e] ſonderbar. [f] Schrift, *f.*

34. "I once got[a] these two pieces[b] from a merchant who found them in Mecca in the street," said the pedlar, "I do not know what they contain[c]; they are at[d] your service[e] for a small[f] price[g]; I can surely[h] do[i] nothing with them[j]."

35. The kaliph, who gladly[a] had in his library[b] old manuscripts[c], even if he[d] could not read them, bought the writing and the box, and dismissed[e] the pedlar.

36. The kaliph, however,[a] thought he would gladly know what the writing contained, and asked the vizier if he did not know somebody[b] who could decipher[c] it.

37. "Most gracious[a] lord and master," answered the latter, "near[b] the great mosque[c] there lives a man: he is called Selim the Learned[d]: he understands[e] all languages: let him come: he perhaps knows these mysterious[f] characters.[g]"

38. The learned Selim was soon fetched. "Selim," said the kaliph to him, "Selim, it is said[a] you are very learned; look now[b] a little into this writing whether you can read it."

39. "If you can read it, then you get a new holiday dress[a] from me: if you cannot[b], then you get twelve boxes on your ear[c], and twenty-five stripes[d] on[e] the soles of your feet[f], since[g] people[h] call you then without reason[i] Selim the learned."

---

34. [a] bekommen. [b] Stück, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [c] enthalten. [d] • it stands at my service es ſteht mir zu Dienſten. [f] gering. [g] Preis, *m.* [h] doch. [i] unternehmen. [j] damit.

35. [a] gern. [b] Bibliothek, *f.* [c] Handſchrift, *f.* [d] wenn er auch. [e] entlaſſen.

36. aber. [b] jemand. [c] entziffern.

37. [a] gnädig. [b] bei. [c] Moſchee, *f.* [d] gelehrt. [e] verſtehen. [f] geheimnißvoll. [g] Zug, *m.* (*pl.* Züge).

38. [a] *say*, one says. [b] einmal.

39. [a] Feſtkleid, *n.* [b] *add*, it. [c] Ohrfeige, *f.* box on the ear. [d] Streich, *m.* (*pl.*—e). [e] auf, Dat. [f] Fußſohle, *f.* sole of the foot. [g] weil. [h] man. [i] umſonſt.

40. Selim bowed and said: "Thy will be done[a], Sire." For a long time he looked at[b] the writing, but suddenly[c] he exclaimed[d]: "This is Latin, Sire, or I will be hanged[e]!"

41. "Say, what is[a] in it," commanded[b] the kaliph, "if it be[c] Latin." Selim began to translate[d]:—

42. "Man[a], who[b] findest this, praise Allah for his grace.[c] Whoever takes a pinch[d] of[e] the powder in this box, and says '*Mutabor*,' he can transform[f] himself into any[g] animal, and understands besides[h] the language of animals."

43. "If he wants[a] to return[b] again[c] to his human form, let him bow[d] three times towards[e] the East and pronounce[f] that word."

44. "But take care[a], when you are transformed, that you do not laugh; else the magic word disappears[b] entirely from[c] your memory[d], and you remain an animal."

45. When Selim the learned had thus read, the kaliph was pleased[a] beyond[b] measure.[c]

46. He made[a] the learned man take an oath[b] not to say to any one[c] anything[d] about the secret[e], gave him a beautiful garment[f], and dismissed him.

47. To the grand vizier, however, he said: "That I

---

40. [a] geſchehen to be done. [b] betrachten to look at. [c] plötzlich. [d] ausrufen. [e] *say*, I will let myself be hanged.

41. [a] *say*, stands. [b] befehlen. [c] *say*, is. [d] überſetzen.

42. [a] Menſch. [b] *say*, who thou der du. [c] Gnade, *f.* [d] ſchnupfen to take a pinch. [e] von. [f] verwandeln. [g] jeder. [h] auch.

43. [a] will. [b] zurückkehren. [c] wieder. [d] take Subjunctive Present. [e] gegen. [f] ausſprechen.

44. [a] to take care ſich in Acht nehmen. [b] ſchwinden. [c] aus. [d] Gedächtniß, *n.*

45. [a] vergnügt. [b] über. [c] Maß, *n.* (*pl.*—e), but *beyond measure* is a standing phrase, über die Maßen, from an old Nom. die Maße.

46. [a] laſſen. [b] to take an oath ſchwören. [c] irgend einer. [d] etwas. [e] Geheimniß, *n.* [f] Kleid, *n.*

call[a] making a bargain[b], Mansor! How rejoiced[c] I am to be once an animal! To-morrow morning come to me.

48. "We shall then go into[a] the field, take a little pinch[b] of my box, and listen[c] to what is spoken in the air and in the water, in the forest and in the field."

49. Since the beginning[a] of the religious wars[b] in Germany, up to[c] the peace[d] of Munster,[e] there has, in the political[f] world[g] of Europe, scarcely[h] any[i] great and remarkable fact[l] occurred[j] in[k] which the Reformation[l] had[m] not borne[n] the principal share.[o]

50. All the malicious[a] devices[b] which Philip II. resolved upon[c] against Queen Elizabeth was revenge[d] which he took[e], because[f] she had sheltered[g] his Protestant[h] subjects[i] against him, and had placed[j] herself at[k] the head[l] of a religious sect[m] which he endeavoured[n] to destroy.[o]

X. On Compounded Verbs.

1. The tongue[a] is a small limb[b], but it does[c] much mischief.[d]

---

47. [a] heißen. [b] to make a bargain einkaufen. [c] to be rejoiced ſich freuen.

48. [a] auf. [b] ein wenig ſchnupfen. [c] lauſchen.

49. [a] Anfang, *m.* [b] Religionskrieg, *m.* [c] bis zu. [d] Friede, *m.* [e] Münſter. [f] politiſch. [g] Welt, *f.* [h] kaum. [i] *any fact* express by etwas, and *great* groß, and *remarkable* merkwürdig, as Adjectives neuter. [j] to occur ſich ereignen. [k] woran. [l] Kirchenverbeſſerung. [m] take Subjunctive. [n] haben. [o] Hauptantheil, *m.*

50. [a b] Alles Böſe. [c] beſchließen. [d] Rache, *f.* [e] *say*, which he took for that dafür. [f] daß. [g] in Schutz nehmen. [h] proteſtantiſch. [i] Unterthan, *m.* (G.—en), [j] ſtellen. [k] an. [l] Spitze, *f.* [m] Sekte, *f.* [n] ſtreben. [o] vertilgen.

1. [a] Zunge, *f.* [b] Glied, *n.* [c] anſtiften, which is separable because an is not a prefix, so that the particle an stands at the end of the sentence. [d] Unheil, *n.*

2. After this prayer[a] of the priestess,[b] the two youths[c] fell asleep[d] in the temple, and never arose[e] again.

3. The imperial[a] dignity[b] had formerly[c] only descended[d] upon the sons of princes.

4. The Danube[a], which arises[b] in Germany[c], breaks through[d] in the south-eastern[e] mountains[f], and runs away[g] from the Germans through distant[h] boundaries[i], and through foreign nations.

5. She has, in spite[a] of all resistance[b], prevailed[c] with her opinion, because she was penetrated[d] by its truth.

6. The events[a] which have, from the remotest times[b], exercised[c] a great influence[d] on the fate[e] of the human[f] race[g], were ever the migrations[h] of tribes.[i]

7. The time of adventure[a], of romantic[b] enterprises[c], is gone by[d], and never returns.[e]

8. Everbody likes to deal[a] with punctual[b] people.

---

2. [a] Gebet, *n.* [b] Prieſterin, *f.* [c] Jüngling. [d] einſchlafen. [e] aufſtehen.

3. [a] kaiſerlich. [b] Würde, *f.* [c] ehemals. [d] ſich forterben, which is separable, and the ge in the Part. Past must be placed between the two compounding parts.

4. [a] Donau, *f.* [b] entſpringen. [c] Deutſchland. [d] durchbrechen, and mark, verbs compounded with durch, über, unter, um, hinter, voll, are separable when the chief stress lies on these particles, and when they give the Verbs their peculiar character. [e] ſüdöſtlich. [f] Gebirg, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [g] fortlaufen, [h] fern. [i] Grenze, *f.*

5. [a] trotz with Gen. [b] Widerſtand, *m.* [c] durchdringen, lit. *urged through*; it is therefore separable, and as a Verb neuter implying a change of condition is conjugated with ſein. [d] durchdringen, this is inseparable, because the meaning is changed from the literal sense, *to urge through*, and is now synonymous with *to be perfectly convinced*; therefore durch appears like a prefix, and the ge in the Past. Part. is omitted.

6. [a] Ereigniß, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [b] von jeher. [c] ausüben. [d] Einfluß, *m.* [e] Schickſal, *n.* [f] menſchlich. [g] Geſchlecht, *n.* [h] Wanderung. [i] Völkerſchaft.

7. [a] Abenteuer, *n.*, take the plural with the Def. Art. [b] romantiſch. [c] Unternehmung. [d] vorbei ſein, and mark, the compounded particle vorbei follows the rule of the simple. [e] zurückkehren.

8. [a] *say*, deals gladly umgehen, lit. to walk about. [b] pünktlich.

9. Even glorious[a] truth is abused[b] by many.

10. The language of many savage[a] tribes[b] is so poor, that notions[c] which are familiar[d] to us, must be circumscribed[e] for them.

11. The sky in spring is often overclouded[a], and the earth covered[b] with fogs.[c]

12. Oak trees[a] often grow[b] so large, that they can only be spanned[c] by three persons.

13. The first circumnavigation[a] was undertaken[b] by Magellan; but the most famous[c] of all who have sailed round[d] the earth remains Cook.

14. He crossed[a] the ocean[b] in[c] all directions[d], and surpassed[e] all his predecessors[f] in[g] courage and perseverance[h]: he perished[i] during[j] his last voyage.[k]

15. The length[a] of America obliges[b] the seamen to sail[d] far[c] round[d] when they intend[e] to pass[f] from the eastern coast[g] of America to the East Indies.[h]

---

9. [a] herrlich. [b] mißbrauchen, and mark, verbs *active* compounded with miß, are like the *neuter inseparable*, but they differ from the latter in one point, the ge is in these always omitted; in the first it can be omitted, or placed before the two component parts, as gemißbraucht or mißbraucht, but mißglückt and not gemißglückt.

10. [a] wild. [b] Volk, *n.* (*pl.* Völker). [c] Begriff, *m.* (*pl.* —e) [d] gewöhnlich. [e] umschreiben, which must be inseparable.

11. [a] umwölken, therefore inseparable, and [b] umziehen, likewise, cf. Note 5 [b]. [c] Nebel, *m.*

12. [a] Eiche, *f.* [b] werden. [c] umspa'nnen is *to span*, but u'mspannen is *to put other horses to*; the first is inseparable, the latter, separable.

13. [a] Umschiffung. [b] unterne'hmen, inseparable. [c] berühmt. [d] umsegeln is separable as a Verb neuter, and inseparable as a Verb active, because the first refers more to the direction u'm, and the latter to the action se'geln.

14. [a] durchschiffen, separable as neuter, inseparable as active, meaning, *to visit the ocean everywhere.* [b] Ocean, *m.* [c] nach. [d] Richtung. [e] übertre'ffen. [f] Vorgänger. [g] an. [h] Ausdauer, *f.* [i] umkommen, separable, because it means lit. *to come round*, i. e. to the end, from which the motion began. [j] auf. [k] Reise, *f.*

15. [a] Länge, *f.* [b] zwingen. [c] weit. [d] u'mseglen. [e] vorhaben. [f] ü'bersegeln. [g] Küste, *f.* [h] Ostindien, *n.*, sing.

16. Among the sloths[a], which are peculiar[b] to South America, is the slowest[c], that which is called Ai from the sound[d] that it utters.[e]

17. Its progressive motion[a] is so slow, that it has tired out[b] the patience[c] of all natural historians[d] who wished to know it exactly.

18. It would, with[a] an uninterrupted[b] motion, make at the utmost[c] fifty steps[d] in twenty-four hours, or one mile[e] in five months.

19. But it interrupts[a] this motion so often, and rests[b] so long, that it perhaps moves on[c] only one mile in six or seven years.

20. Its food[a] consists[b] in leaves[c], and it is certainly[d] obliged to climb up[e] the trees, or rather[f] to crawl up[g], but what a[h] struggle[i] does this require[j]!

21. It wants[a] two days in order to ascend[b] the tree, which it does not abandon[c], until the last leaf is nipped off[d].

22. It then hungers[a] for several[b] days before[c] it resolves[d] to tumble down;[e] and but[f] after some weeks it is forced[g] by all-powerful[h] hunger to form[i] a new resolution[j] of[k] moving on.

---

16. [a] Faulthier, *n.* (*pl.* — *e.*) [b] eigen. [c] langſam. [d] Laut, *m.* [e] von ſich geben.

17. [a] Bewegung. [b] ermüden. [c] Geduld, *f.* [d] Naturforſcher. [e] genau.

18. [a] bei. [b] ununterbrochen. [c] höchſtens. [d] Schritt, *m* [e] Meile, *f.*

19. [a] unterbrechen, which has a figurative meaning, and is therefore inseparable. [b] ſich ausruhen. [c] ſich fortbewegen.

20. [a] Nahrung. [b] beſtehen. [c] Blatt, *n.* (*pl.* Blätter). [d] zwar. [e] hinaufklettern, with Acc. [f] vielmehr. [g] hinaufkriechen. [h] welch ein. [i] Ueberwindung. [j] koſten.

21. [a] brauchen. [b] hinaufſteigen. [c] verlaſſen. [d] abnagen.

22. [a] hungern. [b] mehrere. [c] ehe. [d] ſich entſchließen. [e] herabfallen. [f] nur. [g] zwingen. [h] allmächtig. [i] faſſen. [j] Entſchluß, *m.* [k] *say*, to move on.

23. What a[a] contrast[b] between this motion which requires[c] two minutes in order to advance[d] the width[e] of one finger, and the swiftness[f] of the swallow[g] which flies[h] seventy-five feet in one second[i], consequently[j] twelve miles in one hour, and with all this[k] but rarely[l] takes any rest.[m]

XI. On Verbs of Mood.

1. Saffron[a] is said[b] to have come to Europe by the Crusades.[c]

2. We need[a] only be good in reality[b], then the appearance[c] will not become difficult for us.

3. We ought[a] to combine[b] prudence[c] with virtue, but not hide[d] the complete[e] absence[f] of virtue under the appearance of prudence.

4. We ought not only to do no evil, but also to omit[a] indifferent things[b], if they can, under[c] circumstances, cast[d] upon us the suspicion[e] of being mischievous.[f]

---

23. [a] welcher. [b] Abſtand, *m.* [c] erfordern. [d] fortrücken. [e] Breite, *f.* [f] Schnelligkeit. [g] Schwalbe, *f.* [h] durchfliegen. [i] Secunde, *f.* [j] alſo. [k] dabei. [l] ſelten. [m] to take rest ruhen.

1. [a] Safran, *m.* [b] ſollen, means *to do what another* (a person or a law) *wills, maintains*, or *reports*; therefore, *I am said* ich ſoll, the Latin *dicor.* [c] Kreuzzug, *m.*, and mark, compounded Nouns take the gender of the second or last component part, and Zug is of the masc. gender, because all Substantives derived from Verbs *without termination* are *masculine.*

2. [a] dürfen means *to be allowed, not to be prevented by a moral law*, then *to need, to dare.* [b] wirklich. [c] Schein (in reference to gender, cf. Note 1 [c]).

3. [a] ſollen, subj. imperf. [b] verbinden. [c] Klugheit. [d] verbergen. [e] völlig. [f] Mangel, *m.*

4. [a] unterlaſſen. [b] *say*, something indifferent gleichgültig. [c] durch. [d] werfen. [e] Verdacht, *m.* [f] *say*, of the evil Schlimme, *n.*

5. A thing, which is really good[a], we must[b] not omit even[c] on account of suspicion.

6. One[a] can often lose one's good name without having done[b] anything wrong[c]: then conscience[d] must quiet[e] us.

7. The world cannot examine[a] the hearts, and is often obliged[b] to judge[c] after outward[d] appearance.

8. We are not only permitted[a], but it is our duty[b] to speak against oppression[c] and injustice.[d]

9. We must[a] not timidly[b] keep silent[c] where justice[d] and order[e] require[f] that we speak.

10. Every bird must[a] build[b] its particular[c] nest.

11. She may[a] die[b], and then no one remains[c] to provide for[d] our abandoned[e] family.

12. Among the lasting[a] infirmities[b] of the human body[c], deafness[d] might[e] possibly[f] be the worst.[g]

13. So unjust you men are, when you do not like[a] amusements[b] any longer[c], because you have enjoyed[d] them,

---

5. [a] *say*, something really good. [b] dürfen. [c] auch.

6. [a] man. [b] *say*, without to have done. [c] Böſe. [d] Gewiſſen, and mark, all Substantives which originally were infinitives are *neuter*. [e] beruhigen.

7. [a] prüfen. [b] müſſen. [c] urtheilen. [d] äußer.

8. [a] dürfen. [b] to be the duty of one ſollen. [c] Unterdrückung. [d] Ungerechtigkeit.

9. [a] müſſen, which implies a *natural force* and *moral obligation*. [b] furchtſam. [c] ſchweigen. [d] Recht, *n.* [e] Ordnung. [f] wollen, which means *to have a will, to require, to pretend*.

10. [a] cf. Note 9 [a]. [b] bauen. [c] eigenthümlich.

11. [a] können, which means *to be able*, and implies also a *logical possibility*. [b] ſterben. [c] übrig bleiben. [d] *no one to provide for*, translate by *no provideress* Verſorgerin. [e] verlaſſen.

12. [a] dauernd. [b] Gebrechen. [c] Körper, *m.* [d] Taubheit. [e] mögen or dürfen. [f] leicht. [g] ſchlimm.

13. [a] *to like* is mögen. [b] Vergnügen, which has no plural, since all Substantives originally infinitives have no plural form; this is made here from a derivative, Vergnügung. [c] not any longer nicht mehr. [d] genießen.

you also do not wish[e] that a being[f] besides[g] yourselves shall delight[h] in them.

14. Natural[a] courage[b] has too often made[c] him forget[d] what he was owing[e] to the king; and thus, the death of a common soldier[f] terminated[g] this royal[h] life.[i]

15. He whispers[a] of letters which he pretends[b] to have received.[c]

16. The house in Mayence[a], in which the inventors[b] of the art of printing[c] are said[d] to have first[e] practised[f] this art[g], stands even[h] to-day under the name of Färberhof behind the convent[i] of barefooted friars[j] of former[k] times.

17. You ought[a] not to have trusted[b] him[c] so rashly.[d]

18. If you were[a] to see my provisions[b] you would admire[c] them.

19. I should not let[a] myself be governed[b] by a boy.

---

[e] wollen. [f] Weſen, originally an infinitive. [g] außer, Dat. [h] Gefallen finden an, Dat.

14. [a] Natürlich. [b] Muth, *m.* [c] laſſen, and mark, when the Part. Past. of a Verb of mood stands after the infinitive, it is changed into an infinitive too. [d] vergeſſen. [e] ſchuldig. [f] Gemeiner. [g] enden. [h] königlich. [i] Leben.

15. [a] munkeln. [b] wollen. [c] empfangen.

16. [a] Mainz. [b] Erfinder. [c] Buchdruckerkunſt, *f.* [d] ſollen. [e] zuerſt. [f] üben. [g] Kunſt, *f.* [h] noch. [i] Kloſter, *n.* [j] Barfüßler. [k] ehemalig.

17. [a] mark, this *ought to have trusted* is in Latin *debuisses confidere*, and should have been in English *had ought to trust*, but *ought* is a defective Verb, and therefore it is circumscribed; in German ſollen is not defective, and it can be used in the *Subjunctive* of the *Pluperf.* [b] trauen. [c] Dat. [d] blindlings.

18. [a] *I am to*, is ich ſoll; and mark, you can say in English, *were you to see*, and the same construction can be used in German. [b] Vorrath. [c] bewundern.

19. [a] laſſen, and observe, the *Subjunctive Imperfect* is used instead of the *Conditional* in *Verbs of Mood especially*, and also in other Verbs. [b] regieren, and remember, after laſſen follows always the Infinitive Active.

20. There was at that time great want[a] everywhere,[b] except[c] in Liege[d], where the cautious[e] bishop[f] had before[g] ordered[h] corn[i] to be purchased[j], and to be stored up.[k]

21. When[a] Tacitus mentions[b] the Danube[c] and the Rhine[d] as boundaries[e] of the Roman Empire[f], the Germans themselves[g] might[h] not have been quite satisfied with it, and a secret[i] wish[j] more than truth might have led[k] Tacitus to this saying.[l]

22. The fox[a] would have liked[b] much[c] to steal[d] into the poultry yard.[e]

23. The lion must have devoured[a] the animals, since[b] none[c] of them returned[d] from his den.[e]

24. The lamb[a] said to the scolding[b] wolf: "The water has been troubled[c] before[d] I arrived[e], and therefore[f] I cannot have done it."

25. The learned[a] professors[b] said to[c] Columbus: "Your trick[d] with the egg[e] is not difficult; we could have[f] done it ourselves."

---

20. [a] Mangel, *m.* [b] überall. [c] außer. [d] Lüttich, [e] vorſichtig. [f] Biſchof. [g] vorher. [h] laſſen (cf. Note 14 [c]). [i] Getreide, *n.* [j] einkaufen. [k] aufſchütten.

21. [a] Wenn. [b] erwähnen. [c] Donau, *f.* [d] Rhein, *m.* [e] Grenze, *f.* [f] Reich, *n.* [g] ſelbſt. [h] mögen. [i] inner. [j] Wunſch. [k] bewegen, which has bewogen in the Participle when it implies a *moral inducement*, but bewegt when meaning a *motion* or *emotion*. [l] Ausſpruch.

22. [a] Fuchs, *m.* [b] mögen, and mark, instead of the *Conditional Perfect* in *Verbs of Mood particularly*, and also in other Verbs, is used the *Subjunctive Pluperfect* (cf. also, Note 14 [c]). [c] gern. [d] hinein ſchleichen. [e] Hühnerhof, *m.*

23. [a] verſchlingen. [b] da. [c] keiner, keine, keins is used when standing like a Substantive. [d] zurückkehren. [e] Höhle, and mark, all Substantives of *measure* are *feminine*, when made from Adjectives by adding e.

24. [a] Lamm, *n.* [b] ſchelten. [c] trübe. [d] ehe. [e] ankommen. [f] daher.

25. [a] gelehrt. [b] Profeſſor, which, like all Substantives of foreign origin terminating in an unaccented or, has en in plural. [c] *to* after *say* is zu, when the words said are literally mentioned. [d] Kunſtſtück, *n.* [e] Ei, *n.* [f] *we could have done*, is used here for *we should have been able to do*, translate the latter, and refer to Notes 22 [b], and 14 [c].

26. The lamb had come so near[a] the[b] wolf, that he could[c] easily have throttled[d] it.

27. Indeed[a], one[b] must never have felt[c] the charm[d] of a human voice[e],—one must never have perceived[f] that language[g] remains a dead[h] letter[i] without[j] the variety[k] of its sweet[l] modulations[m],—one must never have observed[n] how infinitely[o] deeper[p] the uttered[q] word penetrates[r] into the soul, if he were to think that the loss[s] of hearing[t] is a lesser[u] evil[v] than the loss of sight.[w]

28. If plants[a] which serve[b] as[c] food[d] to cattle[e] are to be propagated[f] everywhere[g] in plenty[h], at their own accord[i], without the assistance[j] of man, they must also, in consequence[k] of this their nature[l], frequently[m] spread[n] in cornfields.[o]

29. And if they are, according[a] to their nature, freely[b] to thrive[c] on downs[d], on hills[e], in meadows[f], in short[g], in every uncultivated[h] ground[i], then[j] certainly[k] they must necessarily[l] grow[m] with a far stronger power[n] in a well-ploughed[o] field, where they are called weeds.[p]

---

26. [a] nahe. [b] Dat. [c] *translate*, he would have been able to throttle. [d] erwürgen.

27. [a] Fürwahr. [b] man. [c] empfinden. [d] Zauber, *m.* [e] Stimme, *f.* [f] bemerken. [g] Rede, and mark, Substantives are feminine when derived from a Verb by the terminations e, d, or t. [h] todt. [i] Buchſtabe, *m.* [j] ohne, Acc. [k] Mannigfaltigkeit. [l] ſanft. [m] Modulation, *f.* [n] beobachten. [o] unendlich. [p] tief. [q] ausſprechen. [r] bringen. [s] Verluſt, *m.* [t] Gehör, *n.* [u] gering. [v] Uebel, and observe, the Adjective used as Substantive, without termination, is neuter. [w] Geſicht, *n.*

28. [a] Gewächs, *n.* [b] dienen. [c] als. [d] Futter, *n.* [e] Vieh, *n.* [f] ſich fortpflanzen. [g] überall. [h] Fülle, *f.* [i] von ſelbſt. [j] Zuthun. [k] vermöge, G. [l] Natur. [m] häufig. [n] ſich verbreiten. [o] Kornfeld, *n.* (*pl.*—er).

29. [a] nach. [b] von ſelbſt. [c] fortkommen. [d] Anger, *m.* [e] Hügel, *m.* [f] Wieſe, *f.* [g] kurz. [h] unbearbeitet. [i] Boden, *m.* [j] ſo, which is often used to introduce the chief sentence when the adverbial has preceded. [k] ja, which must, however, follow the Verb, as two Adverbs cannot begin a sentence. [l] nothwendiger Weiſe, an adverbial genitive. [m] wachſen. [n] Trieb. [o] gut beſtellt. [p] Unkraut, *n.*, only used in the singular as a collective Noun.

12. On the Indicative and Subjunctive.

1. Tell me with whom you associate[a], and I will tell you who you are.[b]

2. In God's creation[a] there is everywhere the clear[b] purpose[c] that He only desires[d] the happiness[e] of all his creatures.[f]

3. Has God not gifted[a] us with reason[b] which teaches[c] us what is[d] good and what is hurtful?[e]

4. On the column[a] of Brutus' ancestor[b], who had subverted[c] the tyranny[d] of the kings, they now read: "Oh that a Brutus were living[e] now!"

5. Suppose[a] the case[b], that our father became[c] bedridden[d], must not then starvation[e] and misery[f] be our inevitable[g] fate[h]?

6. How would the gift[a] of human speech[b] be profaned[c] in the mouth[d] of the base[e] and brutish[f] monkey[g], if he were able[h] to ape[i] human words with half human reason!

---

1. [a] umgehen. [b] This latter sentence is an objective sentence to *tell*; and mark, the Verb in the objective sentence stands in the *Indicative* when it utters a *fact* or a *reality*, like here; but in the *Subjunctive* when it pronounces only an *idea* or a *possibility*.

2. [a] Schöpfung. [b] deutlich. [c] Absicht. [d] wollen, and it is to be observed, that in the word *clear* is contained the hint, that the *desire* is not only *imagined* by us, but *known* as a *fact*. [e] Glück, *n.* [f] Geschöpf, *n.*

3. [a] begaben. [b] Vernunft. [c] lehren (which is really a fact). [d] this also is no imaginary thing, [e] schädlich.

4. [a] Säule, *f.* [b] Ahnherr. [c] stürzen. [d] tyrannische Gewalt. [e] am Leben sein, and the *Subjunctive* is to be used, because a *wish* only *lies* in our *mind*, and is not a *fact*.

5. [a] setzen, *say*, one may suppose. [b] Fall. [c] this is a possibility. [d] bettlägerig. [e] Hunger, *m.* [f] Elend, *n.* [g] unvermeidlich. [h] Loos, *n.*

6. [a] Gabe. [b] Rede. [c] entweihen. [d] Mund, *m.* [e] gemein. [f] thierisch. [g] Affe, *m.* [h] können. [i] nachäffen.

7. These questions Crœsus asked[a] of Solon, in the expectation[b] that he was[c] the happiest man.

8. Who raises[a] the sun for the countryman[b] in[c] the serene[d] blue sky, that it may develope[e] the germs[f] of his crops? [g]

9. Who covers[a] the sky with clouds[b] that[c] it may bedew[d] his plants in[e] the night time?

10. Blessed[a] be you, and never may from your lips[b], which spoke[c] such good tidings[d], the tone[e] of suffering[f] and complaint[g] resound.[h]

11. We think[a] something[b] is true, which certainly[c] perhaps is not true, or only half true: we think something is just[d], which surely[e] is only just under certain circumstances.

12. A boaster[a] is never looked upon[b] as a man possessed of[c] much sense[d] and courage.[e]

---

7. [a] *say*, proposed to vorlegen. [b] Erwartung. [c] remember, this is only his fancy.

8. [a] heraufführen. [b] take the Dat. without Prep. [c] an. [d] heiter. [e] entwickeln. [f] Keim, *m.* [g] Saat, *f.*

9. [a] überziehen. [b] Wolke, *f.* [c] damit. [d] begießen. [e] zu.

10. [a] ſegnen. [b] Lippe, *f.* [c] melden. [d] Botſchaft, take the singular. [e] Ton, *m.* [f] Leiden, as a Substantive. [g] Klage, take the plural. [h] erſchallen.

11. [a] glauben is to *think* when the latter implies *having an opinion*, but when *to think* means *reflecting*, it is denken. [b] etwaß, and mark, in English is here omitted *that*, i. e., the *objective* sentence *something is true* is changed into an *independent* sentence: this can also be done in German,—daß can be omitted; the sentence, must then, of course, be construed like an independent sentence; but the *Verb* in such a sentence, referring to an *imaginary thought*, stands in the *Subjunctive*. [c] doch. [d] gerecht. [e] doch.

12. [a] Großſprecher. [b] *is looked upon*, etc., explain in German literally, so: is never in the authority that he has much sense and reason; —*authority* is Anſehen. [c] *has* expressing only what *opinion* is formed of him, stands in the *Subjunctive*. [d] Verſtand. [e] Muth, *m.*

13. It was said[a] that a bishop[b] of Mayence,[c] who was the son of a coachmaker[d], in order not to lose the virtue of humility[e] in his superior[f] ecclesiastic[g] dignity[h], had commanded[i], in[j] different[k] places[l] of his palace[m], carriage-wheels[n] to be painted[o], which might remind[p] him incessantly[q] of his origin.[r]

14. A maiden[a] like her certainly deserves[b] that she may be wooed[c] with the sword: Oh if she could[d] be won[e] by arms[f]!

15. It gave[a] the queen of Sweden[b] pleasure[c] to hear that they had[d] always taken her for a boy, and that she, in her first[e] childhood[f], at[g] the firing[h] of the canon[i], instead[j] of getting frightened[k], had clapped[l] her[m] hands, and thus proved[n] herself a true[o] child of a soldier.[p]

16. The ancient nations well felt[a] that one[b] must[c] work in order to enjoy himself.[d]

17. "Cleobis, and Biton" said Solon, "obtained[a] the best termination of life;[b] and God, thereby[c], intimated[d] that it was[e] better for man to be dead[f] than to live."

---

13. [a] erzählen. [b] Biſchof. [c] Mainz. [d] Wagener. [e] Demuth, *f.* [f] höher. [g] kirchlich, [h] Würde, *f.* [i] laſſen, and as the whole is only *a saying*, the Verb must stand in the Subjunctive: it may be also noted, that the *Subjunctive Present* is preferred to the *Indicative* after the historical past tense. [j] an. [k] verſchieden. [l] Stelle, *f.* [m] Palaſt, *m*, [n] Wagenrad, *n.* (*pl.* — räder). [o] malen. [p] erinnern an, Acc. [q] unaufhörlich. [r] Herkunft.

14. [a] Jungfrau. [b] verdienen. [c] werben um means *to woo*. [d] leave out that, and say, *were she to*. [e] gewinnen. [f] Waffe, *f.*

15. [a] machen [b] Schweden. [c] Vergnügen. [d] *Subjunctive*, because it refers to the way in which *the fact* worked upon the *sensation* of the queen. [e] frühеſt. [f] Kindheit. [g] bei. [h] Abfeuern. [i] Geſchütz, *n.* [j] ſtatt. [k] erſchrecken is *to get frightened*. [l] klatſchen. [m] *say*, into the. [n] bewähren or ausweiſen. [o] recht. [p] Soldatenkind, *n.*

16. [a] *say*, felt it. [b] man, and put *in order to enjoy himself* immediately after *one*. [c] Subj. Present, cf. Note 13 [i]. [d] genießen to enjoy himself.

17. [a] erlangen. [b] Lebensende, *n.* [c] dadurch. [d] anzeigen. [e] this only refers to the *intimation*. [f] ſterben.

18. When Solon was relating so much of[a] Tellus' great happiness[b], Crœsus became more and more[c] curious[d], and asked who then was[e] the second; for he thought he would[f], at least[g], obtain the second place.

19. If we were[a] to renounce the obligation[b] of our duties[c], what would[d] ensue[e] therefrom?

20. All order would[a] disappear[b], all bonds[c] would break[d], all safety[e] would be lost.[f]

21. Duties[a] are no burdens[b], for without them we should be miserable.

22. This young man at last despaired[a], and regarded[b] himself as one of those vile[c] things[d] that nature designed[e] should be thrown into her lumber-room.[f]

23. There has not been found on[a] the whole earth one single thing that could[b] have been created[c] for the sake[d] of doing harm.[e]

24. They have often compared[a] the French Revolution[b] with the German Reformation[c]; but does the first possess one man who could be compared to Luther?

---

18. [a] von. [b] Glückſeligkeit, and do not forget to put the Def. Art. before Tellus. [c] immer mehr. [d] neugierig. [e] this is a Verb of an *objective* sentence, which contains *no fact*: with other words it may be said, that in the *indirect question* the Verb generally stands in the *Subjunctive*. [f] this is the *Subjunctive* of the *Future*, and by no means a Conditional. [g] wenigſtens.

19. [a] This is obviously a *Subjunctive*, but express it only by the *Subjunctive* of *to renounce*, which is ſich losſagen von. [b] Verbindlichkeit. [c] Pflicht, *f.* [d] the Conditional can always be expressed by the *Subjunctive Imperfect*. [e] entſtehen.

20. [a] take Subj. Imperf. [b] verſchwinden. [c] Band, *n.*, which has in plural Bänder when meaning *ribbands*, but Bande, when signifying *bonds*. [d] zerreißen. [e] Sicherheit. [f] verloren ſein.

21. [a] Pflicht, *f.* [b] Laſt, *f.*

22. [a] verzweifeln. [b] betrachten. [c] verächtlich. [d] Ding, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [e] beſtimmen, and in translating construe thus: *has designed for that, that they should*. [f] Rumpelkammer, *f.*

23. [a] auf. [b] express *would have been created* by the Subjunctive of the Pluperf. [c] ſchaffen. [d] *translate*, in order to do. [e] Schaden, *m.*

24. [a] vergleichen. [b] Staatsumwälzung. [c] Kirchenverbeſſerung.

25. It was said that Brutus hated[a] tyranny[b], but Cassius the tyrant himself.

26. The conspirators[a] were of opinion that, through the accession[b] of Brutus, the justice[c] of their cause[d] was, to[e] a certain degree[f], confirmed.[g]

27. Göthe maintained[a], that an artist[b] was degrading[c] himself, who aimed at[d] the effect[e] of making[f] a piece of art[g] appear natural.[h]

28. We read in the Sacred Scriptures[a], that one of the most zealous[b] defenders[c] of the Law[d], having[e] fled into the desert[f] of Sinai, after a struggle of many years[g] against the spread[h] of idolatry[i], had[j] asked[k] of God to give him a sign[l] of his presence[m]: the earth had[n] trembled[o], but God had not been in the earthquake.[p]

---

25. [a] haſſen, of course the Subjunctive could be used here, but mark, in objective and subjective sentences, dependent on a past historical tense, the Subjunctive of the *Present* is preferred to that of the *Imperfect*. [b] Tyrannei.

26. [a] verſchwören to conspire. [b] Beitritt. [c] Gerechtigkeit. [d] Sache, *f.* [e] bis zu. [f] Grad, *m.* [g] beſtätigen.

27. [a] behaupten. [b] Künſtler. [c] erniedrigen (comp. Note 25 [a]). [d] losarbeiten auf, Acc., and observe, when the Adjective sentence explains a part of another sentence in which the Verb stands in the Subjunctive, the Verb in the first must also stand in the Subjunctive if the explanation lies as much in the range of imagination as that which is explained by it. [e] Wirkung. [f] laſſen. [g] Kunſtwerk, *n.* [h] natürlich.

28. [a] Schrift, take the sing. [b] eifrig. [c] Vertheidiger. [d] Geſetz, *n.* [e] *say*, who had. [f] Wüſte. [g] *say*, a-many-year's-struggle vieljährig, Kampf, *m.* [h] *say*, the spreading idolatry; to spread einreißen. [i] Götzendienſt, *m.* [j] observe, if a whole *story* or *speech* is not *directly* reported in *independent* or *chief sentences*, but made to *depend* as a series of *subjective* or *objective sentences* upon such phrases as *it is said, we read*, then the *Verbs* in that series of sentences must stand in the Subjunctive of the Present; besides, in reference to the particle *that* daß, it is to be remarked, that it can be prefixed or omitted in the first sentence of the series, and it is omitted in the following sentences, which are thus construed as if they were independent. [k] bitten to ask of. [l] Zeichen, *n.* [m] Gegenwart, *f.* [n] cf. Note [j] [o] beben. [p] Erdbeben.

29. A storm[a] had arisen[b], but the storm had not announced[c] the approach[d] of God.

30. At last a gently[a] breathing[b] zephyr[c] had been felt[d]: in the sweet[e] west wind God had come.

31. There are countries in Europe which would have been swallowed up[a] long ago[b] by the sea, if man's art and industry[c] had not opposed[d] firm[e] dikes[f] to the violence[g] of the water.

32. Without the art of printing[a], Luther's great Reformation, as well as at[b] our times, the French Revolution, would have been quite impossible.

33. In vain[a] would Luther have censured[b] the faults[c] of the Church, if his questions of controversy[d] had not been speedily[e] propagated[f] by the press.[g]

34. Were I a father of a family[a], I should take particular care[b] to preserve[c] my children from[d] those little horrors[e] of imagination[f] which they are apt[g] to contract[h] when[i] young, and are not able[j] to shake off[k] when they are in[l] years.

35. Towards the first of March[a], Cassius asked Brutus if he intended[b] to come into the Senate on that day,

---

29. [a] Sturm, *m.* [b] ſich erheben. [c] bezeichnen. [d] *say*, the approaching God ſich nahen.

30. [a] ſanft. [b] ſäuſeln. [c] Zephyr, *m.* [d] bemerken. [e] lieblich.

31. [a] verſchlingen. [b] ſchon längſt. [c] Fleiß. [d] entgegenſetzen. [e] feſt. [f] Damm, *m.* [g] Gewalt.

32. [a] Buchdruckerkunſt. [b] zu.

33. [a] Vergebens. [b] rügen. [c] Mangel, *m.* [d] Streitſatz question of controversy. [e] ſchnell. [f] verbreiten. [g] Druck, *m.*

34. [a] Familie. [b] *say*, particularly care for it beſonders dafür ſorgen. [c] bewahren. [d] vor. [e] Schreckbild, *n.* [f] Fantaſie. [g] geneigt. [h] ſich einprägen, *lit.* to impress on themselves. [i] *say*, when they are. [j] vermögen. [k] *say*, to extinguish auslöſchen. [l] bei.

35. [a] März. [b] geſonnen ſein, and mark, the Subjunctive of the Imperfect stands in dependent sentences when they are Conditional; this not being the case here, the Subjunctive of the Present is preferable

since[c], as[d] he heard[e], Cæsar's friends would move[f] for his elevation[g] to the royal dignity.[h]

36. Brutus replied, he would[a] not come.

37. His wife, Porcia, knew[a], from his unusual[b] restlessness[c], that he was considering[d] some difficult[e] plan[f] in his heart.

38. We were told[a] that our house was standing on a plot of ground[b] which formerly[c] had been situated[d] outside[e] the town, and there, where now the street was lying[f], had before been a moat[g] in which a number[h] of stags[i] had been kept.[j]

39. My father had the principle[a] that one ought[b] to occupy[c] the living artists[d], and to spend[e] less upon the deceased ones[f], in the valuing[g] of whom there often occurred[h] much prejudice.[i]

40. This put me under some apprehensions[a] that I should be forced[b] to explain myself[c] if I did not retire.[d]

41. The Italians[a] already were complaining[b] that they filled[c] ships with their libraries[d], and that they carried

---

[c] da. [d] wie. [e] the Subjunctive of the Present is preferred also to that of the Imperfect when the latter does not differ from its Indicative. [f] to move for antragen auf, Acc. [g] Erhebung. [h] Würde.

36. [a] this not being Conditional, the Subjunctive of the Present is to be taken for that of the Imperfect.

37. [a] erkennen. [b] ungewöhnlich. [c] Unruhe. [d] erwägen. [e] ſchwierig. [f] Entwurf.

38. [a] *say*, it was related to us. [b] Raum, *m.*, plot of ground. [c] ſonſt. [d] liegen. [e] außerhalb. [f] ſich befinden. [g] Graben, *m.* [h] Anzahl, *f.* [i] Hirſch, *m.* [j] unterhalten.

39. [a] Grundſatz. [b] ſollen. [c] beſchäftigen. [d] Meiſter. [e] wenden auf, Acc. [f] abgeſchieden. [g] Schätzung. [h] mitunterlaufen. [i] Vorurtheil, *n.*

40. [a] befürchten laſſen. [b] zwingen. [c] ſich näher erklären. [d] ſich zurückziehen.

41. [a] Italiener. [b] ſich beklagen. [c] beladen. [d] Bibliothek, *f.*

away[e] from them the means[f] of learning[g] to[h] the extreme[i] north[j] of Europe.

42. When I learned[a] that he had arrived[b], I thought I ought[c] to go myself, in order to speak to[d] him.

43. He protested[a] that this was intolerable[b] to him, and begged the stranger[c] to go out[d] again, because his little dwelling[e] could impossibly[f] contain[g] them both.

44. Every player of an instrument[a] knows[b] how docile[c] the left hand was.

45. I should like to know how it would look[a], were I, as a medical man[b], to do[c] such a foolish thing.[d]

46. We wished we had a garden, in which such fine[a] trees were planted[b] as we had seen in the old park near your house.

47. My father was accustomed[a] to say to his friends, when[b] showing[c] them the new pictures he had received, that he was not at all in doubt[d] but[e] that they would in future[f] become as dark[g] as those of the old masters.

---

[e] to carry away from entführen, with Dat. [f] Hülfsmittel, n. [g] Gelehrsamkeit. [h] nach. [i] äußerſt. [j] Norden, m.

42. [a] erfahren. [b] ankommen. [c] müſſen. [d] to speak to ſprechen with the Acc., when it means as much as *to pay a visit to, to see*, and *to speak to* a person.

43. [a] ſchwören. [b] unerträglich. [c] Fremde. [d] hinausgehen. [e] Wohnung. [f] ummöglich. [g] faſſen.

44. [a] Inſtrumentenſpieler. [b] erfahren. [c] gelehrig.

45. [a] to look ſich ausnehmen. [b] Arzt. [c] beginnen. [d] Unſinn, m.

46. [a] ſchön. [b] pflanzen

47. [a] pflegen to be accustomed. [b] *say*, when he shewed. [c] zeigen. [d] gar nicht not at all, zweifelhaft in doubt. [e] is not expressed in German after *doubt* Zweifel. [f] künftig in future. [g] dunkel.

XIII. On the Imperative.

1. Let us go[a] home[b] quietly[c] and tell our parents what has occurred[d].

2. Let us take a seat[a], and rest[b] from our walk.[c]

3. Let us love our country, and, if necessary[a], let us die for its independence.[b]

4. Let us imitate[a] the great examples[b] of our ancestors.[c]

5. Let us dedicate[a] some observations[b] to this remarkable[c] man.

6. Go[a] or remain, exactly[b] as thou pleasest.[c]

7. Thou speak[a], and thou keep silent.[b]

8. Wilt thou know[a] thyself, then see how other people[b] act[c]: wilt thou understand[d] the rest of mankind[e], then look into thy own heart.

9. Be deserving[a] of praise[b], and[c] thou wilt obtain[d] praise.

---

1. [a] the Imperative has no form for the first person of the sing.: the first person plural is either taken from the Subjunctive Present, or it is expressed by the Verb *let* laſſen, as *let us write immediately* ſchreiben wir ſogleich, or laſſet uns ſogleich ſchreiben. [b] nach Hauſe. [c] ruhig. [d] ſich ereignen.

2. [a] ſich ſetzen *to take a seat*, therefore it is to be said literally, *let us seat ourselves*. [b] ſich ausruhen. [c] Spaziergang.

3. [a] nöthig, and *say*, if it is necessary. [b] Unabhängigkeit.

4. [a] nachahmen, and mark, this Verb is construed with an Accusative if it refers to a *thing*, and with a Dative when to a *person*. [b] Beiſpiel, *n.* [c] Vorfahr, *m.* (G. —en).

5. [a] widmen. [b] Betrachtung. [c] merkwürdig.

6. [a] the second person singular of the Imperative is used only in poetry, and in addressing intimate friends or relations: the Pronoun is placed when a great stress is put upon it. [b] gerade. [c] I please es beliebt mir.

7. [a] the Pronoun can be placed either after the Imperative, which is more usual, or also before it. [b] ſchweigen.

8. [a] erkennen. [b] die andern. [c] es treiben. [d] verſtehen. [e] die andern.

9. [a] würdig. [b] Lob, *n.* [c] ſo. [d] erhalten.

10. Give him only one finger, and[a] he will take[b] thy whole hand.

11. To-day only, only to-day, do not allow[a] thyself to be ensnared[b], then[c] thou wilt have[d] escaped[e] a hundred times.

12. Go, obey[a] my will[b], use[c] thy young days, and learn by times[d] to be more sensible[e]

13. Be happy, and farewell.

14. Be[a] satisfied[b], and do not grumble[c] at your lot.[d]

15. Listen[a], see, and keep silent.[b]

16. Now let every one go[a] his way.[b]

17. Let her use[a] force[b], let her kill me, let her bring this sacrifice[c] to her safety[d], but let her also confess[e] that I have not been judged[f] according[g] to law[h]

18. Let him command[a], and this fortress[b] will open[c] its gates.[d]

19. Let him enter.[a]

---

10. [a] ſo. [b] take the Present.

11. [a] laſſen. [b] fangen. [c] ſo. [d] take the Perfect. [e] entgehen.

12. [a] gehorchen, with Dat. [b] Wille, *m.* [c] nutzen. [d] zeitig. [e] klug.

14. [a] The addressed person in plural is used *a*) like in English when the addressed person in singular is given by *thou* du, as *child be quiet* Kind ſei ruhig; therefore, *children be quiet* Kinder ſeid ruhig; or *b*) in poetical language, when old people and persons of high rank are addressed; but in social language the second person is addressed both in singular and plural by the third person of the plural, as *follow my advice* folgen Sie meinem Rathe; and it is to be observed, that this Sie is written with a capital initial. [b] zufrieden. [c] murren über, Acc. [d] Loos, *n.*

15. [a] hören. [b] ſchweigen.

16. [a] The third person sing. of the Imperative is either taken from the Subjunctive Present, or formed by laſſen, as *let him read this letter once more* leſe er dieſen Brief noch einmal, or laſſet ihn dieſen Brief noch einmal leſen. [b] Genitive.

17. [a] brauchen. [b] Gewalt. [c] Opfer, *n.* [d] Sicherheit. [e] geſtehen. [f] richten. [g] gemäß. [h] Geſetz, *n.*

18. [a] gebieten. [b] Feſtung. [c] aufthun. [d] Thor, *n.* (*pl.*—e).

19. [a] eintreten.

20. Thy will be done.[a]

21. Let it be executed[a] directly.[b]

22. Bring[a] me proofs[b], and I will[c] condemn[d] him.

23. Permit[a] me to make some general[b] observations[c] before I refer to[d] this special[e] case.[f]

24. Let people[a] go into the asylums[b] of madmen[c], and hear their chattering[d], or let them[e] listen to[f] some exceedingly[g] simple fools[h], and they will explain[i] to themselves why the ape has been refused[j] the divine[k] gift[l] of speech.

25. Let them depart[a] in peace.[b]

26. Let them suppose[a] the case of their having failed[b] in this attempt[c], what resource[d] would have been left[e] to them?

27. Let them say whatever they like[a], but let them pay[b] what they owe.[c]

28. Tell me, please[a], your opinion[b] on[c] this matter.[d]

---

20. [a] geſchehen to be done.

21. [a] ausführen. [b] ſogleich.

22. [a] express this by the indefinite man. [b] Beweis, *m.* [c] take the Present. [d] verurtheilen.

23. [a] to permit to make erlauben; here either the social form of the Imperative can be taken, or the indefinite man, if the people addressed are not present, as in a book. [b] allgemein. [c] Bemerkung. [d] eingehen in, Acc. [e] beſonder. [f] Fall.

24. [a] man. [b] Haus, *n.* [c] Wahnſinnig. [d] Geſchwätz, *n.* [e] man. [f] anhören. [g] äußerſt. [h] einfältig, Thor. [i] erklären. [j] verſagen, with Dat. [k] göttlich. [l] Gabe.

25. [a] ſcheiden, and it is to be remarked, that the third person of the plural, like that of the singular, is either taken from the Subjunctive Present, or circumscribed by laſſen. [b] Friede, *m.*

26. [a] ſetzen. [b] *say*, that they had failed, in the Subjunctive; *I fail in a thing* is eine Sache mißlingt mir. [c] Verſuch. [d] Hülfsquelle, *f.* [e] laſſen or bleiben.

27. [a] wollen. [b] zahlen. [c] ſollen.

28. [a] to be given by the Adverbs einmal, doch or gefälligſt: the first two express more the *urgency* of the Imperative, the third refers to the *kindness* of the addressed person. [b] Meinung. [c] über, Acc. [d] Sache, *f.*

29. Pray[a] do not mention[b] this affair to anybody.[c]
30. Be so kind as[a] to ring[b] the bell.[c]

XIV. On the Infinitive.

1. Talking[a] has its time, and keeping silence[b] has its time too.[c]

2. Giving presents[a] is more delightful[b] than receiving presents.[c]

3. It is certainly better to suffer[a] wrong[b] than to do wrong; but there is a third way[c], which is more reasonable[d] and noble than both, to prevent[e] by courage and energy[f] that by no means[g] wrong may be done.[h]

4. Telling a falsehood[a] and cheating[b] are very nearly[c] related.[d]

5. You have nice[a] talking[b] and laughing.

---

29. [a] either bitte, or by the Adverb ja placed after the Imperative. [b] erwähnen. [c] not any body keiner, e, es, or niemand.

30. [a] this *as* after *so kind*, and similar expressions, against all construction, is expressed by und, which makes the following sentence perfectly independent; therefore, translate *and ring*. [b] ſchellen. [c] Glocke, *f.*, or Klingel, *f.*

1. [a] the English Participle Present often only refers to the action of the Verb, without reference to time, person, or mood: this is expressed in German by the *Infinitive*, without zu *to*. [b] ſchweigen. [c] auch.

2. [a] geben to give presents. [b] ſelig. [c] nehmen to receive presents.

3. [a] leiden, and mark, when the *Infinitive expression*, like *to suffer wrong*, is the subject to a sentence, as hereto, *it is certainly better*, it is not preceded by the particle zu *to*. [b] Unrecht. [c] Drittes third way. [d] vernünftig. [e] verhindern. [f] Kraft, *f.* [g] durchaus kein. [h] geſchehen.

4. [a] lügen. [b] betrügen. [c] nahe. [d] verwandt, *say*, related to each other.

5. [a] gut. [b] the Participle Present after *to have* is given in German by an Infinitive without zu.

6. I saw her dancing[a] with your friend.

7. I heard him speaking[a] in that assembly.[b]

8. The medical man found the patient[a] sleeping on[b] the sofa.[c]

9. You remained[a] standing, whilst[b] she remained sitting.

10. What one[a] does not see growing[b], one finds grown after a short time.[c]

11. Talking little and thinking much, is, at all times[a], better than talking much and thinking little.

12. Listening[a], relating[b], forgetting[c], is the motto[d] of the curious.[e]

13. I am breathing[a] the air[b] in an English prison[c]; and is this called[d] living[e] in England, and enjoying[f] the benefit[g] of its laws[h]?

14. Could the ruler[a] of England do more than elect[b] the noblest of the whole monarchy[c], and appoint[d] them as judges in this royal[e] dispute.[f]

15. This proud[a] heart is not to be humbled.[b]

---

6. [a] the Participle Present after Verbs expressing *to see, to hear, to feel, to find,* and after *to remain,* is expressed in German by the Infinitive without zu.

7. [a] reden. [b] Verſammlung.

8. [a] Krank. [b] auf. [c] Sopha, *n.*

9. [a] bleiben. [b] während.

10. [a] man. [b] wachſen. [c] einige Zeit.

11. [a] allezeit at all times.

12. [a] horchen. [b] erzählen. [c] vergeſſen. [d] Wahlſpruch, *m.* [e] Neugierig.

13. [a] athmen. [b] Luft, *f.* [c] Gefängniß, *n.* [d] heißen, which means both *to call,* and *to be called,* and it is to be observed, that heißen is followed by an Infinitive without zu. [e] leben. [f] genießen. [g] Wohlthat, *f.* [h] Geſetz, *n.*

14. [a] Beherrſcher. [b] erwählen, and mark, after *he does nothing but,* or *does more than,* stands the Infinitive without zu. [c] Königreich, *n.* [d] beſtellen zu to appoint as. [e] königlich. [f] Streit, *m.*

15. [a] ſtolz. [b] demüthigen, and mark, the Infinitive *Passive* after *to be* and *to remain* is in German an Infinitive *Active.*

16. In order[a] to be happy, one needs[b] only contentment.[c]

17. Happy I call him, who, in order to enjoy, is not obliged[a] to do[b] wrong; and in order to act justly, is not obliged to live in want.[c]

18. My son, try[a] to be what you wish[b] to appear.[c]

19. Benefits cease[a] to be benefits, if you[b] try to pay yourself[c] for them.

20. Much still remains to be done.[a]

21. Before God it is enough to be pure[a] of heart[b], for God looks[c] into the heart.

22. I have often heard[b] it said.[a]

23. I have seen a soldier affrighted[a] at[b] his own shadow[c], who the day before had entered[d] a breach.[e]

24. The defence[a] of liberty[b] has always been found[c] to expand[d] and to strengthen[e] the mind.[f]

---

16. [a] um, which requires the Infinitive with zu. [b] bedürfen. [c] Zufriedenheit.

17. [a] nöthig haben. [b] when the *Infinitive expression* is an *Accusative* to a sentence, it must be preceded by zu. [c] entbehren to live in want.

18. [a] ſuchen. [b] wünſchen. [c] ſcheinen.

19. [a] aufhören. [b] man. [c] ſich bezahlt machen to pay one's self.

20. [a] cf. Note 15[b].

21. [a] rein. [b] *say*, of pure heart. [c] anſehen to look into.

22. [a] the Past Participle after *to see, to hear, to feel, to find*, is expressed by the *Infinitive Active* of the *Present;* and mark, there being a rule that a Past Participle of the Verbs *to see, to hear*, etc., when following an Infinitive is changed into an Infinitive too, it follows that *heard* [b] must stand in the Infinitive.

23. [a] erſchrecken. [b] über, Acc. [c] Schatten, *m.* [d] ſich ſtürzen in. [e] Breſche, *f.*

24. [a] Vertheidigung. [b] Freiheit. [c] *say*, one has always found, and mark, the *Accusative* and *Infinitive*, which, in imitation of the Latin, follows in English such Verbs as *to find, to see*, etc., must be expressed in German by an *objective sentence*, headed by *that* daß. [d] entfalten. [e] ſtärken. [f] Seele, *f.*

25. The king had[a] him punished[b] on account[c] of his neglect of duty.[d]

26. As we lived near[a] the road[b], we often had[c] the traveller or stranger visit[c] us, to taste[d] our gooseberry-wine[e], for which[f] we had great[g] reputation.[h]

27. And I profess[a], with the veracity[b] of an historian[c], that I never knew[d] one of them find fault[e] with it.

28. When any of our relations[a] was found[b] to be a person[c] of a very bad character, a troublesome[d] guest[e], or one[f] we desired[g] to get rid of[h], upon his leaving my house[i], I ever took care[j] to lend[k] him a riding-coat[l], or a pair of boots, and I always had the satisfaction[m] to find he never came back to return[n] them.

XV. On the Participles.

1. The Germans[a] often had bitterly[b] to lament[c], that they succeeded better[d] in thinking[e] and speaking than in acting[f].

---

25. [a] laſſen, which is followed by an *Infinitive Active*. [b] beſtrafen. [c] wegen. [d] Pflichtvergeſſenheit.

26. [a] an. [b] Landſtraße, *f.* [c] *say*, we received visits from, erhalten to receive, Beſuch, *m.*, visit. [d] koſten, *say*, who wished to taste. [e] Stachelbeerwein, *m.* [f] *say*, which enjoyed ſich erfreuen, with Gen. [g] verbreitet. [h] Ruf, *m.*

27. [a] geſtehen. [b] Wahrheitsliebe. [c] Geſchichtſchreiber. [d] *say*, that I never heard it blamed by. [e] tadeln.

28. [a] Verwandt. [b] when it was found that, ſich ergeben to be found. [c] Menſch. [d] läſtig. [e] Gaſt. [f] Geſell, *m.*, and do not forget the *Relative Pronoun*. [g] gern wollen. [h] los ſein. [i] *say*, at leave beim Abſchiede. [j] nicht verſäumen. [k] borgen. [l] Ueberrock, *m.* [m] Vergnügen. [n] zurückgeben.

1. [a] Deutſch. [b] ſchmerzlich. [c] beklagen. [d] *to succeed better* es weiter bringen. [e] The Participle Present, *in English*, is often nothing but the action of the Verb represented as a Substantive; this is expressed, *in German*, by the Infinitive, used as a Substantive neuter. [f] handeln.

2. I rejoice[a] in the expectation[b] of comparing[c] the imaginary[d] world with the real[e] one[f].

3. It is too good for[a] being true.

4. Friendship improves[a] happiness[b] and abates[c] misery[d], by[e] the doubling[f] of our joy, and dividing[g] of our grief[h].

5. Bocaccio is not only entitled[a] to gratitude[b] for[c] having introduced[d] into Italy the study[e] of the Greek[f] language, but[g] for having preserved[h] and restored[i] what constitutes[j] its greatest glory[k], the writings[l] of Homer.

6. Most[a] authors[b] content themselves[c] with[d] thinking on[e] their subject[f] with all possible calmness[g], then with making a so-called[h] disposition[i], and carrying out[j] their argument[k] accordingly[l].

7. But they use[a] the warmth[b] of the first excitement[c] in giving[d] us from[e] their glowing[f] imagination[g] a fresh picture.

---

2. [a] ſich freuen. [b] *say*, on that (darauf), that I shall compare. [c] vergleichen. [d] geträumt. [e] wirklich. [f] is not translated.

3. [a] *say*, in order to be; the Participle Present *in English*, preceded by a Preposition, as *without, instead of, far from*, is expressed, *in German*, by those Prepositions followed by an Infinitive.

4. [a] erhöhen. [b] Glück, *n.* [c] mildern. [d] Elend. [e] When the Participle Present, preceded by a Preposition, expresses, *in English*, an adverbial sentence of *cause* or *effect*, it must be translated by an adverbial sentence, headed by a *conjunction*, which implies *cause* or *effect*. Here say *because it troubles*; or the Conjunction can be *that* daß, following an *Adverb* of *cause* or *effect*, as *by that* dadurch, *that* daß. [f] verdoppeln. [g] theilen. [h] Schmerz, *m.*

5. [a] has a right to Recht haben auf, Acc. [b] Dankbarkeit. [c] dafür daß, or indem (cf. Note 4, [e]). [d] einführen. [e] Studium. [f] griechiſch. [g] ſondern. [h] erhalten. [i] wiederherſtellen. [j] ausmachen. [k] Herrlichkeit. [l] Schrift.

6. [a] die meiſten. [b] Schriftſteller. [c] ſich begnügen. [d] damit daß. [e] über. [f] Gegenſtand. [g] Gelaſſenheit. [h] nennen. [i] Dispoſition. [j] ausführen. [k] Satz. [l] danach.

7. [a] nutzen. [b] Heftigkeit. [c] Anfall. [d] *say*, whilst they give indem, etc. [e] von. [f] glühen, and mark, when the Participle is, *in English*, used as an Adjective, it is used and declined as such also *in German*. [g] Einbildungskraft.

8. This is often richly coloured[a] and forcible[b] enough, but still[c] it fails[d] to produce[e] the expected[f] effect[g].

9. Many people[a] possess[b] a number[c] of impressions[d], derived[e] either[f] from nature or art, without their knowing[g] it themselves.

10. When[a] formerly[b] one manuscript[c] was destroyed[d], the entire[e] work was commonly[f] lost[g]; with[h] us a hundred and more copies[i] may[j] be destroyed, without the work being[k] lost.

11. The natives[a] of South Africa, having[b] observed[c] the anxiety[d] of the ostrich[e] to keep[f] the fox from[g] robbing[h] her nest, avail themselves[i] of this solicitude[j] to lure[k] the bird to[l] its destruction[m].

12. For, seeing[a] that it runs to the nest the instant[b] a fox appears[c], they fasten[d] a dog near it[e], and conceal themselves[f] close by[g].

---

8. [a] bunt richly coloured. [b] ſtark. [c] dennoch. [d] verfehlen. [e] thun. [f] erwarten. [g] Wirkung.

9. [a] Menſch. [b] bei ſich haben. [c] Menge, *f.* [d] Eindruck, *m.* [e] herrühren to be derived, and *say*, be they derived. [f] entweder. [g] wiſſen, and say either *without to know*, or in form of an adverbial sentence with daß *without that they know*; the latter method is especially to be used when the subject of this adverbial sentence is not the same as that in the chief sentence.

10. [a] wenn. [b] ehemals. [c] handſchriftliches Werk. [d] vernichten. [e] ganz. [f] gewöhnlich. [g] verlieren. [h] bei. [i] Exemplar, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [j] können. [k] cf. Note 9, g, and therefore say, *without that the work*, etc.

11. [a] Eingeboren. [b] this sentence containing the reason, it must be rendered in the form of an adverbial sentence with da; and mark, since an Adverb cannot stand between a Nominative, *the natives* and the Verb *avail*, the adverbial sentence must, in German, lead; therefore translate: Since the natives of South Africa have observed, etc., they avail themselves, etc. [c] bemerken. [d] Sorgfalt, *f.* [e] Strauß, *m.* [f] verhindern. [g] *say*, that he may not. [h] berauben. [i] benutzen. [j] Beſorgniß, *f.* [k] locken. [l] in. [m] Verderben, *n.*

12. [a] *say*, as they see. [b] Augenblick, *m.*, *say*, the moment that. [c] ſich ſehen laſſen. [d] anbinden. [e] nicht weit davon. [f] ſich verbergen. [g] in der Nähe.

13. And the ostrich, on approaching[a] to drive away[b] the supposed[c] fox, is frequently[d] shot[e] by the real hunter[f].

14. Would the child beware[a] of hurting itself[b] with sharp instruments[c], if it were not afraid[d] of the pains[e] arising[f] from it[g]?

15. He who[a] makes a mistake[b] in the choosing[c] of good and evil[d], and chooses what is[e] momentarily[f] pleasant[g], but producing[h] bad[i] consequences[j], commits[k] an error.[l]

16. During[a] the severest[b] frost[c], the Greenlanders[d] sit working[e] in a room without a fire.[f]

17. The trembling[a] sound[b] of the poplar[c] or asp[d] has something peculiar[e], which[f] also the Latin[g] populus, the English poplar, and the German pappel, intimate.[h]

18. The grinding[a] of grain[b] to[c] flour[d], at first[e] required[f] much time and trouble, until at last handmills[g], and afterwards[h] watermills[i] and windmills[j] were invented.[k]

19. Committing an error[a] is a mistaking[b] of good and evil.

---

13. [a] ſich nähern, and *say*, when the ostrich approaches. [b] fort-jagen. [c] vermeintlich. [d] häufig. [e] erſchießen. [f] Jäger.

14. [a] ſich hüten. [b] *say*, before wounding itself; Verwundung is to express the Participle. [c] Werkzeug, *n.* [d] ſich fürchten vor, Dat. [e] Schmerz, *m.* (*pl.* —en). [f] entſtehen. [g] daraus, and treat *arising from it* as an Adjective standing before *pains*.

15. [a] wer. [b] ſich vergreifen to make a mistake. [c] wählen. [d] treat *good* and *evil* as Substantives neuter. [e] *what is pleasant* treat as a Substantive neuter with the Def. Art. [f] augenblicklich. [g] angenehm. [h] bringen, and make it dependent upon the preceding Def. Article. [i] ſchlimm, [j] Folge, *f.* [k] begehen. [l] Verirrung.

16. [a] Während. [b] bitter. [c] Kälte, *f.* [d] Grönländer. [e] arbeiten, and mark, the Participle Present is also in German used adverbially. [f] unheated ungeheizt.

17. [a] zittern. [b] Säuſeln, *n.* [c] Pappel, *f.* [d] Eſpe, *f.* [e] eigen. [f] was. [g] lateiniſch, treated as a Substantive neuter. [h] anbeuten.

18. [a] Zermalmen. [b] Getreide, *n.* [c] in. [d] Mehl, *n.* [e] anfangs. [f] koſten. [g] Handmühle, *f.* [h] ſpäterhin. [i] Waſſermühle, *f.* [j] Windmühle, *f.* [k] erfinden.

19. [a] Verirrung committing an error. [b] Verkennen.

20. Pretending[a] to read a book, I heard several dreadful[b] stories.[c]

21. The necessity[a] of dress[b] compelled[c] men to the invention[d] of tanning[e], spinning[f], and weaving.[g]

22. Blucher's intrepidity[a] in dangerous[b] situations[c], his perseverance[d] in misfortune, and his courage, increasing[e] with[f] every difficulty[g], were founded[h] on the consciousness[i] of his bodily[j] strength.[k]

23. My landlady's[a] daughters telling them that it was nobody[b] but[c] the gentleman[d], they went on[e] without minding[f] me.

24. The civil[a] wars[b] having been terminated[c], Julius Caesar stood on the pinnacle[d] of his fortune[e], surrounded[f] with splendour[g] and power.[h]

25. Curiosity[a] is the wish[b] of learning[c] what has just[d] happened, and, if[e] possible, what is just happening; it is the desire[f] of filling[g] a mental[h] vacuum.[i]

26. Desire of knowledge[a] is the wish[b] of employing[c] an active[d] mind.[e]

27. Caesar was only intent[a] on making his victory[b]

---

20. [a] *say*, whilst I pretended; vorgeben to pretend. [b] ſchrecklich. [c] Geſchichte, *f.*

21. [a] Unentbehrlichkeit. [b] Kleidung. [c] treiben. [d] Erfindung. [e] gerben. [f] ſpinnen. [g] weben.

22. [a] Unerſchrockenheit. [b] gefährlich. [c] Lage, *f.* [d] Ausdauern. [e] wachſen, and treat the Participle as an Adjective. [f] bei with the plural; *say*, with all. [g] Schwierigkeit. [h] ſich gründen auf, with Acc. [i] Bewußtſein, *n.* [j] körperlich. [k] Kraft, *f.*

23. [a] Wirthin. [b] niemand. [c] als. [d] Herr. [e] fortfahren. [f] ſich kümmern um.

24. [a b] Bürgerkrieg, *m.* [c] beenden. [d] Gipfel, *m.* [e] Glück, *n.* [f] bekleiden. [g] Glanz, *m.* [h] Macht, *f.*

25. [a] Neugier, *f.* [b] Verlangen. [c] erfahren. [d] ſo eben. [e] wo. [f] Bedürfniß, *n.* [g] ausfüllen. [h] inner. [j] Leere, *f.*

26. [a] Wißbegier, *f.* [b] Bedürfniß, *n.* [c] beſchäftigen. [d] thätig. [e] Geiſt, *m.*

27. [a] bedacht ſein auf. [b] Sieg, *m.*

lasting[c], and to maintain[d] by wisdom and mildness[e], what he had gained by the fortune[f] of war.[g]

28. Death[a] once seen[b] at[c] our hearth[d] leaves[e] a shadow[f] which abides[g] there for[h] ever.

29. Butterflies[a] are adorned[b] with glorious[c] colours.

30. You are not engaged[a] for[b] the following day.

31. The estate[a] is left[b] to me, and I am the legal[c] heir.[d]

32. In order to be sure[a] of it[b], I was resolved[c] to go myself.

33. I was determined[a] to do it the sooner[b], since[c] necessity[d] was urging.[e]

34. My patience[a] was now quite exhausted.[b]

35. The ambassador[a] having delivered his address[b], presented[c] the gift[d], and having received[e] from the mayor[f] the assurance[g] of continued[h] encouragement[i], he departed[j] from[k] the enclosed[l] circle.[m]

---

[c] dauernd. [d] behaupten. [e] Milde, *f.* [f] Glück. [g] *say*, of arms Waffe, *f.*

28. [a] Tod, *m.* [b] say either *the once at our hearth seen death*, or *has death once been seen*; to be seen erſcheinen. [c] an. [d] Herd, *m.* [e] zurücklaſſen. [f] Schatten, *m.* [g] verweilen. [h] auf.

29. [a] Schmetterling, *m.* [b] ſchmücken, and mark, when the Past Participle conveys the notion of a *Verb*, the auxiliary is werden; i. e. it is treated as a Participle in the *Passive Voice*; but when it refers to the *quality* of a Substantive, it is treated as an Adjective, and the auxiliary is ſein. [c] herrlich.

30. [a] verſagen. [b] auf.

31. [a] Gut, *n.* [b] hinterlaſſen. [c] rechtmäßig. [d] Erbe, *m.*

32. [a] gewiß. [b] take the Gen. of the Dem. Pron. der, die, das. [c] entſchloſſen, which, like erſchöpft, is one of those Participles Past that have lost the participial meaning, and are used only as Adjectives.

33. [a] entſchloſſen. [b] um ſo eher. [c] da. [d] Noth, *f.* [e] drängen.

34. [a] Geduld, *f.* [b] erſchöpft.

35. [a] Geſandt. [b] eine Anrede halten to deliver an address. [c] abgeben. [d] Geſchenk, *n.* [e] empfangen. [f] Schultheiß. [g] Verſicherung. [h] fortdauernd. [i] Begünſtigung. [j] ſich entfernen. [k] aus. [l] ſchließen. [m] Kreis, *m.*

36. This story[a] is fabricated.[b]

37. The children are being dressed[a] by their nurse[b], and when they are dressed, they will take a walk.[c]

38. The books are printed[a] by our old acquaintance[b], and as soon as[c] they are printed, you shall have a copy[d] of each[e] of them.

39. We shall meet[a] again, when the battle[b] is lost[c] and won.[d]

40. She came cheerfully[a] running towards[b] me.

41. All the boys came at once[a] bounding[b] uproariously[c] into the room.

XVI. On Verbs, Construed with a Genitive or Dative Case.

1. Remember[a], O king, the promise[b] you have given us.

2. War spares[a] not even[b] the infant[c] in the cradle.[d]

3. Must a weak woman give up[a] her native[b] right?

4. Is it worth while[a] to talk so much about a trifle.[b]

5. He has applied himself[a], during the last three years, to the study[b] of ancient history.

---

36. [a] Geſchichte, *f.* [b] erlügen.

37. [a] ankleiden. [b] Amme, *f.* [c] ausgehen.

38. [a] drucken. [b] Bekannt. [c] ſobald. [d] Exemplar, *n.* [e] jeder.

39. [a] ſich treffen. [b] Schlacht, *f.* [c] verlieren. [d] gewinnen.

40. [a] heiter. [b] entgegenlaufen, with Dat., and mark, the Partic. Present, like *running*, after Verbs of motion, like *came*, is expressed in German by a Past Participle.

41. [a] auf einmal. [b] ſpringen. [c] lärmend.

1. [a] gedenken, with Gen. [b] Verſprechen.

2. [a] ſchonen, Gen. [b] auch nicht. [c] Kindlein. [d] Wiege, *f.*

3. [a] ſich entäußern, Gen. [b] angeboren.

4. [a] *say*, does it reward the trouble; to reward ſich lohnen, Gen.; trouble Mühe, *f.* [b] Kleinigkeit.

5. [a] ſich befleißen, Gen. [b] Studium.

6. I do not remember[a] it any more.[b]
7. How long did you serve[a] your country[b]?
8. Bless[a] those who curse[b] thee.
9. Thy lamenting[a] avails[b] thee not.
10. The dress[a] fitted[b] my sister well.
11. Do not trust[a] those who flatter[b] thee.
12. Do not defy[a] the stronger[b], but[c] yield[d] rather[e] to superior power.[f]
13. He beckoned[a] me to follow[b] him into the next room.
14. It behoves[a] the children to obey[b] their parents.
15. Your promise satisfies[a] me perfectly.[b]
16. It does not please[a] me to see you constantly[b] in such company.
17. The sword escaped[a] his hand.
18. His name had almost[a] escaped[b] my memory.
19. Do not trust[a] him, who promises[b] you too much.
20. I have assisted[a] him with all the money I possessed.[b]

---

6. [a] ſich entſinnen, Gen. [b] not any more nicht mehr.
7. [a] dienen, Dat. [b] Vaterland, *n.*
8. [a] ſegnen. [b] fluchen, Dat.
9. [a] klagen. [b] to avail nützen, Dat.
10. [a] Kleid, *n.* [b] paſſen, Dat.
11. [a] trauen, Dat. [b] ſchmeicheln, Dat.
12. [a] trotzen, Dat. [b] ſtärker, used as *Substantive.* [c] ſondern. [d] weichen, Dat. [e] vielmehr. [f] Uebermacht, *f.*
13. [a] winken, Dat. [b] folgen, Dat.
14. [a] ziemen, Dat. [b] gehorchen, Dat.
15. [a] genügen, Dat. [b] vollkommen.
16. [a] gefallen, Dat. [b] ſtets.
17. [a] entfallen, all Verbs derived by ent are construed with the Dative of the object.
18. [a] faſt. [b] for *escape my memory*, say *escape me.*
19. [a] mißtrauen, Dat. [b] verſprechen, Dat.
20. [a] helfen, Dat. [b] haben.

21. This evil[a] must be remedied.[b]

22. Imitate[a] the great examples[b] of those excellent[c] men.

23. You have too long connived[a] at his faults.[b]

24. We must try to prevent[a] this danger.[b]

25. Such a dish[a] would not agree[b] with the patient.[c]

26. What did you advise[a] him in this emergency.[b]

27. How many troubles[a] and anxieties[b] does not humility[c] spare[d] us!

28. In Siberia they can as little[a] do without[b] dogs, as in other countries without horses.

29. Sheep[a] are without[b] any[c] arms or[d] faculty[e] of defending[f] themselves.

30. What does not belong[a] to your office[b], with that[c] do not meddle.

31. Arnold endeavoured[a] in his historical[b] reading[c] to follow the plan[d], which he afterwards recommended[e] in his lectures[f], of making himself thoroughly[g] master[h] of some one period.[i]

---

21. [a] Elend, *n.* [b] abhelfen, Dat., and mark, *Verbs* with a *Dative* are in Passive so construed, that the *Dative in German* takes the place of the *English Nominative*, and the Verb itself stands in the third singular; f. i., they were assisted ihnen wurde geholfen.

22. [a] nacheifern, which, like all compounds with nach, is construed with Dative. [b] Beiſpiel, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [c] vortrefflich.

23. [a] nachſehen to connive at. [b] Fehler, *m.*

24. [a] vorbeugen, Dat. [b] Gefahr, *f.*

25. [a] Speiſe, *f.* [b] bekommen, Dat., to agree with. [c] Krank.

26. [a] rathen, Dat. [b] wichtiger Fall.

27. [a] Unruhe, *f.* [b] Marter, *f.* [c] Demuth, *f.* [d] überheben, with Accusative of the *person*, and Genitive of the *thing*.

28. [a] eben ſo wenig. [b] to do without entbehren, Gen.

29. [a] Schaaf, *n.* (*pl.*—e.) [b] ermangeln, Gen. [c] all. [d] *say*, and. [e] Fähigkeit. [f] vertheidigen.

30. [a] ſein, with Gen. [b] Amt, *n.* [c] *say*, there leave your wit laſſen, Vorwitz, *m.*

31. [a] verſuchen. [b] geſchichtlich. [c] Studium, and take the plural, Studien. [d] Plan, *m.* [e] empfehlen. [f] Vorleſung. [g] vollkommen. [h] to make one's self master ſich bemeiſtern. [i] Zeitraum, *m.*

32. During the frequent[a] irruptions[b] of the northern nations who subverted[c] the Roman state[d], Florence[e] followed the fate[f] of the rest[g] of Italy.

33. Who can resist[a] the power[b] of circumstances?[c]

34. The peacocks[a] fell on[b] the jackdaw[c], to pluck from[d] her her deceitful[e] ornament.[f]

35. By hospitals[a] the misery[b] of many thousand people is partly[c] remedied[d], partly it is at least considerably[e] alleviated.[f]

36. The Athenians[a] had bound[b] themselves by an oath[c], for ten years[d] to live according[e] to the institutions[f] which Solon had prescribed[g] to them.

37. It can be proved that[a] all the persons, introduced[b] into this story, have existed[c] within[d] that memorable[e] period.

38. A scholar[a] was pleased[b] to convince[c] us of having committed[d] an error[e] in the chronology[f] of that century.[g]

---

32. [a] häufig. [b] Einfall, *m.* [c] ſtürzen. [d] Staat, *m.* [e] Florenz. [f] Schickſal, *n.* [g] *say*, of the remaining Italy übrig.

33. [a] widerſtehen, which, like all compounds with wider, is construed with a Dat. [b] Gewalt, *f.* [c] Umſtand, *m.*

34. [a] Pfau, *m.* (Gen.—en). [b] herfallen über, Acc. [c] Krähe, *f.* [d] ausreißen, with Dat. [e] trügeriſch. [f] Schmuck, *m.*

35. [a] Krankenhaus, *n.* [b] Elend, *n.* [c] theils. [d] abhelfen. [e] beträchtlich. [f] mindern.

36. [a] Athener. [b] verpflichten. [c] Eid, *m.* [d] *say*, ten years through hindurch. [e] to live according nachleben, with Dat. [f] Einrichtung. [g] vorſchreiben.

37. [a] Treat *it can be proved that* as an Adverb, *in a way that can be proved* erweislicher Maßen. [b] to introduce into einflechten, with the Dative. [c] leben. [d] innerhalb. [e] denkwürdig.

38. [a] Gelehrt. [b] *say*, it had pleased gefallen, Dat. [c] überweiſen, and construe thus: to convince us of that, that we had committed. [d] machen. [e] Fehler, *m.* [f] Zeitrechnung. [g] Jahrhundert, *n.*

XVII. On Adverbs.

1. The old man clogs[a] our earliest[b] years, and simple childhood[c] comes the last[d].

2. The parents and tutors[a] knew always best[b], what was of avail[c] to young people.

3. After such wars[a] and pestilential diseases[b], the remembrance[c] of the blessings[d] of peace most forcibly[e] recurred[f] to several pious[g] men.

4. Queen Christina rode[a] most boldly[b] on horseback; one foot in the stirrup[c], thus she flew along[d].

5. Of[a] all living beings[b] man is least[c] restrained[d] to one single country.

6. He did not yield[a], nor[b] did he renounce[c] the least[d] advantage[e].

7. It was properly[a] about[b] this period[c] that I first became acquainted[d] with my native city[e], which[f] I strolled[g] over[h] with more and more freedom[i] in every direction.

---

1. [a] hemmen. [b] früh. [c] Kindheit. [d] zuletzt.

2. [a] Erzieher. [b] The superlative of the Adverb is formed by the Preposition an, with the Dat. of the neuter of the superlative of the Adjective, as *in the finest manner* an dem, or more usually contracted, am ſchönſten; or by auf, with the Acc. neuter, as auf das, or more usually, aufs ſchönſte; the first way is used when the superlative is the highest degree in reference to other things; the second, when the superlative implies the highest degree absolutely. [c] frommen to be of avail.

3. [a] Krieg, *m.* [b] Peſtkrankheit. [c] Gedanke, *m.* [d] Segnung. [e] lebendig. [f] to recur to ergreifen. [g] fromm.

4. [a] to ride on horseback zu Pferde ſitzen. [b] kühn. [c] Bügel, *m.* [d] dahin.

5. [a] unter. [b] Weſen, *n.* [c] wenig. [d] beſchränken auf, Acc.

6. [a] weichen, [b] auch nicht, which are separated by the *Verb* and following *Nominative*. [c] aufgeben. [d] gering. [e] Vortheil, *m.*

7. [a] eigentlich. [b] in. [c] Zeit, *f.* [d] gewahr werden, with Acc. [e] Vaterſtadt, *f.* [f] *say*, in which I strolled. [g] wandeln. [h] auf und ab. [i] *say*, always more freely.

8. For a time[a] I was permitted[b] to read those entertaining[c] books.

9. We sailed[a] up and down[b] the beautiful river.

10. Sometimes[a] there appeared in the house some very curious[b] people.

11. And we even[a] hoped that we might live to see[b], some time or other[c], a coronation[d] with our own eyes.

12. From[a] the very first moments of consciousness[b] this excited[c] in me an unconquerable[d] desire[e] of knowing the meaning[f] of those obscure[g] words.

13. They pressed[a] us beyond[b] the village.

14. During the day[a] we did nothing but regard[b] all the novelties[c].

15. That which, indeed[a], was the chief point[b], occurred[c] not before[d] the approach of night[e].

16. I am[a] not to know what detained[b] you so long, and yet[c] my brother knows it?

17. The house after which you enquire[a] lies towards[b] the corner of the street[c].

---

8. [a] auf eine Zeit lang. [b] geſtatten, Dat. [c] unterhalten.

9. [a] fahren. [b] auf und abwärts.

10. [a] Mitunter. [b] ſeltſam.

11. [a] wohl auch. [b] to live to see erleben. [c] noch einmal. [d] Krönung.

12. [a] *From* is von; but mark, after a Preposition with its case, there often follows, in German, an Adverb of place, to point out the direction more strongly; thus here *say*, from the first moments onward an. [b] Bewußtſein, *n.* [c] erregen. [d] unbezwinglich. [e] Begierde, *f.* [f] Meinung. [g] dunkel.

13. [a] drängen. [b] über—hinaus, between both place *the village*.

14. [a] *say*, the day through, so that über is treated as an Adverb. [b] I regard something ich ſehe mir etwas an. [c] Neuigkeit.

15. [a] eigentlich. [b] this is the chief point darauf kommt es an. [c] ſich ereignen. [d] not before, or not sooner than, is erſt. [e] *say*, with sinking night.

16. [a] dürfen. [b] aufhalten. [c] doch, and mark, this doch, which corresponds with the English *though*, stands last.

17. [a] ſich erkundigen. [b] gegen—zu. [c] Straßenecke, *f.*

18. Down from[a] the market-place[b] they all had large gardens.

19. He arrived in London at seven, and thence[a] he travelled[b] to York.

20. She remained[a] three days in Bristol, whence[b] she came to us.

21. From there[a] he brought these fine fruit with him[b].

22. Beyond[a] those gardens we saw a fertile[b] plain[c].

23. Then, I suppose[a], I shall not fare[b] so very badly[c] after all[d].

24. I assure you[a], nothing is the matter[b].

25. Solon was hardly[a] gone, than[b] the revenging[c] gods decreed[d] great[e] misery[f] on[g] Croesus, probably[h] because he had considered[i] himself the happiest of all men.

26. The tree unchangeably[a] stands in[b] its place, and does not fall.

27. To be sure[a], you know that way[b] of speaking.

28. I suppose I shall not forget it in so great a hurry[a].

29. I suppose you are jesting[a].

---

18. [a] Von—her. [b] Marktplatz, *m.*

19. [a] von da. [b] reiſen.

20. [a] bleiben. [b] *whence* is woher, if it refers to the place of the speaking person, if not it is von wo.

21. [a] Von dort her. [b] *him* is not expressed in German.

22. [a] über—hinaus. [b] fruchtbar. [c] Ebene, *f.*

23. [a] wohl. [b] I fare es wird mit mir. [c] arg. [d] trotz alle dem.

24. [a] ja, which stands after the Verb. [b] nothing is the matter, *say*, it is nothing.

25. [a] kaum. [b] this *than* after *hardly* kaum, leads an adverbial sentence, and can be translated by als; but it is more usually, against all rule, translated by ſo, as if the preceding sentence, with *hardly* kaum, were the adverbial sentence. [c] rächen. [d] verhängen. [e] ſchwer. [f] Unglück, *n.* [g] über. [h] vermuthlich. [i] halten für.

26. [a] nach wie vor. [b] an.

27. [a] ja. [b] Weiſe, *f.*

28. [a] *say*, so quickly ſo ſchnell.

29. [a] ſcherzen.

30. He was still[a] living[b] here six months ago[c].

31. Only[a] six months ago he determined[b] to leave[c] this village.

32. He will remain here twelve months[a] longer[b].

33. Every state, however[a] large and however small, has felt[b] more or less the influence[c] of the Reformation[d].

34. It was[a] but in later times, that silk weaving[b] was transplanted[c] also to this side[d] of the Alps[e].

35. You understand me of course?[a]

36. For any other price[a] you do not get[b] the book.

37. She is as[a] slender[b] as[c] a palm-tree[d].

38. She acted[a] as[b] wife and mother.

39. These gifts[a] were presented[b] to the mayor[c] and, not to forget[d], for the sake of[e] a more imposing show[f], when[g] he was sitting in full court[h].

40. I like[a] such conversations[b] best, when[c] I can speak[d] my mind[e] freely in a circle[f] of intimate[g] friends.

41. Christina of Sweden read all ancient authors[a]; even[b] the fathers of the church[c] did not remain unknown[d] to her.

---

30. [a] noch. [b] wohnen. [c] *say*, before six months.

31. [a] erſt. [b] beſchließen. [c] verlaſſen.

32. [a] *say*, a year. [b] noch.

33. [a] noch ſo. [b] empfinden. [c] Einfluß, *m.* [d] Kirchenverbeſſerung.

34. [a] Treat *it was but that* as an adverbial expression erſt ſpäter. [b] Seidenweberei. [c] verpflanzen. [d] diesſeits, Gen. [e] Alp, *f.*

35. [a] ſchon.

36. [a] for any other price, *say*, otherwise anders. [b] kriegen.

37. [a] ſo, but it can be omitted. [b] ſchlank. [c] if *as* implies a *likeness*, it is wie. [d] Palme, *f.*

38. [a] handeln. [b] if *as* implies *identity*, it is als.

39. [a] Geſchenk, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [b] überreichen. [c] Schultheiß. [d] *not to forget* express by zwar, a contraction of es iſt wahr. [e] wegen, which is to be placed after its case. [f] more imposing show Anſtand, *m.* [g] wenn. [h] to sit in full court feierlich zu Gerichte ſitzen.

40. [a] I like well ich habe gern, I like better ich habe lieber, I like best ich habe am liebſten. [b] Unterhaltung. [c] wenn. [d] ausſprechen. [e] Geſinnung. [f] Kreis, *m.* [g] vertraut.

41. [a] Schriftſteller. [b] ſelbſt. [c] Kirchenvater. [d] fremd.

42. People fancied[a] that the coach, in pursuance[b] of an old custom[c], must always contain[d] a drunkard[e], on which account[f] the urchins[g] used[h] to break out[i] into an ear-splitting[j] shout[k] on[l] the arrival[m] of the coach.

43. Something you must learn at all events[a].

44. That did certainly[a] annoy[b] me.

45. I hope[a] you do not imagine[b] that I am uttering a falsehood[c].

46. Go there[a] yourself, why not[b]?

47. Indeed[a], I have thought so[b].

48. He confessed[a] it himself, why am I to doubt?[b]

49. Why is she not to[a] dance? you cannot deny[b], you have formerly[c] been very fond of[d] dancing.

50. Peace be with the ashes[a] of these brave men; we know[b] they have fought[c] for a good cause.[d]

51. I really feel[a] as if it had happened but[b] yesterday.

52. We hurt[a] those most whom we love most tenderly.[b]

53. Scarcely had I completed[a] my seventh year, than[b] immediately afterwards[c] that far-famed[d] war broke out[e], which was to exert[f] also great influence upon the next[g] seven years of my life.

---

42. [a] man trug ſich mit der Rede. [b] nach. [c] Gewohnheit. [d] enthalten. [e] Trunkenbold. [f] weßhalb denn. [g] Straßenjunge. [h] pflegen. [i] ausbrechen. [j] gellend. [k] Geſchrei, *n.* [l] bei. [m] Ankunft, *f.*

43. [a] doch.

44. [a] denn doch. [b] verdrießen.

45. [a] doch wohl, which are to be placed after *imagine.* [b] glauben. [c] lügen.

46. [a] hingehen. [b] doch einmal.

47. [a] doch, and mark, if an opinion of the speaking or the addressed person is appealed to by doch, then the Verb leads the sentence.. [b] *say*, it.

48. [a] geſtehen. [b] doch (cf. Note 47, [a]).

49. [a] ſollen. [b] express by doch, and cf. 47 [a]. [c] früher. [d] gern haben.

50. [a] Aſche, *f.*, sing. [b] express by doch. [c] kämpfen. [d] Sache, *f.*

51. [a] Iſt mir's doch. [b] erſt.

52. [a] verletzen. [b] zärtlich.

53. [a] zurücklegen. [b] als (cf. 25 [b]). [c] gleich darauf. [d] weltberühmt. [e] ausbrechen. [f] ausüben. [g] nächſt.

54. I also listened to[a] what he said, and consequently[b] walked along[c] with him.

55. This certainly[a] could not be denied[b]; still[c] you were not justified[d] in using such harsh[e] terms.[f]

56. As it happens[a] in childish matters[b], this event[c] was soon forgotten; it was, unfortunately[d], the cause why[e] our lessons[f] became rarer[g], and at last ceased[h] entirely.

57. You have commanded us to speak these words; in spite of this[a] he stubbornly[b] refuses[c] to obey you.

58. Suffice it to say, that[a] the perception[b] of the injustice of parties[c] had even then[d] a very unpleasant[e], nay[f], an injurious[g] effect[h] upon the boy.

XVIII. On Prepositions.

1. The legend[a] is poetry[b] both[c] in reference to[d] its contents[e] and its nature.[f]

2. The ocean[a] is not too great a scene of action[b] for the whale[c], and millions[d] of animalcula[e] find space[f] enough in a drop[g] of water.

3. What a distance[a] from the hugest[b] animal to the

---

54. [a] horchen auf, Acc.; and *say*, to that what. [b] alſo. [c] entlang.

55. [a] allerdings. [b] leugnen. [c] doch. [d] berechtigen. [e] ſtreng. [f] Wort, *n.*

56. [a] *say*, as it is accustomed to go. [b] Sache, *f.* [c] Ereigniß, *n.* [d] zum Unglücke. [e] daß. [f] Stunde, *f.* [g] ſelten. [h] aufhören.

57. [a] dennoch. [b] hartnäckig. [c] ſich weigern.

58. [a] *Suffice.... that* express by the Adverb *enough* genug. [b] Gewahrwerden, *n.* [c] *say*, of party injustice parteiiſch, Ungerechtigkeit. [d] ſchon damals. [e] unangenehm. [f] this Adverb is in German *not* nein, as might be *imagined*, but ja. [g] ſchädlich. [h] Wirkung.

1. [a] Sage, *f.* [b] Poeſie, *f.* [c] both—and ſowohl—als auch. [d] in reference to nach, standing after its case. [e] Inhalt, *m.* [f] Weſen, *n.*

2. [a] Weltmeer, *n.* [b] Tummelplatz, *m.* [c] Wallfiſch, *m.* [d] Million, *f.* [e] Thierchen, *n.* [f] Raum, *m.* [g] Tropfen, *m.*

3. [a] Abſtand, *m.* [b] groß.

egg[c] of the tiniest[d] insect! and how, again[e], does all grandeur[f] and glory[g] on earth disappear in comparison to[h] the universe[i]!

4. Many remarks[a] have so often been repeated[b], that they, in spite[c] of their sublime[d] meaning[e], make but[f] little[g] impression[h] on[i] mankind.[j]

5. There are[a] animals which, even in proportion[b] to[c] the size[d] of their bodies[e], move so slowly, that they, in[f] all justice[g], deserve the name *Tardigrades*, given them by the French natural historians[h], since[i], from[j] all appearance[k], even this slow movement causes[l] them very great exertion[m].

6. The shark[a] follows the speediest ship from Europe to the East Indies[b], and withal[c] incessantly[d] swimming around it, so that he, in that time, repeats the voyage perhaps three times.

7. The motion of the whole earth around its axis[a] is quicker than most motions which take place[b] on[c] the earth itself.

8. In consequence[a] of the daily[b] revolution[c] of the earth, a point[d] underneath[e] the line[f] passes[g] 1431 feet in one second.

---

[c] Ei, *n.* [d] klein. [e] wiederum. [f] Größe, *f.* [g] Herrlichkeit. [h] in comparison to gegen. [i] Weltall, *n.*

4. [a] Bemerkung. [b] wiederholen. [c] ungeachtet. [d] erhaben. [e] Meinung. [f] nur. [g] wenig, indeclinable. [h] Eindruck, *m.* [i] auf. [j] Plural of Mensch.

5. [a] es giebt. [b] im Verhältniß. [c] zu. [d] Größe. [e] Körper, *m.* [f] mit. [g] Recht, *n.* [h] Naturforscher. [i] da. [j] nach. [k] Anschein; and mark, Substantives are masculine when they are derived from Verbs, without any additional termination. [l] kosten. [m] Anstrengung.

6. [a] Hai, *m.* [b] Ostindien, *n.*; it is used without any Article. [c] dabei. [d] unaufhörlich.

7. [a] Axe, *f.* [b] Statt finden. [c] auf.

8. [a] vermöge. [b] täglich. [c] Umwälzung. [d] Punct, *m.* [e] unterhalb. [f] Linie, *f.* [g] durchlaufen.

9. Of[a] all motions, known to us, the speediest[b] is that of light.[c]

10. It is remarkable, that all the motions which occur in the skies[a], and therefore belong to[b] astronomy[c], are known with mathematical[d] accuracy[e] through the industry[f] and ingenuity[g] of astronomers.[h]

11. Notwithstanding all the raillery[a] which the proud man throws[b] on humility[c] and modesty[d], he still[e] loves the modest, and feels a comfort[f] in their society.

12. Humility is an ever[a] persevering[b] gratitude[c] towards the Almighty[d].

13. He was condescending[a] to[b] inferiors[c], without the least[d] constraint[e], and in some measure[f] making others equal to himself.

14. Whence[a] do most wars arise[b]? From[c] covetousness[d] and thirst of power[e], from haughtiness[f] and vindictiveness.[g]

15. Words produce a strong effect when they are spoken from[a] a deep conviction.[b]

16. The power[a] of imagination terminates with[b] nations as with[c] individuals[d], when in[e] progress[f] of time the power of reason[g] steps[h] in[i] its place.[j]

---

9. [a] *of*, after the superlative, unter or von. [b] ſchnell. [c] Licht, *n.*

10. [a] *say*, which have the sky for the place of action den Himmel zum Spielraum haben. [b] *say*, are an object of Gegenſtand. [c] Aſtronomie, *f.* [d] mathematiſch. [e] Genauigkeit. [f] Fleiß. [g] Scharfſinn, *m.* [h] Aſtronom (Gen.—en).

11. [a] Spott, *m.* [b] fallen laſſen. [c] Demuth, *f.* [d] Beſcheidenheit. [e] dennoch. [f] *say*, finds himself well.

12. [a] ſtets. [b] fortdauernd. [c] Dankbarkeit. [d] Allmächtig.

13. [a] ſich herablaſſen to be condescending [b] gegen. [c] Geringer. [d] entfernt. [e] Zwang. [f] auf gewiſſe Weiſe.

14. [a] woher. [b] entſtehen. [c] aus. [d] Habſucht, *f.* [e] Herrſchſucht. [f] Hochmuth, *m.* [g] Rachſucht.

15. [a] aus. [b] Ueberzeugung.

16. [a] Herrſchaft. [b] bei. [c] in. [d] einzelner Menſch. [e] bei. [f] Fortgang. [g] Vernunft. [h] treten. [i] an. [j] Stelle, *f.*

17. Is it not our own fault when, in[a] illness, or at an exterior[b] bruise[c], we do not immediately[d] seek assistance[e], but wait until it is too late?

18. But[a] a few[b] people, and only[c] those who are bad payers[d], have[e] their work done by[f] an unskilful[g] master.

19. In[a] everything one must look to[b] the end.

20. Our affection[a] for a human being[b] often then[c] begins when he is departed[d] from us.

21. Often dies with a man the hatred[a] against him, but never the affection for him.

22. Among[a] these papers there was found[b] a letter, which will be of[c] great importance[d] to[e] us.

23. I addressed[a] the next to[b] me.

24. He had kept[a] her to[b] the piano, and at[c] this opportunity[d] she saw herself obliged to acquire[e] some knowledge[f] of[g] the Italian language.

25. They went home in[a] the evening, just when[b] the sun was inclining[c] to set.[d]

26. Since the remotest[a] times the serpent[b] has been considered[c] the symbol[d] of cunning[e], acuteness[f] and falsehood.[g]

---

17. [a] bei. [b] äußer. [c] Schaden, *m.* [d] unmittelbar. [e] Hülfe.

18. [a] nur. [b] wenige. [c] einzig. [d] ſchlecht bezahlen to be a bad payer. [e] arbeiten laſſen to have one's work done. [f] bei. [g] ungeſchickt.

19. [a] bei. [b] auf.

20. [a] Liebe. [b] Menſch. [c] erſt dann. [d] gehen.

21. [a] Haß, *m.*

22. [a] bei. [b] use the reflective form [c] von is *of* when implying a quality. [d] Wichtigkeit. [e] für.

23. [a] anreden. [b] bei.

24. [a] anhalten. [b] zu, and *the piano* express by *the playing.* [c] bei. [d] Gelegenheit. [e] ſich erwerben. [f] use the plural of Kenntniß. [g] in.

25. [a] an. [b] da eben. [c] ſich neigen zu. [d] Untergang.

26. [a] alt. [b] Schlange, *f.* [c] anſehen als. [d] Sinnbild, *n.* [e] Liſt, [f] Klugheit. [g] Falſchheit.

27. Man can alleviate[a] many evils, when making[b] proper[c] use of[d] his reason and of his bodily strength.[e]

28. That is learned[a] of itself[b], and does not require[c] the assistance of a master.

29. You need[a] not ask him, he will do it of his own accord.[b]

30. As[a] Solon did not speak to the pleasure[b] of Croesus, nor[c] seemed to care[d] for[e] him, he was dismissed.[f]

31. And Croesus thought him to be[a] a foolish[b] man, because he did not value[c] the advantages[c] of the present moment[e], but[f] said, one must wait for[g] the end of everything.

32. Out of[a] love to[b] your old mother you will be obliged to make[c] many a sacrifice.[d]

33. To please[a] your poet[b], you wished to become an actor.[c]

34. For appearance' sake[a], Caesar refused[b] the profferred[c] royal title.[d]

35. The inhabitants of many countries neither want[a] buildings nor dress as[b] protection[c] against cold.

---

27. [a] vermindern. [b] *say*, when he makes. [c] gehörig. [d] von. [e] Leibeskraft, *f.*

28. [a] take the reflective form. [b] von ſelber. [c] bedürfen, with Gen.

29. [a] brauchen. [b] von ſelbſt.

30. [a] da. [b] zum Willen. [c] noch. [d] ſich kehren. [e] an. [f] fortſchicken.

31. [a] halten für to think to be. [b] unverſtändig. [c] achten. [d] Gut, which must be neuter, since it is the Adjective form without termination. [e] Gegenwart, *f.* [f] ſondern. [g] auf, *to wait for* is either warten auf, or abwarten without Preposition.

32. [a] aus. [b] zu, but mark, you can also say, deiner alten Mutter zu Liebe. [c] bringen. [d] Opfer, *n.*

33. [a] gefallen, Dat. [b] Dichter, but you can also express it by *out of pleasure for your poet* deinem Dichter zu Gefallen. [c] Schauſpieler.

34. [a] *say*, out of appearance, zu and Schein with the Art. [b] ablehnen. [c] anbieten. [d] Königstitel, *m.*

35. [a] bedürfen. [b] mark, when a *Substantive* like *protection* is the predicate to another, like *dress*, it has generally the Preposition zu prefixed. [c] Schutz, *m.*

36. The distress[a] was great, since all the wisdom of the learned, all ingenuity[b] of the artist, and all the power of kings were confounded.[c]

37. Heaven has given us pain, as it were[a], as[b] a watch[c] and ward[d] of our life and health.

38. Conflagrations[a] in great cities are very soon extinguished[b] by good fire-regulations.[c]

39. It is[a] only by means of speech that slumbering[b] reason is awakened.[c]

40. Solon considered[a] Tellus, a citizen of Athens, as the happiest man, because he had lived in prosperity[b], and had attained[c] the end of life[d] in the fulness[e] of honour and esteem.[f]

41. Nature creates nothing without particular[a] purposes[b]; there is always in her creations[c] and gifts[d] a well calculated[e] connexion[f] between them and other things, although[g] the human eye, from[h] weak inattention[i], does not everywhere[j] and immediately recognise[k] it.

42. A practised[a] ear would recognise most trees from[b] the rustling[c] of their foliage.[d]

43. The German emperor[a], Rodolph[b] the Second, had the greatest delight[c] in[d] antique[e] works of art[f], in statues[g], intaglios[h], and in pictures, and spent[i] great sums of money on[j] them.

---

36. [a] Noth, *f.* [b] Fertigkeit. [c] *say*, became to shame zu Schanden werden.

37. [a] gleichſam. [b] cf. Note 35 [b]. [c] Wächter. [d] Hüter.

38. [a] Feuersbrunſt, from brennen, with the termination ſt, and therefore *Feminine*. [b] auslöſchen. [c] Feueranſtalt.

39. [a] omit *it is—that*. [b] ſchlummern. [c] erwecken.

40. [a] halten für to consider as. [b] Glück, *n.* [c] erreichen. [d] Lebensende, *n.* [e] Fülle. [f] Achtung.

41. [a] beſonder. [b] Abſicht. [c] Schöpfung. [d] Gabe. [e] berechnen. [f] Zuſammenhang. [g] obgleich. [h] aus. [i] Unachtſamkeit. [j] überall. [k] erkennen.

42. [a] geübt. [b] aus. [c] Säuſeln, *n.* [d] Laub, *n.*

43. [a] Kaiſer. [b] Rudolf. [c] Freude, *f.* [d] an. [e] alt. [f] Kunſtwerk, *n.* [g] Bildſäule, *f.* [h] geſchnittener Stein. [i] verwenden. [j] für or auf.

44. But as strongly[a] he was attracted[b] by his alchymistic[c] laboratory[d], where gold was to be made.

45. Those who had to converse[a] with him on[b] weighty[c] public affairs, often were obliged to seek him there or in his stables, in which he used[d] to pass[e] many hours of the day.

46. Charles[a] the Fourth did not make[b] the people of Frankfort[c] atone for[d] their adherence[e] to[f] his noble anti-emperor[g] Günther von Schwarzburg.

47. Luther is a phenomenon[a] in history, to which no other of similar[b] kind[c] can be compared.[d]

48. The Athenians buried[a] Tellus, at[b] public expense[c], in[d] the same place where he had fallen, and showed[e] him great honour.

49. Practice[a] makes man accomplished[b] in[c] body[d] and mind.[e]

50. Many countries are rich in[a] provisions[b] which nature without assistance[c] of man freely[d] produces[e], in sound[f] and flavoury[g] fruit, in plants, roots[h], and in animals which always find their food[i] in plenty.[j]

51. He who in society makes greater claims[a] than he ought[b], is wanting in modesty[c]; and he who mixes[d] or steals[e] into a society to[f] which he does not belong[g], is intruding.[h]

---

44. [a] eben ſo ſehr. [b] anziehen. [c] alchymiſtiſch. [d] Werkſtätte, *f.*

45. [a] reden. [b] über. [c] wichtig. [d] pflegen. [e] zubringen.

46. [a] Karl. [b] laſſen. [c] Frankfurter. [d] entgelten. [e] Anhänglichkeit. [f] an. [g] Gegenkaiſer.

47. [a] Erſcheinung. [b] ähnlich. [c] Art, *f.* [d] *say*, placed by the side an die Seite ſetzen.

48. [a] begraben. [b] auf. [c] Koſten, only used in pl. [d] an. [e] erweiſen.

49. [a] Uebung. [b] vollkommen. [c] an. [d] Leib, *m.* [e] Seele, *f.*

50. [a] an. [b] Nahrungsmittel, *n.* [c] Zuthun, *n.* [d] freiwillig. [e] hervorbringen. [f] geſund. [g] wohlſchmeckend. [h] Wurzel, *f.* [i] Futter, *n.* [j] vollauf in plenty.

51. [a] Anſpruch. [b] ſollen. [c] wanting in modesty unbeſcheiden. [d] ſich miſchen. [e] ſchleichen. [f] in. [g] gehören. [h] zudringlich.

52. Do not meddle[a] with[b] the affairs[c] of other people.

53. History has preserved[a] us several notices[b] concerning[c] the introduction[d] of silk-weaving[e] into Italy during the Crusades.[f]

54. King Roger the Second of Sicily having, in 1148, conquered[a] Corinth, Thebes[b], and Athens[c], conducted the Greek artificers[d] to his residence[e] of Palermo, and had[f] instruction given[g] by them to his subjects[h] in the weaving of silk.

55. Human beings who got[a] among[b] animals, did not only lose speech itself, but also partially[c] the capacity[d] for it.[e]

56. Under the animating[a] sound[b] of song[c] brave warriors[d] have often rushed[e] into battle.[f]

57. To[a] the cherished plans[b] of Schiller also belonged a journey to the sea shore[c], that he had never seen, but after[d] which he always[e] had a great longing.[f]

58. Condors[a] are found throughout[b] the whole range[c] of the Cordilleras, along[d] the south-west[e] coast[f] of South America, from the Straits[g] of Magellan to[h] the Rio Negro.

59. Their habitations are almost invariably[a] on overhanging[b] ledges[c] of high and perpendicular[d] cliffs.[e]

---

52. [a] ſich miſchen. [b] in. [c] Angelegenheit.

53. [a] erhalten. [b] Nachricht. [c] über. [d] Einführung. [e] Seidenweberei. [f] Kreuzzug.

54. [a] erobern. [b] Theben. [c] Athen. [d] Künſtler. [e] Hauptſtadt, *f.* [f] laſſen. [g] Unterricht ertheilen. [h] Unterthan, *m.* (*pl.*—en).

55. [a] fallen or gerathen. [b] unter. [c] zum Theil. [d] Fähigkeit. [e] dazu.

56. [a] begeiſtern. [b] Ruf. [c] Geſang, *m.* [d] Streiter. [e] ſich ſtürzen. [f] der Kampf.

57. [a] unter. [b] Lieblingsplan, *m.* (*pl.*—pläne). [c] Meer, *n.* [d] zu. [e] von jeher. [f] Sehnſucht, *f.*

58. [a] Condor, *m.* (*pl.*—e). [b] auf. [c] Kette, *f.* [d] längs. [e] ſüdweſtlich. [f] Küſte, *f.* [g] Meerenge, *f.* [h] bis zu.

59. *say*, without exception Ausnahme. [b] überhangen. [c] Felſenrand, *m.* (*pl.*—ränder). [d] ſenkrecht. [e] Klippe, *f.*

60. The young ones cannot use their wings[a] for[b] flight[c] until[d] many months after[e] they are hatched[f], being covered[g], during that time, with only a blackish[h] down[i], like[j] that of a gosling.

61. Their food consists[a] of[b] the carcases[c] of deer[d], cattle[e], and other animals.

XIX. On Conjunctions.

1. I always had the fault of not being able[a] to keep silent[b] when[c] I saw an injustice.[d]

2. Solon did not[a] flatter[b] Croesus at all[a], but[c] told the truth.

3. Man is not a being[a] belonging[b] to this or that country, but one[c] belonging to the whole earth; and he is not a being merely comprehending[d] the earth, but one embracing[e] the whole universe.[f]

4. As often as[a] you feel yourself more powerful[b] in your perceptions[c] than in the faculty of expressing them, then boldly[d] believe that your mind is lazy[e], and will not produce all it possesses.

---

60. [a] Flügel, *m.* [b] zu. [c] das Fliegen. [d] bis. [e] nachdem. [f] ausbrüten. [g] bedecken. [h] ſchwärzlich. [i] Flaumfeder, *f.*, in pl. [j] gleich.

61. [a] beſtehen. [b] in. [c] Leichnam, *m.* (*pl.*—e). [d] Reh, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [e] Rind, *n.* (*pl.*—er), in plural.

1. [a] *say*, that it was impossible for me. [b] ſchweigen. [c] *when*, meaning *whenever*, is wenn. [d] Unrecht.

2. [a] keineswegs. [b] ſchmeicheln, Dat. [c] *but*, when denying a preceding negative expression, is ſondern.

3. [a] Weſen. [b] angehören, *say*, which belongs. [c] *say*, a being. [d] umfaſſen. [e] begreifen, and treat the Participles as Adjectives to being. [f] Weltall.

4. [a] ſo oft. [b] mächtig. [c] Empfindung. [d] kühn. [e] faul.

5. The prophets[a] existed[b] in a spiritual[c] atmosphere[d] as[e] their peculiar[f] element of life[g], to[h] which others raise[i] themselves only in hours of exaltation.[j]

6. The refined taste[a] of man has, at[b] all times, acknowledged[c] the rose to be[d] one of the most beautiful productions of nature.[e]

7. Sir Francis Bacon has finely[a] described[b] some advantages[c], or as[d] he calls[e] them, fruits of friendship.

8. The whole appearance[a] of Blücher had[b] the impress[c] of a hero[d], who could command[e] as well as[f] fight.

9. Men even[a] bear the hard yoke[b] of bondage[c] and slavery[d] before[e] they leave the paternal[f] soil.[g]

10. In the same way[a] as[b] they say that economy[c] is the greatest revenue[d] in reference to[e] our fortune[f], thus one can also say, that humility is the same[g] to[h] the tranquillity of our mind.[i]

11. Widely different as[a] were Arnold's juvenile compositions[b] in many points[c] from those of his after[d] life[e], yet[f] it is interesting[g] to observe in them the materials[h] for his future[i] great historical works.

---

5. [a] Prophet. [b] wandeln. [c] geiſtig. [d] Aether, *m.* [e] *as*, implying *identity* is als. [f] eigenthümlich. [g] Lebenselement, *n.* [h] zu. [i] erheben. [j] Weihe, *f.*

6. [a] Schönheitsſinn, *m.* [b] in. [c] anerkennen. [d] *say*, as. [e] Naturerzeugniß, *n.*

7. [a] ſinnig. [b] beſchreiben. [c] Vortheil, *m.* [d] *as*, implying *likeness*, is wie. [e] nennen.

8. [a] Anſehen. [b] *say*, bore. [c] Gepräge, *n.* [d] Kriegsheld (G.—en). [e] gebieten. [f] wie, and treat *who* (*could*) *command* and *fight* as Participles of *to command* and *fight*, and make them agree with *hero*.

9. [a] ſogar or eher. [b] Joch, *n.* [c] Leibeigenſchaft. [d] Knechtſchaft. [e] ehe. [f] väterlich. [g] Boden, *m.*

10. [a] eben ſo. [b] wie. [c] Sparſamkeit. [d] Einkommen. [e] in Abſicht. [f] Vermögen. [g] *say*, it. [h] für. [i] *say*, our mind-tranquillity.

11. [a] ſo verſchieden auch, and mark, this is a relative expression, as if it were said, *of whatever difference*, etc. [b] Jugendarbeit, *f.* [c] Hinſicht, sing. [d] vorgerückt. [e] Alter, *n.* [f] doch, this must stand after *Verb* and *Nominative*, which must lead. [g] unterhaltend. [h] Stoff, *m.*, sing. [i] ſpäter.

12. The example[a] of those who[b] are born deaf and dumb proves[c], in how small a degree[d] man can acquire[e] reasonable[f] notions[g], even[h] in the midst of[i] men, without the assistance of speech, and in what brutish[j] savageness[k] all his impulses[l] remain.[m]

13. These solemnities[a] seemed so much[b] more dignified[c], as[d] they lively[e] called back[f] the olden time, and what from thence[g] had yet come to[h] us.

14. The more[a] humility reminds[b] us who we are, and how much we still want[c], the more[d] she encourages[e] us to apply ourselves[f] to[g] our improvement.[h]

15. However much[a] the proud man is pleased[b] with[c] his arrogance[d], still[e] he hates it in others.

16. However necessary[a] it is that he who wishes impressively[b] to inculcate[c] a great truth should[d] ponder over[e] it[f], should well arrange[g] his materials[h], and treat[i] his subject[j] with all zeal[k] possible, still this is not yet[l] the real[m] method[n] by which[o] one can arrive[p] at[q] a vigorous[r] representation[s] of one's ideas.

17. The miser[a] can return[b] to[c] the golden middle-

---

12. [a] Beiſpeil, *n.* [b] *say*, of the deaf and dumb borp. [c] zeigen. [d] wie wenig. [e] gelangen zu. [f] vernünftig. [g] Begriff. [h] ſogar. [i] unter. [j] thieriſch. [k] Wildheit. [l] Trieb. [m] bleiben.

13. [a] Feierlichkeit. [b] um ſo, with comparative. [c] würdig. [d] als. [e] lebhaft. [f] vergegenwärtigen. [g] daher. [h] auf.

14. [a] je mehr *quanto magis*, therefore relative. [b] erinnern. [c] *say*, is wanting to us fehlen. [d] deſto mehr *eo magis*, therefore demonstrative. [e] ermuntern. [f] arbeiten. [g] an. [h] Verbeſſerung.

15. [a] ſo ſehr auch; *however* is ſo — auch; *much*, ſehr is inserted. [b] *say*, pleases himself. [c] in. [d] Hochmuth, *m.* [e] doch, cf. Note 11 [f].

16. [b] nöthig, cf. 15 [a]. [b] mächtig. [c] vortragen. [d] express by the Subjunctive Present of the Verbs following. [e] überdenken. [f] *say*, the same. [g] ordnen. [h] Stoff, *m*, sing. [i] behandeln. [j] Gegenſtand. [k] Wärme. [l] noch nicht. [m] eigentlich. [n] Weg, *m.* [o] worauf. [p] gelangen. [q] zu. [r] kräftig. [s] Darſtellung.

17. [a] Geizig. [b] zurückkehren. [c] auf.

way[d] as soon as[e] he likes; but for the spendthrift it becomes more and more[f] difficult, the farther[g] he recedes[h] from it.[i]

18. Many a rule[a] is the[b] oftener neglected[c] the[d] oftener one hears it repeated.

19. I am not the less[a] determined[b] to separate[c], because I clearly[d] know[e] what I separate from.[f]

20. On a Christmas eve[a] my mother crowned[b] all her favours[c] by[d] having[e] a puppet-show[f] exhibited[g] to us.

21. This transition[a] from a[b] domestic[c] education[d] to[e] the instruction[f] at a public school was connected with[g] some[h] unpleasantness[i], for[j] by[k] throwing[l] children hitherto[m] kept by themselves[n] carefully[o] at home, among[p] a rude mass of young urchins[q], they had, quite unexpectedly[r], to suffer everything from vulgarity[s], malice[t], nay baseness[u], because they lacked[v] every[w] weapon and every capacity[x] of defending themselves[y] against them.[z]

22. After[a] the Bible, the catechism[b], and books of edification[c] of every kind, the works of classical literature were multiplied[d] by printing[e], so that every man now was able to attain to[f] a higher cultivation of the mind.[g]

---

[d] Mittelſtraße, *f.* [e] ſobald. [f] immer mehr. [g] je weiter. [h] ſich entfernen. [i] davon.

18. [a] Regel, *f.* [b] deſto. [c] vernachläßigen. [d] je.

19. [a] *say*, on that account not less darum minder nicht. [b] entſchloſſen. [c] ſcheiden. [d] deutlich. [e] *say*, know it. [f] wovon.

20. [a] Weihnachtsabend. [b] die Krone aufſetzen. [c] Wohlthat. [d] indem. [e] laſſen. [f] Puppenſpiel, *n.* [g] vorſtellen.

21. [a] Uebergang. [b] *say*, the. [c] häuslich. [d] Erziehung. [e] zu. [f] Unterricht, *m.* [g] *say*, had. [h] manch. [i] take the neuter of the Adj. unangenehm. [j] denn. [k] indem. [l] hinunterſtoßen. [m] bisher. [n] abgeſondert. [o] ſorgfältig. [p] unter. [q] Geſchöpf, *n.* [r] unerwartet. [s] das Gemeine. [t] das Schlechte. [u] das Niederträchtige. [v] ermangeln, with Gen. [w] all. [x] Fähigkeit. [y] ſich ſchützen. [z] take an Adverb.

22. [a] nächſt. [b] Catechismus, *m.* [c] Erbauungsbuch. [d] vervielfältigen. [e] Druck, *m.* [f] theilhaftig werden, with Gen. [g] Geiſtesbildung.

23. Would not too[a] great a heat or cold hurt[b] or kill[c] us, if[d] the sensation[e] of pain did not, as it were[f], inform[g] us of it.[h]

24. Whence[a] could we know[b] if in the interior of us[c] a dangerous inflammation[d] was forming[e], unless[f] pain revealed[g] it to us?

25. He will not guess[a] it unless[b] he be more shrewd[c] than all other men.

26. Since[a] we must associate[b] with human beings, it is our duty[c] not to give them, knowingly[d], even the slightest[e] cause[f] of forming a bad opinion[g] concerning[h] us.

27. Humility elevates[a] us by[b] humbling[c] us, and pride humbles us by elevating us.

28. New enjoyments[a] with which the barbarian[b] gets acquainted[c], create[d] in him[e] new wants[f], which he can only satisfy[g] by[h] abandoning[i] his manner of living.[j]

29. The kindness[a] of the proud man towards[b] the humble[c] one is a sure proof[d] that humility must be something excellent[e], since[f] it is even sought after[g] by her own enemy; and that pride must be something unnatural[h], since its owner[i] can bear in others nothing less than his own self.[j]

---

23. [a] allzu. [b] ſchädlich werden. [c] tödtlich werden. [d] wenn or wofern. [e] Empfindung. [f] gleichſam. [g] benachrichtigen von. [h] take an Adverb.

24. [a] woher. [b] *say*, know it. [c] *say*, in our interior das Innere. [d] Entzündung. [e] entſtehen, take the Subjunctive. [f] wofern nicht, and place *pain* between them. [g] offenbaren.

25. [a] errathen. [b] *say*, he be then; and *be* express by the Subjunctive of *must*, with the Infinitive. [c] klug.

26. [a] the moral and logical reason can be expressed either by weil or da. [b] umgehen. [c] ſollen. [d] wiſſentlich. [e] entfernt. [f] Gelegenheit. [g] ſchlecht denken. [h] von.

27. [a] erhöhen. [b] *by* implying means, is indem. [c] erniedrigen.

28. [a] Genuß. [b] Barbar. [c] kennen lernen. [d] ſchaffen. [e] *say*, to him. [f] Bedürfniß, *n.* [g] befriedigen. [h] comp. 27 [b]. [i] aufgeben. Lebensweiſe, *f.*

29. [a] Liebe. [b] zu. [c] Demüthig. [d] Beweis. [e] Vortrefflich. [f] cf. 26 [a]. [g] ſuchen. [h] Unnatürlich. [i] Beſitzer. [j] *say* it, namely *pride*.

30. I once read a remark[a] which contains the reason[b] why[c] most men are proud and the fewest humble.

31. We are perfectly content with the feeling that we love humility in others, as[a] if we, in consequence of this[b], were possessed of[c] this virtue ourselves; and because we hate pride in others, we behave[d] as if we hated it also in us.

32. He was silent, although[a] he ought to have spoken.

33. The iron[a] must be struck[b] while[c] it is hot.[d]

34. Although[a] the art of printing books cannot render[b] literary productions[c] imperishable, still[d] the destruction[e] of a whole work is no more easily imaginable.[f]

35. Although our future is as gloomy[a] as the dark night, still our just cause is brightly shining.[b]

36. Although the old books are not at hand[a], still they are inscribed[b] in our hearts.

37. That this wholesome[a] invention has also had injurious[b], nay, terrible[c] consequences, whom could this escape[d], and who would conceal[e] it?

---

30. [a] Bemerkung. [b] Grund, *m.* [c] warum.

31. [a] als. [b] deßhalb. [c] to be possessed of beſitzen. [d] ſich gehaben.

32. [a] da doch, and the Nominative must be placed between them.

33. [a] Eiſen, *n.* [b] ſchmieden. [c] während, or weil, which latter is used only in proverbial and antiquated phrases. [d] glühend.

34. [a] *although* is either *a*) wenn gleich, *b*) wenn auch, *c*) wenn ſchon, *d*) wie wohl, or *e*) obwohl, *f*) obgleich, *g*) obſchon, *h*) obzwar, *i*) ob auch; and mark, those not compounded with wohl can be separated in the sentence by a Pronoun, or some other small phrase, on which a stress lies: it is to be observed, besides, that wenn and ob can be altogether omitted, but then the Verb must lead. [b] to render imperishable Unvergänglichkeit geben. [c] Schrift. [d] the chief sentence preceded by the adverbial sentence, must be headed by a Verb. [e] Untergang. [f] denkbar.

35. [a] düſter. [b] *to shine brightly* ſcheinen.

36. [a] zur Hand. [b] einſchreiben.

37. [a] heilſam. [b] verderblich. [c] ſchrecklich. [d] entgehen, Dat. [e] verſchweigen.

38. Where there are high[a] mountains, there large rivers are usually[b] found.

39. The flying[a] enemy often sets fire to[b] a city that[c] the pursuers[d] may be detained.[e]

40. Since[a] the Turks have conquered[b] Constantinople[c], civilisation[d] disappeared[e] more and more[f] in[g] the Orient.[h]

41. Since the art of printing has been invented, one can get[a] books for a much smaller sum[b] than formerly, when[c], in consequence[d] of the great trouble which copying[e] caused[f], books were excessively[g] dear.

42. When[a] one rope[b] is torn[c] another will be[d] ready.[e]

43. When[a] once the historian[b] arises[c] who understands philosophically to demonstrate[d] the influence[e] which the propagation[f] of some[g] plants have had on the fate[h] of nations and states; what place[i] will, in his work, the history of the sugar cane[j] obtain[k]?

XX. On Interpunctions.

1. The hare[a] is aware[b] that the dog pursues[c] him.

2. In order better to find the game[a], the huntsman takes the hound[b] with him.

---

38. [a] groß. [b] gewöhnlich.

39. [a] flüchtig. [b] anzünden. [c] damit. [d] Verfolger. [e] aufhalten.

40. [a] ſeitdem. [b] erobern. [c] Conſtantinopel. [d] Bildung. [e] verſchwinden. [f] immer mehr. [g] aus. [h] Morgenland, *n.*

41. [a] kommen zu. [b] *say*, much cheaper. [c] da or wo. [d] Folge, *f.* [e] abſchreiben. [f] koſten. [g] überaus.

42. [a] *when*, if referring to the future, is wenn; it can be omitted, but then the Verb must lead. [b] Strick, *m.* [c] reißen. [d] express this by the Present with ſchon. [e] in Bereitſchaft.

43. [a] omit *when*. [b] Geſchichtſchreiber. [c] aufſtehen. [d] entwickeln. [e] *say*, which influence. [f] Verbreitung. [g] einzeln. [h] Schickſal, *n.* [i] Raum, *m.* [j] Zuckerrohr, *n.* [k] einnehmen.

1. [a] Haſe, *m.* [b] wiſſen, and mark, at the end of every sentence a comma is put in German; therefore, a comma must stand before *that*, daß. [c] verfolgen.

2. [a] Wild, *n.* [b] Jagdhund, *m.*

3. Is that game[a] which is the largest also the most dangerous?

4. The skin[a] of the otter[b] which lives near[c] rivers is much esteemed.[d]

5. This is the boy who[a], when I asked[b] him the name of the street, was so unkind[c] as to refuse[d] telling it to me.

6. He has always recommended[a] us to be truthful[b]; however[c], I cannot say[d] that we always tried[e] to tell the whole[f] truth.

7. Incredulous[a] is he[b] who, in spite[c] of sufficient[d] reasons, still[e] does not believe; credulous[f] he who, without sufficient reasons, is inclined[g] to believe; superstitious[h] who believes things which can impossibly[i] be true.

8. To whom the world does not immediately reveal[a] in what a relation[b] it stands to him[c], who is not told by his own heart what he owes[d] to himself and others[e], he will

---

3. [a] every relative sentence is included by commas in German; so that they must be placed before *which*, and after *largest*.

4. [a] Fell, *n.* [b] Otter, *f.* [c] an. [d] ſchätzen.

5. [a] after *boy* must stand a comma, because *who* begins a relative sentence; as however *when* begins another inserted relative sentence, a comma must also stand after *who*. [b] fragen nach. [c] *unkind* finishes the relative sentence, headed by *who*, and must have a comma after it. [d] ſich weigern, after which, as a shortened sentence, a comma must follow.

6. [a] empfehlen, and put a comma after *us*. [b] die Wahrheit lieben, and mark, before adversative sentences, headed by aber, indeſſen, ſondern, a semicolon is put in German: after *however*, which is followed in English by a comma, none is put in German. [d] cf. 1 [b]. [e] ſich beſtreben. [f] völlig.

7. [a] ungläubig. [b] before *who* stands a comma; and mark, adverbial expressions, such as *in spite of sufficient reasons*, are *not* included in commas. [c] trotz. [d] hinreichend. [e] dennoch. [f] leichtgläubig. [g] geneigt. [h] abergläubig. [i] unmöglich, and mark, when co-ordinate sentences form a period, they are divided by a semicolon; therefore, one must stand here before *credulous*, and another before *superstitious*.

8. [a] offenbaren. [b] Verhältniß, *n.* [c] put a semicolon. [d] ſchuldig ſein. [e] here must stand a colon, which announces the beginning

hardly[f] learn it from[g] books[h], which, indeed[i], are only fit[j] for giving names to our errors.[k]

9. As our energies[a] are daily exhausted[b] by work[c] and bodily exercise[d]; besides[e], as food[f] alone is not sufficient[g] to replace[h] them, rest[i] must accomplish[j] what food leaves[k] half done.[l]

10. It is sweet to take revenge[a], but it is far[b] sweeter to pardon.[c]

11. I confess I should have liked to travel with them; however[a], business[b] precedes[c] pleasure.

12. In parting[a] he said, farewell[b], write often, and believe that I shall often and often think of[c] you.

13. The proverb[a] says[b], the apple does not fall far[c] from the tree.

14. The most important[a] domestic animals[b] are[c] the dog, the cat, the horse, the goat, etc.[d]

---

of the chief sentence in German. [f] ſchwerlich. [g] aus. [h] put a comma before *which*, but none before and after *indeed*. [i] eigentlich. [j] geſchickt. [k] Irrthum, *m.*

9. [a] Kraft, *f.* [b] erſchöpfen. [c] Arbeit, *f.* [d] Bewegung, and here must stand a semicolon. [e] überdieß. [f] Nahrung. [g] zureichen to be sufficient. [h] erſetzen, and after *then* must stand the colon, because *rest* begins the chief sentence. [i] Ruhe, *f.* [j] vollenden. [k] laſſen. unvollkommen.

10. [a] ſich rächen, and before *but* must the semicolon be placed. [b] bei weitem. [c] verzeihen.

11. [a] indeſſen, before which must stand the semicolon, but no comma must follow. [b] Geſchäft, *n.* (*pl.*—e), take the pl. [c] gehen vor.

12. [a] ſcheiden, introduced by indem. [b] lebewohl, before which must stand a colon, which is always used when the following words of another speaker are directly quoted. [c] an.

13. [a] Sprichwort, *n.* [b] cf. 12 [b]. [c] weit.

14. [a] wichtig. [b] Hausthier, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [c] here must stand a comma, which is put before things enumerated. [d] this means in German, und ſo weiter, or, abbreviated, u. ſ. w.

MATERIALS FOR TRANSLATING FROM ENGLISH INTO GERMAN.

PART II.

TRANSLATION OF CONNECTED PIECES.

I. The Desolation[1] of Tyranny.[2]

The Khaleefeh[3] Abd El-Melik, was, in the beginning[4] of his reign[5], an unjust monarch. Being one night[6] unable to sleep, he called for[7] a person[8] to tell[9] him a story for[10] his amusement. "O Prince of the faithful[11]," said the man thus bidden[12], "there was[13] an owl[14] in El-Mósil, and an owl in El-Basrah; and the owl of El-Mósil demanded in marriage[15], for her son, the daughter of the owl of El-Basrah; but the owl of El-Basrah said, 'I will not, unless[16]

---

[1] Verwüſtung. [2] Tyrannei. [3] Kalif. [4] Anfang, which must be masculine, because it is derived from a Verb, fangen, without addition to the root. [5] Regierung. [6] in imitation of eines Tages, eines Morgens, eines Abends, it is also said, eines Nachts, although Nacht is feminine. [7] rufen laſſen. [8] jemand. [9] *say*, who was to tell, and express *I am to* by ſollen. [10] zu. [11] gläubig. [12] *to bid* is heißen or befehlen, but both are construed with the Dative of the *person*; therefore, *a man is bidden* is einem Manne wird geheißen or befohlen; and *bidden* geheißen or befohlen can be an Adjective to a *thing*, but not to a *person*: you must then translate *the man to whom such* (ſolches) *was bidden*. [13] *there is* is es giebt, when implying *there is always existing*, but when meaning *is living*, it is es iſt. [14] Eule, *f.* [15] zur Ehe verlangen. [16] denn, which must be placed after *me*, and *give* must stand in the Subjunctive.

thou give me, as her dowry[17], a hundred desolate[18] farms.[19]' 'That I cannot do,' said the owl of El-Mósil, 'at present; but if our sovereign[20] (may God, whose name be exalted[21], preserve[22] him!) live[23] one year, I will give thee what thou desirest.[24]'" This simple fable sufficed[25] to rouse[26] the prince from his apathy[27], and he thenceforward[28] applied himself[29] to fulfil[30] the duties of his station.[31]—*Lane, notes to Arabian Nights.* (From C. Knight's Half Hours with the Best Authors.)

II. Perfection.[1]

A friend called on[2] Michael Angelo, who was finishing[3] a statue[4]: some[5] time afterwards[6] he called again[7]; the sculptor[8] was still at[9] his work. His friend, looking at[10] the figure[11], exclaimed[12], "You have been idle[13] since I saw[14] you last.[15]" "By no means[16]," replied the sculptor; "I have retouched[17] this part, and polished[18] that; I have softened[19] this feature[20], and brought out[21] this muscle[22];

---

[17] Mitgift, which is fem., because derived from a Verb geben, with the addition of t. [18] verwüſtet. [19] Pachthof, *m.*, the plural is Pachthöfe, because monosyllables masc. have in plural the termination e, and a modification of the vowel. [20] Fürſt, declined as an Adjective, *the first.* [21] verherrlichen. [22] erhalten. [23] take Indicative. [24] begehren. [25] hinreichen. [26] erwecken aus. [27] Gefühlloſigkeit. [28] von jetzt an. [29] ſich befleißen. [30] erfüllen. [31] Stellung.

[1] Vollkommenheit. [2] beſuchen, with Acc., or einen Beſuch abſtatten with the Dat. [3] die letzte Feile geben, with the Dat. [4] Bildſäule, *f.* [5] einig. [6] nachher, namely, in reference to the visit, but afterwards in reference to the *present time* is hernach; as jetzt wollen wir leſen, und hernach plaudern now we will read, and afterwards talk. [7] den Beſuch wiederholen. [8] Bildhauer. [9] bei or an. [10] to look at betrachten. [11] Figur, the gender of which can be ascertained from the Latin or French. [12] ausrufen. [13] müßig. [14] take the Perfect Tense. [15] zuletzt. [16] keineswegs. [17] mit dem Meißel wieder berühren. [18] glätten. [19] mildern. [20] Zug. [21] hervorheben. [22] Muskel, *m.*

I have given more expression to this lip, and more energy[23] to this limb.[24]" "Well, well," said his friend, "but all these[25] are trifles.[26]" "It may be so," replied Angelo, "but recollect[27] that trifles make[28] perfection, and that perfection is no trifle."—*Colton Lacon.* (From the Half Hours.)

III. Vicar of Wakefield.

Johnson had now become one[1] of[2] Goldsmith's best friends and advisers.[3] He knew all the[4] weak points[5] of his character[6], but he knew also his merits[7]; and while[8] he would[9] rebuke[10] him like a child, and rail[11] at[12] his errors[13] and follies[14], he would[15] suffer[16] no one else to undervalue[17] him. Goldsmith knew the soundness[18] of his judgment[19] and his practical[20] benevolence[21], and often sought his counsel and aid[22] amid[23] the difficulties[24] into which his heedlessness[25] was continually[26] plunging[27] him. "I received one morning," says Johnson, "a message[28] from poor[29] Goldsmith, that he was[30] in great distress[31], and,

---

[23] Kraftfülle, which is fem., because formed from an Adjective with the addition of *e*, and implying the abstract quality of the Adjective. [24] Glied, *n.* [25] take the sing. neuter, because this subject refers only in general to the fore-mentioned things; however, the Verb *are* must stand in the plural. [26] Kleinigkeit. [27] bedenken. [28] ausmachen.

[1] Mark, *one* is here used Substantively, and not as an Adjective. [2] *of* after number is von. [3] Rathgeber. [4] *the* after *all* is not translated. [5] Seite, *f.* [6] Character, *m.* [7] Vorzug. [8] während. [9] *would* meaning as much as *was accustomed* is expressed by pflegen. [10] ausſchelten. [11] ſchmähen. [12] über. [13] Fehler, *m.* [14] Thorheit. [15] *would*, when adequate to *wished*, is rendered by wollen. [16] geſtatten, with Dat. [17] gering denken von. [18] Tüchtigkeit. [19] Urtheil, *m.* [20] thätig. [21] Wohlwollen, which is neuter, because the second compound wollen, as an Infinitive, is neuter. [22] Beiſtand. [23] in. [24] Schwierigkeit. [25] Unbeſonnenheit. [26] ſtets. [27] gerathen laſſen. [28] Mittheilung. [29] before *poor* the Definite Article must be placed in German, and combined with the Preposition *from* in one word. [30] Subjunctive Present. [31] Noth, *f.*

as[32] it was[33] not in his power to come to me, begging[34] that I would[35] come to him as soon as possible. I sent him a guinea, and promised to come to him directly. I accordingly[36] went as soon as I was dressed[37], and found that his landlady[38] had arrested[39] him for[40] his rent[41], at which[42] he was in a violent[43] passion.[44] I perceived that he had already changed[45] my guinea, and had a bottle of Madeira[46] and a glass before him.[47] I put[48] the cork[49] into the bottle, desired he would be calm[50], and began to talk to[51] him of[52] the means[53] by which he might[54] be extricated.[55] He then told me he had a novel[56] ready[57] for the press[58], which he produced[59] to me. I looked into it[60], and saw its merit[61], told the landlady I should soon return[62], and having gone to a bookseller, sold it for sixty pounds. I brought Goldsmith the money, and he discharged[63] his rent, not without rating[64] his landlady in a high[65] tone[66] for having used[67] him so ill." The novel in question[68] was the "Vicar[69] of Wakefield;" the bookseller to whom Johnson sold it was Francis Newbery, nephew to[70] John Strange. As it may seem, this captivating[71] work, which has obtained[72] and preserved[73] an almost unrivalled[74] popularity[75] in various[76] languages, was so little appreciated[77] by the bookseller, that he kept it by him[78] for nearly two years!—*Washington Irving's Life of Goldsmith.*

---

[32] da. [33] es ſteht in meiner Macht it is in my power. [34] *say*, he begged. [35] mögen. [36] demgemäß. [37] ankleiden. [38] Wirthin. [39] mit Arreſt belegen. [40] wegen. [41] Miethe, *f.* [42] *say*, whereat at über. [43] heftig. [44] Zorn, *m.* [45] wechſeln. [46] Madera. [47] reflective, because it refers to the same person. [48] ſtecken. [49] Pfropfen, *m.* [50] ſich beruhigen. [51] mit. [52] über. [53] Mittel, *n.* [54] können. [55] herausheljen, Dat. [56] Roman, *m.* [57] bereit. [58] Druck, *m.* [59] vorlegen. [60] hineinblicken. [61] Werth, *m.* [62] zurück kommen. [63] bezahlen. [64] einen Verweis geben. [65] ſcharf. [66] Ton, *m.* [67] behandeln. [68] in Rede ſtehend. [69] Landprediger. [70] *say*, of. [71] anziehend. [72] ſich erwerben. [73] ſich erhalten. [74] unvergleichlich. [75] Gunſt, derived from gönnen to favour. [76] verſchieden. [77] würdigen. [78] reflective.

IV. A Tale[1] of Terror.[2]

I was once travelling in Calabria[3], a land of wicked[4] people, who, I[5] believe, hate every one, and particularly the French. The reason[6] why[7] would take[8] long[9] to tell[10] you, suffice[11] it to say, that they mortally[12] hate us, so that one gets on[13] very badly[14] when one falls into their hands. I had for[15] a companion[16] a young man, with a face, my faith[17], like[18] the gentleman that we saw at[19] Rincy; you remember[20]? and better still perhaps. I don't say so[21] to interest[22] you, but because it is a fact.[23] In these mountains the roads are precipices[24]; our horses got on[25] with much difficulty; my companion went first[26]; a path[27] which appeared to him shorter and more practicable[28] led[29] us astray.[30] It was my fault. Ought I to have trusted[31] to a head[32] only twenty years old? Whilst[33] daylight[34] lasted[35], we tried to find our way through the wood, but the more[36] we tried, the more[37] bewildered[38] we became; and it was pitch dark[39] when[40] we arrived at[41] a very black-looking[42] house. We entered[43], not without fear, but what could we do?

We found a whole family of colliers[44] at[45] table[46]; they

---

[1] Geſchichte, from geſchehen, with the termination te. [2] *say*, terrible ſchrecklich. [3] Calabrien, *n.* [4] böſe. [5] *say*, as I believe. [6] Grund, *m.* [7] weßhalb. [8] erfordern. [9] *say*, much time. [10] erklären, and construe thus *it would require much time to tell you the reason why.* [11] genügen. [12] tödtlich. [13] fahren. [14] ſchlimm. [15] zu, with the Definite Article. [16] Gefährte, the feminine of which is Gefährtin. [17] meiner Treu. [18] gleich, with Dat. [19] bei. [20] ſich erinnern, and *say*, remember you. [21] *say*, it. [22] *say*, to excite your interest; erregen to excite; Theilnahme interest. [23] Thatſache, *f.* [24] Abgrund. [25] von der Stelle kommen. [26] zuerſt. [27] Pfad, *m.* [28] gangbar. [29] führen. [30] irre. [31] trauen, and construe *had I ought to trust.* [32] Kopf, *m.* [33] ſo lang. [34] Tageslicht, *n.* [35] währen. [36] quanto magis je mehr. [37] tanto magis um ſo mehr or deſto mehr. [38] verwirrt. [39] ſtock finſter. [40] als. [41] bei. [42] ausſehen. [43] eintreten. [44] Köhler. [45] bei. [46] Tiſch, *m.*

immediately[47] invited[48] us to join[49] them; my young man did not wait[50] to be pressed[51]: there we were eating and drinking; he at least, for I was examining[52] the place[53] and the appearance[54] of our hosts.[55] Our hosts had quite the look[56] of colliers, but the house you would have taken[57] for an arsenal[58]; there was nothing but guns[59], pistols, swords[60], knives, and cutlasses.[61] Everything displeased[62] me, and I saw very well that I displeased them. My companion, on[63] the contrary[64], was quite one of the family; he laughed and talked with them, and with an imprudence[65] that I ought to have forseen[66] (but to[67] what purpose[68], if it was decreed[69]), he told at once[70] where[71] we came from, where[72] we were going, and that we were Frenchmen. Just[73] imagine[74]! Amongst our most mortal enemies, alone, out of[75] our road, so far[76] from all human succour[77]! and then, to omit[78] nothing that might ruin[79] us, he played the rich man, promised to give the next[80] morning, as a[81] remuneration[82] to these people, and to our guides[83], whatever[84] they wished.

Then he spoke of his portmanteau[85], begging them to take care of[86] it, and put it at the head[87] of his bed: he did not wish, he said[88], for[89] any other pillow.[90] Oh[91], youth[92],

---

[47] ſogleich. [48] einladen. [49] ſich ſetzen zu. [50] warten. [51] *say*, to allow himself to be long pressed ſich lange nöthigen laſſen. [52] ſich (Dat.) genau betrachten. [53] Ort, *m.* [54] Benehmen. [55] host Wirth, *m.*, *pl.* Wirthsleute. [56] Anſehen. [57] halten. [58] Zeughaus, *n.* [59] Flinte, *f.* [60] Schwert, *n.* [61] Hirſchfänger, lit. stag-catchers. [62] mißfallen, with Dat. [63] in, to be contracted with the following Article. [64] Gegentheil, *n.* [65] Unbedachtſamkeit. [66] vorherſehen. [67] zu. [68] Zweck, *m.* [69] verhängen. [70] auf einmal. [71] where from woher. [72] where, understand *to*, wohin. [73] nur, and place it after the Imperative. [74] ſich denken. [75] von—ab, lit. *from our road off*. [76] weit or fern. [77] Hülfe, from helfen. [78] unterlaſſen. [79] zu Grunde richten. [80] folgend. [81] not translated. [82] Belohnung. [83] Führer. [84] *say*, what they ever was nur. [85] Mantelſack, *m.* [86] in Acht nehmen. [87] Kopfende, *n.* [88] such small inserted sentences are inverted. [89] not to wish for any kein—wünſchen. [90] Kiſſen, *n.* [91] ach. [92] junger Menſch.

youth! you are to be pitied[93]! Cousin[94], one would have thought we carried[95] the crown diamonds.[96] What caused[97] him so much solicitude[98] about[99] this portmanteau, was[100] his mistress's[101] letters. Supper[102] over[103], they left[104] us. Our host slept below[105], we in the upper room[106] where we had supped.[107] A loft[108] raised[109] some[110] seven or eight feet, which was reached[111] by[112] a ladder[113], was the resting-place[114] that awaited[115] us; a sort[116] of nest, into which we were to introduce[117] ourselves by creeping[118] under joists[119] loaded[120] with provisions[121] for the year. My companion climbed up[122] alone, and, already nearly asleep[123], laid himself down with his head upon the precious[124] portmanteau. Having determined[125] to sit up[126], I made a good fire and seated myself by[127] the side of it. The night, which had been undisturbed[128], being nearly over[129], I began to reassure[130] myself, when[131], about[132] the time that[133] I thought the break of day[134] could not be far off[135], I heard our host and his wife talking and disputing[136] below; and putting[137] my ear to the chimney[138] which communicated[139] with the one in the lower room, I

---

[93] bedauern. [94] Baſe or Couſine. [95] Subjunctive Imperfect. [96] Kron-diamanten. [97] machen. [98] Sorge, *f.* [99] wegen. [100] in German the plural must stand here, since the *subject* is only generally expressed, and the chief saying is contained in the *predicate.* [101] Geliebte. [102] Abendeſſen. [103] vorüber, and say, *when the supper was over.* [104] verlaſſen, [105] unten. [106] Oberzimmer, *n.* [107] zu Abend eſſen. [108] Boden, *m.* [109] erhöhen. [110] etwa. [111] *say*, to which one came; to come gelangen. [112] mittelſt. [113] Leiter, *f.* [114] Ruheplatz, *m.* [115] erwarten. [116] Art, *f.* [117] ſich einlaſſen. [118] kriechen, and express the Part. by an adverbial sentence led by indem with the Subj. Imperf. [119] Querbalken, *m* [120] beladen. [121] Lebensmittel, *n.* [122] hinaufklettern. [123] eingeſchlafen. [124] koſtbar. [125] beſchließen. [126] aufbleiben, [127] *say*, near it, or thereat; at an. [128] ungeſtört. [129] *say*, passed vergehen, and express the Participle by an adverbial sentence, led by da. [130] beruhigen. [131] als, after which, the Nominative, when it is a Personal Pronoun, must immediately follow. [132] gegen. [133] da. [134] Tagesanbruch. [135] weit entfernt. [136] ſtreiten. [137] legen. [138] Kamin, *n.* [139] im Zuſammenhang ſtehen.

perfectly distinguished[140] these words spoken[141] by the husband: "Well, let us see, must they both be killed?[142]" To which[143] the wife replied, "Yes;" and I heard no more. How shall I go on?[144] I stood[145] scarcely breathing[146], my body cold as marble[147]; to have[148] seen me, you could hardly[149] have known[150] if[151] I were alive[152] or dead. Good heavens! when I think of it[153] now!—We two almost without weapons[154], against twelve or fifteen who had so many! and my companion dead[155] with[156] sleep and fatigue[157]! to call[158] him, or make a noise[159], I dared[160] not: to escape[161] alone was impossible; the window was not high, but below were two large dogs howling[162] like wolves. In what an agony[163] I was, imagine[164] if you can. At[165] the end of a long quarter of an hour[166] I heard some one on the stairs, and through the crack[167] of the door, I saw the father, his lamp[168] in one hand, and in the other, one of his large knives. He came up, his wife after him, I was behind the door; he opened it, but before[169] he came in, he put down[170] the lamp which his wife took.[171] He then entered barefoot[172], and from outside[173] the woman said to him in a low[174] voice, shading[175] the light of the lamp with her hand, "Softly[176], go softly." When he got[177] to the ladder, he mounted[178] it, his knife between his[179] teeth[180], and getting up[181] as high as[182] the bed—the poor young

---

[140] vernehmen. [141] construe the Part. as an Adj. to *words*. [142] abſchlachten. [143] *say*, whereon; on auf. [144] fortfahren. [145] daſtehen. [146] athmen. [147] Marmor, *m.* [148] *say*, had you. [149] ſchwerlich. [150] wiſſen. [151] ob. [152] am Leben, or lebendig. [153] *say*, thereof; of an. [154] Waffe, *f.* [155] *say*, half dead. [156] vor. [157] Müdigkeit. [158] rufen. [159] Lärm, *m.* [160] wagen. [161] entfliehen. [162] heulen, and say, *which howled*. [163] Seelenangſt, *f.* [164] ſich vorſtellen. [165] an. [166] Viertelſtunde, *f.* [167] Spalte, *f.* [168] *say*, the lamp. [169] ehe. [170] nieder ſetzen. [171] aufnehmen. [172] barfuß. [173] von draußen. [174] *say*, with low leiſe. [175] ſchützen. [176] ſachte. [177] gelangen an. [178] hinaufſteigen. [179] *say*, the. [180] Zahn, *m.* [181] ſteigen, led by indem. [182] *say*, up to the bed bis zu.

man lying[183] with his throat[184] bare[185], with one hand he took his knife, and with the other,—Oh cousin!—he seized[186] a ham[187] which hung[188] from the ceiling[189], cut a slice[190] from it[191], and retired[192] as he had come. The door was closed[193] again, the lamp disappeared[194], and I was left alone with my reflections.[195] As soon as day[196] appeared, all the family making[197] a great noise came to awaken[198] us as we had requested.[199] They brought us something to eat, and gave us a very clean[200], and a very good breakfast[201], I assure[202] you. Two capons[203] formed[204] part[205] of it[206], of which we must, said our hostess, take away[207] one and eat the other. When I saw them I understood the meaning of those terrible words, "must they both be killed?" and I think[208], cousin, you have enough penetration[209] to guess[210] now what they signified.[211] Oblige[212] me cousin, do not tell this story. In the first place[213], as you see, I do not play a good part[214] in it; next[215], you would spoil[216] it. Stay[217], I do not flatter[218] you, but your face[219] would destroy[220] the effect of my tale.[221] Without boasting[222], I have just[223] the countenance[224] to relate a fearful[225] story: but as for you[226], if you wish to tell a story, choose[227] a subject[228] that suits[229] your face—Psyche for example.[230]—(From the Half Hours.)

---

[183] *say*, whilst the poor, etc. [184] Hals, *m.* [185] entblößt. [186] ergreifen. [187] Schinken, *m.* [188] herabhangen. [189] Decke, *f.* [190] Scheibe, *f.* [191] *say*, thereof. [192] ſich zurückziehen. [193] ſchließen, reflect. [194] verſchwinden. [195] Gedanke, *m.* [196] *say*, the day. [197] *say*, with. [198] wecken. [199] verlangen. [200] reinlich. [201] Frühſtück, *n.* [202] verſichern, *say*, this I assure to you. [203] Kapaun, *m.* [204] bilden. [205] *say*, a part. [206] *say*, thereof. [207] mitnehmen. [208] glauben. [209] Scharfſinn. [210] errathen. [211] bedeuten. [212] verpflichten. [213] erſtens. [214] Rolle, *f.* [215] zweitens. [216] verderben. [217] halten. [218] ſchmeicheln, with Dative. [219] Antlitz, *n.* [220] zu Nichte machen. [21] Erzählung. [222] prahlen. [223] gerade. [224] Geſicht, *n.* [225] furchtbar. [226] *say*, what concerns you; to concern betreffen. [227] ſich wählen. [228] Gegenſtand. [229] paſſen zu. [230] zum Beiſpiel.

V. Desire of Knowledge.[1]

Dr. Johnson and I (Boswell) took a sculler[2] at[3] the Temple stairs[4], and set out for[5] Greenwich. I asked him if he really[6] thought[7] a knowledge[8] of the Greek[9] and Latin[10] languages[11] an essential[12] requisite[13] to a[14] good education.[15] Johnson: "Most certainly[16] sir[17], for those who know them have a great advantage[18] over[19] those who do[20] not. Nay[21] sir, it is wonderful what a difference[22] learning[23] makes upon[24] people, even in the common[25] intercourse[26] of life, which does not appear to be much connected[27] with it." "And yet," said I, "people go[28] through the world very well, and carry on[29] the business[30] of life to[31] good advantage[32], without learning." Johnson: "Why[33] sir, that may be true in cases where learning cannot possibly[34] be of any use[35]; for instance[36], this boy rows[37] us as[38] well without learning as if he could sing the song[39] of Orpheus to the Argonauts[40], who were the first sailors." He then called to[41] the boy, "What would you give my lad[42] to know about[43] the Argonauts?" "Sir," said the boy, "I would give what I have." Johnson was much pleased[44] with[45] his answer, and we gave him a double fare.[46] Dr. Johnson then turning[47] to me, "Sir," said he,

---

[1] Wißbegierde, *f.* [2] Boot, *n.* [3] bei. [4] die Tempel-Stufen. [5] fahren nach. [6] wirklich. [7] halten, with für before the predicate. [8] Kenntniß. [9] griechiſch. [10] lateiniſch. [11] take the sing. [12] weſentlich. [13] Erforderniß, *n.* [14] take the Gen. [15] Erziehung. [16] ganz gewiß. [17] mein Herr, which is, however, rarely used, and generally by inferiors, like the *boy* below, to superiors like Johnson. [18] Vortheil, *m.* [19] vor. [20] *say*, know them not. [21] ja. [22] Unterſchied. [23] Gelehrſamkeit. [24] bei. [25] gewöhnlich. [26] Verhandlung, take pl. [27] verbinden. [28] ihren Weg machen. [29] betreiben. [30] Geſchäft, *n.*, take pl. [31] mit. [32] *say*, success Erfolg. [33] freilich. [34] möglicher Weiſe. [35] Nutzen, *m.* [36] zum Beiſpiel. [37] rudern. [38] eben ſo. [39] Geſang, *m.* [40] Argonaut. [41] anreden. [42] Junge. [43] von. [44] erfreut. [45] über. [46] Fährgeld, *n.* [47] ſich wenden.

"a desire[48] of knowledge[49] is the natural feeling of mankind[50]; and every human being, whose mind[51] is not debauched[52], will be willing to[53] give all that he has to get[54] knowledge.[55]"—*Boswell, Life of Johnson.* (From the Half Hours.)

VI. The Sack[1] of Magdeburg.

Going[2] out of church immediately after the sermon[3], some people of[4] St. James's[5] parish[6] passed by[7], and told me the enemy had entered the town. With difficulty[8] could I persuade[9] myself that this was anything more than a false[10] alarm[11]; but the news[12] unfortunately[13] proved[14] too true. I then lost my presence of mind[15], and as my wife and maid-servant[16] were with[17] me, we ran directly[18] to my colleague[19], M. Malsio's house, and left our own house open. At M. Malsio's we found many people, who had fled[20] to him in great perplexity.[21] We comforted[22] and exhorted[23] each other as far as the terror[24] of our minds[25] would give us leave.[26] I was summoned thence[27] to discharge[28] the last duties to[29] a colonel[30], who lay dangerously wounded. I resolved[31] to go, and sent my maid to fetch my gown[32]; but before my departure[33] from

---

[48] Begierde, *f.* [49] *say*, of knowing zum Wiſſen. [50] Menſchheit. [51] Geiſt, *m.* [52] verderben. [53] *say*, will willingly give; willingly gern. [54] ſich erwerben. [55] Kenntniß, take the plural.

[1] Zerſtörung. [2] treten, and begin the adverbial sentence with als. [3] Predigt, from predigen, with the termination t; add the Definite Article. [4] von. [5] der heilige Jacobus. [6] Kirchſpiel, *n.* [7] vorbeikommen. [8] mit Mühe. [9] überreden. [10] falſch. [11] Gerücht, *n.* [12] Nachricht, *f.* [13] unglücklicher Weiſe. [14] ſich erweiſen als. [15] Geiſtesgegenwart, *f.* [16] Dienſtmagd, before which the Pronoun must be repeated, since the Substantives refer to persons of different stations. [17] bei. [18] ſogleich. [19] Amtsgenoſſe. [20] ſich flüchten. [21] Beſturzung. [22] tröſten. [23] ermuntern. [24] Schreck. [25] Gemüth, *n.* (*pl.*—er). [26] verſtatten to give leave. [27] wegrufen. [28] erfüllen. [29] bei. [30] Oberſt, declined as an Adjective, *the uppermost.* [31] ſich entſchließen. [32] Prieſterrock, *m.* [33] *say*, before I departed ſcheiden.

my wife and neighbours, I told them that the affair[34] appeared to me concluded[35], and that we should meet[36] no more in this world. My wife reproached[37] me in a flood of tears, crying[38], " Can you prevail on yourself[39] to leave[40] me to perish all[41] alone? You must answer for[42] it before God!" I represented[43] to her the obligation[44] of my functions[45], and the importance[46] of the moments[47] I was called upon[48] to give[49] my assistance in. As I crossed[50] the great street a multitude of matrons[51] and young women flocked[52] about me, and besought[53] me, in all the agonies[54] of distress[55], to advise[56] them what to do.[57] I told them, my best advice was, to recommend[58] themselves to God's protecting[59] grace[60], and prepare[61] for death.[62] At length[63] I entered[64] the colonel's lodgings[65], and found him stretched[66] on the floor[67], and very weak. I gave him such consolation[68] as[69] the disorder[70] of my mind would permit me: he heard me with great attention[71], and ordered[72] a small present of gold[73] to be given me, which I left on the table. In this interval[74], the enemy poured in[75] by crowds[76] at[77] the Hamburg gate[78], and fired[79] on the multitude as upon beasts of prey.[80] Suddenly my wife and maid-servant entered the room, and per-

---

[34] Sache, *f.* [35] enden. [36] ſich treffen. [37] Vorwürfe machen. [38] *say*, whilst she cried; indem whilst, ausrufen to cry. [39] to prevail on one's self es über ſich bringen. [40] to leave to perish umkommen laſſen. [41] ganz. [42] verantworten. [43] vorſtellen. [44] Verpflichtung. [45] Amt, *n.* [46] Wichtigkeit. [47] Augenblick. [48] berufen; and before *I was called upon* is to be expressed *in which.* [49] Hülfe leiſten. [50] *say* went over gehen über=. [51] alte Dame. [52] ſich drängen. [53] bitten. [54] Angſt, *f.* [55] Noth, *f.* [56] rathen, with Dat. [57] *say*, what they ought to do. [58] empfehlen. [59] ſchützen. [60] Gnade, *f.* [61] ſich vorbereiten. [62] *say*, for the death; for zu. [63] endlich. [64] eintreten in. [65] Wohnung. [66] hinſtrecken. [67] Boden, *m.* [68] Troſt, *m.* [69] *as* is qualem, the Acc. of wie er. [70] Verſtörung. [71] Aufmerkſamkeit. [72] heißen, which requires the Infinitive Active. [73] Goldgeſchenk, *n.* [74] *say*, meanwhile unterdeſſen. [75] hereinſtrömen. [76] haufenweiſe. [77] zu. [78] Thor, *n.* [79] feuern or ſchießen. [80] Raubthier, *n.* (*pl.*—e).

suaded me to remove[81] immediately, alleging[82] we should[83] meet with no quarter if the enemy found us in an apartment[84] filled with arms. We ran down into the courtyard[85] of the house, and placed[86] ourselves in the gateway.[87] Our enemies soon burst[88] the gate open with an eagerness[89] that cannot be described. The first address[90] they made[91] to[92] me was, "Priest[93], deliver[94] thy money." I gave them about four and twenty shillings in a little box[95], which they accepted[96] with good will[97]; but when they opened the box, and found only silver, they raised[98] their tone[99], and demanded[100] gold. I represented to them that I was at[101] some distance[102] from my house, and could not at present possibly give them more. They were reasonable[103] enough to be contented[104] with[105] my answer, and left us, after having plundered the house, without offering[106] us any insult.[107] There was a well-looking[108] youth among[109] the crowd[110], to[111] whom my wife addressed[112] herself, and besought him, in God's name, to protect[113] us: "My dear[114] child," said he, "it is a thing[115] impossible; we must pursue[116] our enemies;" and so they retired.[117] In that moment another party[118] of soldiers rushed in[119], who demanded[120] also our money. We contented them with seven shillings and a couple of[121] of silver spoons[122], which

---

[81] ſich hinwegbegeben. [82] vorgeben. [83] *say*, no quarter would be granted to us; Schonung quarter; zu Theil werden to be granted. [84] Gemach, *n.* [85] Hof, *m.* [86] ſtellen. [87] Thorweg, *m.* [88] brechen. [89] Heftigkeit. [90] Wort, *n.*; take the plural. [91] richten. [92] an. [93] Prieſter. [94] hergeben, of which two compounds, in such abrupt address, the verbal part can be omitted. [95] Doſe, *f.* [96] annehmen. [97] gutwillig. [98] erheben. [99] Stimme, *f.* [100] fordern. [101] in. [102] Entfernung. [103] vernünftig. [104] ſich befriedigen laſſen. [105] durch. [106] zufügen. [107] Beleidigung. [108] wohlgeſtaltet. [109] in. [110] Gedränge, *n.* [111] an. [112] ſich wenden. [113] beſchützen. [114] lieb. [115] Sache. [116] verfolgen. [117] ſich zurückziehen. [118] Abtheilung. [119] hereinſtürzen. [120] verlangen. [121] ein paar, which is not declined when meaning *a few*, but when meaning *two, a pair*, it is declined. [122] Löffel, *m.*

the maid had fortunately concealed[123] in her pocket. They were scarce gone before[124] a soldier entered alone, with a most furious[125] countenance I ever saw; each cheek[126] was puffed out[127] with a musket-ball[128], and he carried two muskets[129] on his shoulder.[130] The moment he perceived[131] me, he cried with a voice of thunder[132], "Priest, give me thy money, or thou art dead." As I had nothing to give him, I made[133] my apology[134] in[135] the most affecting[136] manner.[137] He levelled[138] a piece[139] to shoot[140] me, but my wife luckily[141] turned it with her hand, and the ball passed[14] over my head. At length, finding we had no money, he asked for[143] plate[144]: my wife gave him some silver trinkets[145], and he went his way. A little after[146] came four or five soldiers, who only said, "Wicked[147] priest, what doest thou here?" Having said this much[148] they departed.[149]

We were now inclined[150] to shelter ourselves[151] in the uppermost[152] lodging of the house, hoping there to be less exposed[153] and better concealed.[154] We entered a chamber[155] that had[156] several[157] beds in it, and passed[158] some time there in the most unsupportable[159] agonies.[160] Nothing was heard in the streets but[161] the cries[162] of the expiring[163] people; nor[164] were the houses much more quiet: everything was burst open or cut to[165] pieces.[166] We were soon

---

[123] verſtecken. [124] als. [125] wüthend. [126] Backe, *f.* [127] aufblaſen. [128] Flintenkugel, *f.* [129] Büchſe, *f.* [130] Schulter, *f.* [131] bemerken. [132] Donnerſtimme, *f.* [133] vorbringen. [134] Entſchuldigung. [135] auf. [136] rührend. [137] Weiſe, *f.* [138] anlegen. [139] Flinte, *f.* [140] ſchießen auf. [141] zum Glücke. [142] gehen. [143] fordern. [144] Silbergeſchirr, *n.* [145] Zierrath, *m.* (*pl.* —en). [146] *say*, a short time after that kurze Zeit nachher. [147] ſchändlich. [148] *say*, only this. [149] davongehen. [150] geneigt. [151] ſeine Zuflucht nehmen. [152] höchſt. [153] ausſetzen. [154] verborgen. [155] Stube, *f.* [156] *say*, contained enthalten. [157] mehrere. [158] zubringen. [159] unerträglich. [160] Seelenangſt, *f.*, take the singular. [161] als. [162] Geſchrei, *n.*, which has no plural. [163] ſterben. [164] auch—nicht. [165] in. [166] Stück, *n.*, (*pl.*—e).

discovered[167] in our retirement.[168] A number of soldiers poured in[169]; and one, who carried a hatchet[170], made an attempt[171] to cleave[172] my skull[173], but a companion[174] hindered[175] him, and said, "Comrade, what are you doing, don't you perceive that he is a clergyman[176]?" When these were gone, a single soldier came in; to whom my wife gave a crape handkerchief[177] off[178] her neck[179]; upon which he retired without offering[180] us any injury.[181] His successor[182] was not so reasonable, for, entering the chamber with his sword drawn[183], he immediately discharged[184] a blow[185] upon[186] my head, saying, "Priest, give me thy money." The stroke[187] stunned[188] me. The blood gushed[189] out in abundance[190], and frightened[191] my wife and servant to[192] that degree[193] that they both continued[194] motionless.[195] The barbarian[196] turned round[197] to my wife, and aimed[198] a blow at[199] her, but it glanced[200], fortunately, on[201] her gown,[202] which happened[203] to be lined[204] with furs[205], and wounded her not. Amazed[206] to see us so submissive[207] and patient[208], he looked at[209] us fixedly[210] for some moments. I laid hold of[211] this interval[212] to represent to him that I was not in my own house, being come to the place where I was to discharge my duty to a dying person; but if he would grant[213] us quarter[214], and protect us to our home, I would then bestow upon[215] him all I had.

---

[167] entdecken. [168] Verſteck, *m.* [169] hereinſtrömen. [170] Beil, *n.* [171] Verſuch, *m.* [172] ſpalten. [173] Schädel, *m.* [174] Gefährte. [175] daran hindern. [176] Geiſtlich, an Adjective used as a Substantive. [177] Flortuch, *n.* [178] von. [179] Hals, *m.* [180] anthun. [181] Leid, *n.* [182] Nachfolger. [183] ziehen, and put the Partic. as Adjective before *sword*. [184] verſetzen. [185] Schlag. [186] nach. [187] Streich. [188] betäuben. [189] ſtrömen. [190] Fülle. [191] erſchrecken. [192] in. [193] Grad, *m.* [194] ſtehen bleiben. [195] bewegungslos. [196] Barbar. [197] ſich herum drehen. [198] thun. [199] nach. [200] abſtreifen. [201] an. [202] Gewand, *n.* [203] *say*, by chance was lined; by chance zufällig. [204] to line füttern. [205] Pelz, *m.*, take sing. [206] erſtaunen. [207] unterwürfig. [208] geduldig. [209] anſehen. [210] ſtarr. [211] benutzen. [212] Zwiſchenraum, *m.* [213] gewähren. [214] Gnade, *f.* [215] verleihen.

"Agreed[216], priest," said he, "give me thy wealth[217], and I will give thee the watchword[218]: it is Jesu Maria: pronounce[219] that, and no one will hurt[220] thee." We went down stairs[221] directly,—highly contented to have found such a protector.

The street was covered[222] with the dead[223] and dying. Their cries were enough[224] to have pierced[225] the hearts of[226] the greatest barbarians. We walked over the bodies[227]; and, when we arrived at[228] the church of St. Catherine, met[229] an officer of distinction[230] on horseback.[231] This generous[232] person[233] soon discovered us; and seeing me covered with blood, said to the person[234] who conducted us, "Fellow-soldier[235], fellow-soldier, take care[236] what you do to these persons." At the same time, he said to my wife, "Madam[237], is yonder[238] house yours?" My wife answered that it was. "Well," added[232] he, "take hold of[240] my stirrup[241], conduct me thither[242], and you shall have quarter." Then, turning to me, and making[243] a sign[244] to the soldier with his hand, he said to me, "Gentlemen[245] of Magdeburg, you yourselves are the occasion[246] of this destruction[247]: you might[248] have acted[249] otherwise."[250] The soldier who had used[251] me ill[252], took[253] this opportunity[254] to steal away.[255]

---

[216] topp. [217] Reichthum, *m.* [218] Losungswort, *n.* [219] aussprechen. [220] verletzen. [221] die Treppe hinunter. [222] bedecken. [223] todt. [224] genügen. [225] bringen durch. [226] take the Dative, and put it before the Accusative of the thing, namely, *the hearts*. [227] Leichnam, *m.* [228] bei. [229] begegnen, with Dat. [230] *say*, of superior rank, höher and Rang, *m.* [231] zu Pferde. [232] edelmüthig.. [233] Mann. [234] Mensch. [235] Kriegskamerad. [236] sich vorsehen. [237] Frau. [238] jener, e, es. [239] hinzu setzen. [240] ergreifen. [241] Bügel, *m.* [242] hin. [243] *say*, giving. [244] Zeichen, *n.* [245] *say*, you gentlemen. [246] Ursache, *f.* [247] Zerstörung. [248] turn it so: you had might act. [249] handeln. [250] anders. [251] zurichten. [252] so übel. [253] wahrnehmen. [254] Gelegenheit. [255] sich wegstehlen.

Upon entering my house, we found it filled with a multitude of plunderers[256], whom the officer, who was a colonel, ordered away.[257] He then said he would take up[258] his lodging[259] with[260] us; and having posted[261] two soldiers for[262] a guard[263] to[264] us, he left[265] us, with a promise[266] to return forthwith.[267] We gave, with great cheerfulness[268], a good breakfast to our sentinels[269], who complimented[270] us on the lucky fortune of falling into their colonel's hands; at the same time representing to us, that their fellow-soldiers made a considerable[271] booty[272], while they continued[273] inactive[274], merely[275] as a safeguard to us, and therefore beseeching us to render[276] them an equivalent[277] to[278] a certain degree. Upon this, I gave them four rose-nobles[279], with which they were well contented, and shewed so much humanity[280] as[281] to make us an[282] offer[283] to go and search for[284] any acquaintance[285] whom we desired[286] to place[287] in safety[288] with[289] us.

I told them I had[290] one particular[291] friend who had escaped[292] to[293] the cathedral[294], as I conjectured[295], and promised them a good gratuity[296] on his part[297] if they saved[298] his life. One of them, accompanied[299] by my maid-servant, went to the church, and called my friend often by[300] name; but it was all in vain[301]: no one an-

---

[256] Plünderer. [257] say either *ordered to go away*, or *sent away*. [258] aufſchlagen. [259] Wohnung. [260] bei. [261] hinſtellen. [262] als. [263] Schutzwache, *f.* [264] für. [265] verlaſſen. [266] verſprechen, and use the Def. Article. [267] ſogleich. [268] Freude, *f.* [269] Schildwache. [270] to compliment — on fortune Glück wünſchen. [271] bedeutend. [272] Beute, *f.* [273] bleiben. [274] unthätig. [275] bloß. [276] geben. [277] Entſchädigung. [278] bis zu. [279] Roſenobel, *f.* [280] Menſchenfreundlichkeit. [281] *say*, that they made. [282] take Def. Article. [283] Anerbieten. [284] ſuchen nach. [285] bekannt, used as Substantive. [286] wünſchen. [287] bringen. [288] Sicherheit. [289] bei. [290] Subj. Imperf. [291] beſonder. [292] ſich flüchten. [293] in. [294] Dom, *m.* [295] muthmaßen, and insert the adverbial sentence, *as I conjectured*, after *who*. [296] Belohnung. [297] ſeinerſeits. [298] retten. [299] begleiten. [300] bei, with the Def. Art. [301] vergebens.

swered; and we never heard mention[302] of him from that period.[303] Some moments after, our colonel returned; and asked if any person[304] had offered[305] us the least[306] incivility.[307] After we had exculpated[308] the soldiers in this respect[309], he hastened[310] abroad[311] to see if there was any possibility to extinguish[312] the fire, which had already seized[313] great[314] part of the city. He had already got[315] into[316] the street, when he returned with uncommon[317] hastiness[318], and said, "Show me the way out of the town, for I see plainly[319] we shall perish[320] in the flames if we stay[321] here a few minutes longer." Upon this, we threw the best[322] of our goods and moveables[323] into a vaulted[324] cellar[325], covered the trap-door[326] with earth, and made[327] our escape. My wife took nothing with her but[328] my robe: my maid seized a neighbour's child by[329] the hand, whom we found crying at[330] his father's door, and led[331] him away. We found it impossible[332] to pass[333] through the gates of the town, which were all in flames, and the streets burnt with great fury[334] on either[335] side: in[336] a word, the heat[337] was so intense[338], that it was[339] with difficulty[340] we were able[341] to breathe. Having made several unsuccessful[342] attempts, we determined[343], at last, to make our escape[344] on[345] the side of the town next[346] the Elbe.[347] The streets were clogged[348] with dead bodies;

---

[302] erwähnen hören. [303] von der Zeit an. [304] jemand. [305] beweiſen. [306] gering. [307] Unhöflichkeit. [308] entſchuldigen. [309] Hinſicht, from ſehen. [310] eilen. [311] hinaus. [312] löſchen. [313] ergreifen. [314] *say*, a great. [315] hinausgelangen. [316] auf. [317] ungewöhnlich. [318] Haſt, *f.* [319] deutlich. [320] umkommen. [321] verweilen. [322] neuter singular. [323] our goods and chattels unſere Habe und Gut. [324] wölben. [325] Keller, *m.* [326] Fallthüre, *f.* [327] to make his escape ſich auf die Flucht begeben. [328] als. [329] bei. [330] vor. [331] hinwegführen. [332] unmöglich. [333] hindurchkommen. [334] Wuth, *f.* [335] *say*, on both sides. [336] mit. [337] Hitze. [338] gewaltig. [339] leave out *it was*. [340] Mühe, *f.* [341] im Stande ſein. [342] vergeblich. [343] beſchließen. [344] ſich flüchten. [345] auf. [346] nächſt, with Dat. [347] Elbe, *f.* [348] voll preſſen.

and the groans[349] of the dying were insupportable. The Walloons[350] and Croatians[351] attacked[352] us every moment, but our generous colonel protected us from[353] their fury. When we gained the bastion[354], which stands on the bank[355] of the Elbe, we descended[356] it by the scaling-ladder[357] which the Imperialists[358] had made use of[359] in[360] the assault[361], and arrived at length in the enemy's camp[362], near[363] Rottensee, thoroughly[364] fatigued[365], and extremely[366] alarmed.[367]

The colonel made[368] us enter[369] his tent[370], and presented[371] us some refreshments.[372] The ceremony[373] being over, " Well," said he, " having saved your lives[374], what return[375] do you make me? We told him, that for the present we had nothing to bestow, but that we would transfer[376] to him all the money and plate we had buried[377] in the cellar, which was the whole of our worldly[378] possessions.[379] At[380] this instant many Imperial officers came in, and one chanced[381] to say to me, " Ego tibi condoleo, ego sum addictus Fidei Augustanæ." The distressed[382] state[383] I found myself in made me unable[384] to give a proper[385] reply[386] to the condolence[387] of a man who carried arms against those whose religion[388] he professed[389], and whose hard[390] fortune[391] he pretended[392] to deplore.[393] Next day the colonel sent one of his domestics[394] with my maid-servant to search for the treasure[395] we had

---

[349] Geſtöhn, *n.*, implying a plural. [350] Wallone. [351] Croat. [352] anfallen. [353] vor. [354] Bollwerk, *n.* [355] Ufer, *n.* [356] hinunterſteigen. [357] Sturmleiter, *f.* [358] Kaiſerlich, to be used as a Substantive. [359] ſich bedienen. [360] bei. [361] Stürmen. [362] Lager, *n.* [363] unweit. [364] durch und durch. [365] ermüden. [366] äußerſt. [367] erſchrecken. [368] laſſen. [369] treten in. [370] Zelt. [371] anbieten. [372] Erfriſchung. [373] *say*, after this courteous reception; höflich; Empfang. [374] take Sing. [375] to make return einen Erſatz geben. [376] übertragen. [377] vergraben. [378] weltlich. [379] Beſitz, take sing. [380] in. [381] *say*, by chance said, gerade. [382] traurig. [383] Zuſtand. [384] unfähig. [385] gehörig. [386] Antwort, *f.* [387] Beileidsbezeigung. [388] Religion. [389] ſich bekennen zu. [390] ſchwer. [391] Loos, *n.* [392] vorgeben. [393] beklagen. [394] Diener. [395] Schatz, *m.*

buried in the cellar, but they returned without success[396], because, as the fire still continued[397], they could not approach[398] the trap-door. In the meanwhile[399] the colonel made us[400] his guests[401] at[402] his own table, and during our whole stay[403] treated us, not as prisoners[404], but as intimate[405] friends. One day at dinner[406], an officer of the company happened to say, that our sins[407] were the cause of all the evil[408] we suffered[409], and that God had made use of the Catholic[410] army[411] to chastise[412] us; to whom my wife replied, that the observation[413] was perhaps too true; however, take care[414], continued [415]she, lest[416] God in[417] the end should throw that very[418] scourge[419] into the flames. This sort of prophecy[420] was fulfilled[421] soon afterwards on[422] the self-same[423] Imperial army, which was almost totally[424] destroyed[425] at[426] the battle[427] of[428] Leipzic. At length I ventured[429] one day to ask[430] the colonel to give us leave to[431] depart[432]; he complied[433] immediately, on[434] condition[435] that we paid our ransom.[436] Next morning I sent my maid into the town to try if there was any possibility of penetrating[437] into the cellar; she was more fortunate that day, and returned with all our wealth. Having returned[438] our thanks[439] to our deliverer[440], he immediately ordered[441] our passport[442] to be prepared[443] for us, with permission[444] to retire[445] to[446] whatever[447]

---

[396] Erfolg, *m.* [397] fortbrennen. [398] ſich nähern, with Dat. [399] unterdeſſen. [400] machen zu. [401] Gaſt, *m.* [402] an. [403] Verweilen. [404] gefangen. [405] vertraut. [406] bei Tiſche. [407] Sünde, *f.* [408] Uebel, *n.* [409] erleiden. [410] katholiſch. [411] Heer, *n.* [412] züchtigen. [413] Bemerkung. [414] ſich in Acht nehmen. [415] fortfahren. [416] daß—nicht. [417] an. [418] ſelbſt, put it after *scourge*. [419] Geißel, *f.* [420] Prophezeiung. [421] erfüllen. [422] an. [423] derſelbe. [424] gänzlich. [425] vernichten. [426] in. [427] Schlacht, from ſchlagen. [428] bei. [429] wagen. [430] to *ask* a favour is bitten, but to *ask* a question fragen. [431] die Erlaubniß. [432] *say*, for departing zum Scheiden. [433] einwilligen. [434] mit, with the Definite Article. [435] Bedingung. [436] Löſegeld, *n.* [437] bringen. [438] abſtatten. [439] Dank, *m.* sing. [440] Befreier. [441] laſſen, with Inf. Active. [442] Paß, *m.*. [443] ausfertigen. [444] *say*, the permission. [445] ſich begeben. [446] nach. [447] welcher.

place[448] we should think proper[449], and made us a present of[450] a crown[451] to defray[452] the expense[453] of our journey.[454] This brave Spaniard[455] was colonel of the regiment[456] of Savelli, and named[457] Don Joseph de Ainsa.—

From the "Half Hours."

VII.

My Dear[1] Friend,[2]

My visit[3] seems lengthening out[4] indefinitely[5]; the thaw[6] has taken place[7], and yet there seems no immediate prospect[8] of my return.[9] Since last[10] Sunday I have been a close[11] prisoner, so my time passes[12] in a placid[13] succession[14] of meals[15], sleep[16], and intervals.[17] Post-time[18] is the most interesting[19] period[20] of the day; the arrival[21] of a letter is quite[22] an event.[23] From this[24] you may imagine[25] the heartfelt[26] thanks[27] I render[28] for your last kind[29] note.[30] I value[31] your correspondence[32] very much[33]; it is not conventional[34], but genuinely[35] affectionate[36]; and it is very pleasant[37], the thought that some one loves me.[38] Trusting[39] that we may both feel sure[40] of this[41], as[42] regards[43] each other[44],

I remain[45], your affectionate[46] friend, C. G. R.

---

[448] Ort, *m.* [449] to think proper für bequem erachten. [450] Geſchenk, *n.*, mit. [451] Krone, *f.* [452] beſtreiten. [453] Unkoſten, only used in plural. [454] Reiſe. [455] Spanier. [456] Regiment, *n.*, *of* is not expressed. [457] heißen

[1] theuer. [2] Freundin. [3] Beſuch, *m.* [4] ſich hinziehen. [5] ins Unendliche. [6] Thauwetter, *n.* [7] eintreten. [8] Ausſicht. [9] Rückkehr, *f.* [10] vergangen. [11] ſtreng. [12] vergehen. [13] ſanft. [14] Folge. [15] Mahlzeit, *f.* [16] Schlaf. [17] Mußeſtunde, *f.* [18] Poſtzeit, *f.* [19] unterhaltend. [20] Periode, *f.* [21] Ankunft, from kommen. [22] vollkommen. [23] Ereigniß, *n.* [24] *say*, therefrom aus. [25] ſich denken. [26] innig. [27] Dank, *m.*, sing. [28] abſtatten. [29] freundlich. [30] Billet, *n.* [31] ſchätzen. [32] Briefwechſel, *m.* [33] recht ſehr. [34] ſteif und förmlich. [35] ächt. [36] herzlich. [37] angenehm. [38] *say*, us. [39] im Vertrauen. [40] *say*, the surety die Gewißheit. [41] thereof. [42] ſoweit als es. [43] betreffen. [44] *say*, us. [45] verbleiben. [46] herzlich ergeben.

VIII.

My Dear Friend,

I hate[1] to think[2] how ungrateful[3] I must appear to some correspondents[4], and to you among[5] the number; but I can assure[6] you my occupations[7] are so many[8], and my leisure[9] comparatively[10] so limited[11], that I can with difficulty find time for more than my weekly[12] letter to mamma.[13] I am much obliged[14] for your and your husband's[15] very kind expressions[16] with regard[17] to my little book. I continue[18] to find myself very comfortable[19] here in most respects.[20] I admire[21] the people in whose house I am residing[22] more and more.[23] They are truly excellent[24] people, and extremely[25] kind to[26] me. The lady[27] of the house is remarkably[28] thoughtful and considerate[30] in little things, and I think[31] this one of the greatest charms[32] any one can possess. If I happen[33] to mention[34] any book I should like to read, she always remembers[35] it. I hope your husband and your children are quite well. Pray offer[36] my kindest remembrance[37] to the former[38], and kisses[39] to the latter[40], and accept[41] for them, and for yourself, the best new years wishes[42] of,

My dear friend, your's most sincerely,[43] M. F. R.

the[44] 18*th of*[45] *November*, 1848.

---

[1] haſſen, and insert *it*. [2] daran denken. [3] undankbar. [4] Correſpondent. [5] in. [6] verſichern, with Dat. [7] Beſchäftigung, take the Gen. [8] viel. [9] Mußezeit. [10] verhältnißmäßig. [11] beſchränkt. [12] wöchentlich. [13] meine Mutter. [14] verpflichten. [15] Gatte. [16] Wort, *n*. [17] in Bezug auf. [18] express it adverbially by ſtets or noch immer. [19] behaglich. [20] *say*, in the most; respect Hinſicht. [21] bewundern. [22] wohnen [23] immer mehr. [24] vortrefflich. [25] höchſt. [26] gegen. [27] Frau. [28] auf eine merkwürdige Weiſe. [29] aufmerkſam. [30] rückſichtsvoll. [31] halten für. [32] *say*, of the most charming features; reizend; Zug. [33] express this by the Adverb gerade. [34] erwähner, with Gen. [35] denken with, of it daran. [36] geben. [37] Gruß, *m*. [38] erſter. [39] Kuß, *m*. [40] letzter. [41] empfangen. [42] either Neujahrswunſch, *m*., or my best wishes for the new year. [43] aufrichtig ergeben. [44] the Acc. [45] is not expressed, and the name of the month is not declined.

IX. Griseldis.

The little German theatre[1] here (in Reval), proves[2] a most agreeable diversion.[3] We engaged[4] a box[5] for the season[6]; and are glad[7] whenever the many hospitable[8] houses have an evening free. Without attempting too much, the modest[9] German company, most respectable[10] in performance[11], gave[12] us selections[13] from Kotzebue, from Iffland, etc.[14]: but a piece[15], recently[16] dramatised[17], called[18] Griseldis, is more attractive[19] than all, and draws[20] most sympathising audiences.[21] This is taken from[22] the same old German legend[23], which, I[24] conclude[25], furnished[26] our ancient[27] ballad[28] of the patient Griselda, with a slight[29] alteration[30] of[31] the *dénouement*.[32] The drama[33], however, is laid in the times of our national[34] character[35] King Arthur. The hero[36], Percival, is one of the chief nobles[37] of his court[38]; and the heroine[39], Griseldis, has, on account of her beauty and virtue, been taken from a lowly[40] woodman's hut[41] to grace[42] his castle.[43] Knowing his wife to be the very[44] mirror[45] of excellence[46], Percival leaves her to repair[47] to[48] King Arthur's court; where, taunted[49] by some with[50] her low birth[51], by others, with

---

[1] Schauſpielhaus, *n.* [2] gewähren. [3] Unterhaltung. [4] nehmen. [5] Loge, *f.* [6] Schauſpielzeit, *f.* [7] ſich freuen. [8] gaſtfreundlich. [9] beſcheiden. [10] höchſt achtenswerth. [11] Leiſtung, and *say*, in their performances. [12] zeigen. [13] eine Auswahl. [14] und ſo weiter, or u. ſ. w. [15] Stück, *n.* [16] kürzlich. [17] für die Bühne bearbeiten. [18] Namens. [19] reizend. [20] ziehen. [21] *say*, a great number Zahl, of sympathising theilnehmend, spectator Zuſchauer. [22] entlehnen, with Dat. [23] Sage. [24] *say*, as I. [25] ſchließen. [26] den Stoff liefern zu. [27] alt. [28] Ballade, *f.* [29] gering. [30] Aenderung. [31] in. [32] Entwickelung. [33] Schauſpiel, *n.* [34] volksthümlich. [35] Character, *m.* [36] Held. [37] Hauptedelmann. [38] Hof, *m.* [39] Heldin. [40] niedrig. [41] Köhlerhütte, *f.* [42] zieren. [43] Schloß, *n.* [44] ſelbſt, and put it after *mirror*. [45] Spiegel, *m.* [46] Vortrefflichkeit. [47] ſich begeben. [48] an. [49] höhnen. [50] wegen. [51] Geburt, *f.*

possessing[52] a diamond which he is afraid to display[53], he boasts that, though his wife be a woodman's daughter, she surpasses[54] in[55] obedience[56], and every wifely sense[57] of duty, all the high-born[58] ladies[59] of the court. This so stings[60] the queen herself,—a bad, designing[61] woman, that she offers[62] to do homage[63] to this peasant-born[64] countess[65], and to proclaim her[66] best among women, if her obedience prove[67] superior[68] to[69] every trial[70]; but, if Griseldis fail[71], exacts[72] the same homage from the haughty[73] Percival to[74] herself. This rouses[75] Percival's vanity[76], and, confident of[77] his wife's principles[78], and careless[79] of her sufferings, he accepts[80] the gage[81]. Two courtiers[82], chosen as witnesses to this conjugal[83] ordeal[84], now accompany him to his castle. Here an unforeseen occasion for trial[85] immediately presents itself[86]: Griseldis' old mother, on her death-bed, sends a messenger to the castle to summon[87] her daughter, if not grown unmindful[88] in her present exaltation[89], to come and receive her last blessing.[90] Griseldis sues to[91] Percival for leave to fulfil[92] this act of piety[93], which Percival, thinking only of his bond[94], denies[95], and forbids[96] her to leave the castle. Griseldis obeys. Percival then asks for[97] their only child, —a babe[98] in the cradle.[99] "The king wants[100] it," he coolly[101] says, and gives it to the courtiers. "The king

---

[52] *say*, the possession Beſitz. [53] ans Tageslicht bringen. [54] übertreffen. [55] an. [56] Gehorſam, *m.* [57] Frauengefühl, *n.* [58] hochgeboren. [59] Dame. [60] erbittern. [61] falſch. [62] ſich erbieten. [63] Huldigung leiſten. [64] bauern-erzeugt. [65] Gräfin. [66] erklären als. [67] ſich erweiſen. [68] erhaben. [69] über. [70] Verſuchung. [71] ſinken. [72] verlangen. [73] ſtolz. [74] für. [75] erregen. [76] Eitelkeit. [77] trauend auf. [78] Grundſatz. [79] unbekümmert um. [80] annehmen. [81] Fehdehandſchuh, *m.* [82] Höfling. [83] ehelich. [84] Unſchuldsprobe, *f.* [85] die Prüfung. [86] ſich darbieten. [87] auffordern. [88] der niedern Abkunft vergeſſen, *lit.*, to forget her lowly origin. [89] Erhöhung. [90] Segen, *m.* [91] bitten. [92] üben. [93] fromme Pflicht. [94] Vertrag. [95] abſchlagen. [96] verbieten, with Dat. [97] fordern. [98] Säugling, *m.* [99] Wiege, *f.* [100] brauchen. [101] ruhig.

wants my child!" screams Griseldis, with a mother's agony[102], and is rushing[103] to seize[104] it from their grasp[105], when Percival restrains[106] her, and gives her to understand that such is his will. Griseldis obeys. In the next scene[107], he bids the great hall[108] be prepared[109], calls together his dependents[110] and vassals[111], and now commands[112] his countess to put off[113] her splendid robes[114], to unbind[115] the jewels from her hair, and return to his presence[116] in the russet[117] petticoat[118], loose[119] tresses[120], and bare[121] feet, with which he first saw her. Griseldis obeys. Now turning to the assembly[122], he says, "Thus you saw this woman enter my castle; this was her condition[123] when she became your mistress[124]; to that let her return; conduct her beyond[125] the castle-gates[126], and give her neither food nor shelter[127] on[128] your allegiance." Griseldis attempts no remonstrance[129], save[130] her tears[131]; weeping she bids[132] her lord[133] adieu[134], passes[135] meekly[136] through the throng[137], and goes barefooted[138] forth.[139] A storm[140] of[141] thunder[142] and lightning[143] now bursts[144] over the scene[145], but still she pursues her forlorn[146] way, till, torn[147] and exhausted[148], she reaches the home[149] of her girlhood[150]. Here her father, pointing[151] to[152] the dead body of her mother, upbraids[153] her with[154] neglect[155]

---

[102] Seelenangſt, *f.* [103] vorwärtsſtürzen. [104] reißen. [105] pl. of Hand. [106] zurückhalten. [107] Auftritt. [108] Halle, *f.* [109] zurüſten. [110] Untergeben. [111] Vaſall (G.—en). [112] befehlen, with Dat. [113] ablegen. [114] Gewand, *n.* (*pl.*—änder). [115] löſen. [116] *say*, to reappear before him. [117] bäueriſch. [118] Kleidchen. [119] ungeflochten. [120] Locke, *f.* [121] nackt. [122] Verſammlung. [123] Zuſtand. [124] Herrin. [125] zu — hinaus. [126] Schloßthor, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [127] Obdach, *n.* [128] bei — Lehnspflicht. [129] Einrede. [130] außer. [131] Thräne, *f.* [132] bieten. [133] Gemahl. [134] Lebewohl. [135] ſchreiten. [136] demüthig. [137] Gedränge, *n.* [138] barfuß. [139] dahin. [140] Unwetter, *n.* [141] *say*, accompanied by. [142] Donner, *m.* [143] Blitz, *m.* [144] losbrechen. [145] Schauplatz, *m.* [146] hülflos. [147] verwunden. [148] erſchöpfen. [149] Heimath, *f.* [150] Kindheit. [151] weiſen. [152] auf. [153] ſchmähen. [154] wegen. [155] Vernachläſſigung, *say*, her neglect.

of filial duty[156], conveys[157] to her a maternal[158] curse[159] instead of a blessing, and further[160] incensed[161] by beholding her in this degraded[162] condition, stigmatises[163] her as the most worthless[164] of women, and drives[165] her from his hut. Now is poor Griseldis poor indeed. Overcome[166] with[167] hunger and wretchedness[168], she lays herself down on a stone to die, which so touches the old man's heart, that he consents[169] to receive[170] her. And thus she lives: resuming[171] her hard[172] labour[173] and her hard fare[174], praying[175] to God for her husband and child, and fading away[176] beneath her griefs.[177] Three months elapse[178], and Griseldis appears in the same russet garb —pale and wan[179], when a horn is heard; and the king and the queen, and all the court, with Percival in the midst[180], crowd[181] into the lonely valley.[182] Griseldis looks and listens in[183] speechless[184] amazement[185], as[186] Percival explains how all this suffering has been but a trial of her duty, which[187] having abided[188] the sharpest proof, the queen here falls on her knees[189], and owns[190] her peerless[191] among women. And now Percival, with a face radiant[192] with[193] gratified[194] pride, bids[195] her return to his castle and resume her sway[196] over him and all his possessions. But Griseldis, with an unutterable[197] expression[198] of woe[199], here lifts[200] up her voice: "Percival, thou art lost to[201] me for ever.[202]

---

[156] Kindespflicht. [157] hinterbringen. [158] *say*, a mother's. [159] Fluch, *m.* [160] noch mehr. [161] entflammen. [162] entwürdigen. [163] brandmarken. [164] unwürdig. [165] jagen. [166] überwältigen. [167] von. [168] Elend, *n.* [169] darein willigen. [170] zu ſich nehmen. [171] zurückkehren zu. [172] rauh. [173] Arbeit, *f.* [174] Nahrung. [175] beten. [176] hinmelken. [177] Gram, *m.*, sing. [178] vergehen. [179] ſchmächtig. [180] Mitte, *f.* [181] ſich drängen. [182] Thal, *n.* [183] mit. [184] ſprachlos. [185] Staunen. [186] indem. [187] *say*, and since this had. [188] beſtehen. [189] Knie (*pl.*—e). [190] anerkennen als. [191] unvergleichlich. [192] ſtrahlen. [193] vor. [194] befriedigen. [195] heißen. [196] Herrſchaft. [197] unausſprechlich. [198] Ausdruck. [199] Jammer, *m.* [200] erheben. [201] für. [202] auf immer.

God knows that I would have borne[203] humiliation[204], torture[205], death in any[206] shape[207], for[208] thy good[209],—that I have suffered grief, degradation[201], and hardship[211],—have taught my hands again to labour, and have washed my bread with tears at[212] thy bidding[213] without a complaint[214]; but to know that thou hast wrung[215] thy wife's tenderest[216] feelings,—that thou hast loaded[217] my heart with a dying mother's curse, hast turned[218] my raven locks[219] to grey, and taught me, in a few months, an eternity[220] of misery[221],—and that all this wretchedness has been but to prove[222] my duty to the world—but to gratify thy vanity! — this, this it is that breaks my heart. What is[223] a queen's homage to me when Percival has lost my esteem[224]?" Ask me not to return; my mother's spectre[225] would rise[226] between us; I should despise[227] myself for[228] following the weakness[229] of my affection, and thou wouldst despise me for loving one I had ceased[230] to revere.[231] No,—ask me not,—it cannot be. Let me remain with[232] him who pitied[233] me when I seemed most guilty.[234] Farewell, my Percival, cherish[235] our child, and tell him that his mother died.[236] Come father." And so saying, Griseldis resists[237] every[238] solicitation[239], and, weeping, leaves the scene.[240]

This *dénouement* is the theme[241] of all conversation; and parties[242] run high[243] for and against its moral.[244] Some

---

[203] ertragen. [204] Erniedrigung. [205] Marter, *f.* [206] jeder. [207] Geſtalt, *f.* [208] zu. [209] Frommen, *n.* [210] Herabwürdigung. [211] Noth. [212] auf. [213] Geheiß, *n.* [214] Klage. [215] foltern. [216] zart. [217] laden auf. [218] to turn to grey ergrauen laſſen. [219] Rabenhaar, *n.*, sing. [220] Ewigkeit. [221] Schmerz, *m.*, take the plural. [222] beweiſen. [223] gelten, with Dat. [224] Achtung. [225] Geiſt. [226] ſich erheben. [227] verachten. [228] *say*, if I were to follow wollte ich, etc. [229] Schwachheit. [230] aufhören. [231] verehren. [232] bei. [233] ſich erbarmen, with Gen. [234] ſchuldig. [235] lieben. [236] take the Perfect. [237] widerſtehen. [238] all. [239] Flehen, *n.* [240] Bühne, *f.* [241] Gegenſtand. [242] der Parteigeiſt. [243] ſich lebhaft regen. [244] Moral, *f.*

little patient Griseldises of the society blame their prototype[245] for not returning, and some selfish[246] Percivals acquit[247] her, and *vice versa*.[248] I venture[249] no opinion. Count M. wiped[250] his eyes[251], and hoped they made it up[252] behind the scenes.[253] (*Letters from the Baltic.*)

X. Character of Oliver Goldsmith.

There are few writers[1] for whom the reader feels such personal[2] kindness[3] as for Oliver Goldsmith; for few have so eminently[4] possessed the magic gift[5] of identifying themselves[6] with[7] their writings. We read his character in[8] every page[9], and grow into familiar intimacy[10] with him as[11] we read. The artless[12] benevolence that beams[14] throughout[15] his works,—the whimsical[16], yet amiable[17] views[18] of[19] human life and human nature,—the unforced[20] humour[21], blending[22] so happily with good[23] feeling[24] and good[25] sense[26], and singularly[27] dashed[28] at[29] times with a pleasing[30] melancholy[31],—even the very[32] nature[33] of his mellow[34], flowing[35], and softly tinted[36] style[37], all[38] seem to bespeak[39] his moral as well as his intellectual[40] qualities[41], and make[42] us love the man at

---

[245] Urbild, *n.* [246] ſelbſtiſch. [247] freiſprechen. [248] umgekehrt. [249] wagen. [250] trocknen. [251] *say*, to himself the eyes. [252] ſich verſöhnen. [253] Couliſſe, *f.*

[1] Schriftſteller. [2] perſönlich. [3] Freundſchaft. [4] in ſo bedeutendem Grade. [5] Zauberkraft, *f.* [6] ſo ganz aufgehen. [7] in, Acc. [8] auf. [9] Seite, *f.* [10] innig vertraut werden. [11] indem. [12] unerkünſtelt. [13] Wohlwollen. [14] durchſtrahlen. [15] überall. [16] ſonderbar. [17] liebenswürdig. [18] Anſicht. [19] von, with Def. Art. [20] ungezwungen. [21] Witz, *m.* [22] ſich vereinigen. [23] zart. [24] Gefühl, *n.* [25] geſund. [26] Verſtand. [27] ſeltſam. [28] durchweben. [29] zu. [31] gefällig. [31] Schwermuth, *f.* [32] eigentlich. [33] Weſen, *n.* [34] weich. [35] fließend. [36] ſanft gefärbt. [37] Schreibart, *f.* [38] ſing. [39] verrathen. [40] geiſtig. [41] Eigenſchaft. [42] zwingen.

the same time that[43] we admire the author.[44] While the productions[45] of writers of loftier[46] pretension[47], and more sounding[48] names, are suffered[49] to moulder[50] on our shelves[51], those of Goldsmith are cherished[52] and laid in[53] our bosoms.[54] We do not quote[55] them with ostentation[56], but[57] they mingle[58] with our minds[59], sweeten[60] our tempers[61], and harmonise[62] our thoughts: they put[63] us in good[64] humour[65] with[66] ourselves and with the world, and in[67] so[68] doing they make us happier and better men.[69]

An acquaintance[70] with the private[71] biography[72] of Goldsmith lets[73] us into the secret[74] of his gifted[75] pages.[76] We there[77] discover them to be little more than transcripts[78] of his own heart, and picturings[79] of his fortunes.[80] There he shows[81] himself the same kind, artless, good-humoured[82], excursive[83], sensible[84], whimsical[85], intelligent[86] being[87] that he appears in his writings. Scarcely an adventure[88] or character is given[89] in his works that may not be traced[90] to his own parti-coloured[91] story. Many of his most ludicrous[92] scenes[93] and ridiculous[94] incidents[95] have been drawn from[96] his own blunders[97] and mischances[98]; and he seems[99] really[100] to have been

---

[43] da. [44] Autor. [45] Werk, *n.* [46] höher. [47] Anſpruch, pl. [48] volltönend. [49] *say*, we suffer laſſen. [50] vermodern. [51] Bücherbrett, *n.* (*pl.*—er). [52] hegen. [53] legen an. [54] Herz, *n*, sing. [55] anführen. [56] Scheingelehrſamkeit. [57] *but* does not here deny so much, as it continues the discourse. [58] ſich verweben. [59] Geiſt, sing. [60] beſänftigen. [61] Gemüth, sing. [62] in Einklang bringen. [63] verſetzen. [64] *say*, a good. [65] Stimmung. [66] gegen. [67] indem. [68] *say*, this. [69] omit *men*. [70] *say*, die Bekanntſchaft. [71] das Privatleben berückſichtigend. [72] Lebensbeſchreibung. [73] einlaſſen. [74] Geheimniß, *n.* [75] geiſtreich. [76] Schrift. [77] darin. [78] Abſchrift. [79] Schilderung. [80] Glücksfall. [81] ſich erweiſen als. [82] gutmüthig. [83] herumſtreifend. [84] verſtändig. [85] drollig. [86] geiſtvoll. [87] Weſen. [88] Abenteuer. [89] erwähnen. [90] zurückführen. [91] bunt. [92] luſtig. [93] Auftritt, [94] lächerlich. [95] Ereigniß, *n.* [96] entlehnen, with Dat. [97] Irrthum, *m.* (*pl.*—thümer). [98] Unfall. [99] *say*, it seems as if every maxim had been buffeted into him. [100] wirklich.

buffeted into[101] almost every maxim[102] imparted[103] by him for the instruction[104] of his reader.

XI. Goldsmith's Parentage[1] and Birthplace.[2]

Oliver Goldsmith was born on[3] the 10th of November, 1728, at the hamlet[4] of Pallis, or Pallasmore, county[5] of Longford, in Ireland. He sprang[6] from[7] a respectable[8] but by no means a thrifty[9] stock.[10] Some families seem to inherit[11] kindness[12] and incompetency[13], and to hand down[14] virtue and poverty from generation[15] to generation. Such was the case with the Goldsmiths. "They were always," according[16] to their own accounts[17], "a strange[18] family; they rarely acted like other people; their hearts were[19] in[20] the right place[21], but their heads seemed to be doing anything[22] but[23] what they ought." "They were remarkable[24]" says another statement[25], "for[26] their worth[27], but of no cleverness[28] in the ways of the world." Oliver Goldsmith will be found[29] faithfully[30] to inherit the virtues and weaknesses[31] of his race.[32] His father, the Rev.[33] Charles Goldsmith, with hereditary[34] improvidence[35], married when very young and very poor, and starved along[36], for a number[37] of years, on[38] a small country curacy[39] and the assistance of his wife's friends. His whole income[40], eked out[41] by the produce[42] of some fields which he

---

[101] einpauken, with Dat. [102] Grundſatz. [103] vortragen. [104] Belehrung.

[1] Abkunft. [2] Geburtsort, *m.* [3] an. [4] Dörfchen. [5] Grafſchaft, *say*, in the. [6] ſtammen. [7] aus. [8] achtbar. [9] wohlhabend. [10] Geſchlecht, *n.* [11] erben. [12] Herzensgüte. [13] Untüchtigkeit. [14] überliefern. [15] Alter, *n.* [16] nach. [17] Ausſage, *sing.* [18] ſeltſam. [19] ſitzen. [20] an. [21] Stelle. [22] aller. [23] nur nicht. [24] berühmt. [25] Bericht, *m.* [26] wegen. [27] Biederkeit. [28] Geſchick, *n.* [29] *say*, had, as will be found, inherited. [30] getreulich. [31] Schwachheit. [32] Geſchlecht. [33] Prediger. [34] angeerbt. [35] Unbedachtſamkeit. [36] kümmerlich leben. [37] *say*, during a series Reihe, *f.* [38] von. [39] Landpfarre, *f.* [40] Einkommen. [41] vermehren. [42] Ertrag.

farmed[43], and of some occasional[44] duties[45] performed[46] for his wife's uncle, the rector[47] of an adjoining[48] parish[49], did not exceed[50] forty pounds.

"And passing[51] rich with forty pounds[52] a[53] year."

He inhabited an old half-rustic[54] mansion[55] that stood on a rising[56] ground[57], in a rough[58] lonely[59] part of the country, overlooking[60] a low[61] tract[62] occasionally[63] flooded[64] by the river Inny. In this house Goldsmith was born, and it was a birth-place worthy[65] of a poet; for[66], by all accounts, it was haunted ground.[67] A tradition[68] handed down among the neighbouring[69] peasantry[70] states[71], that, in after[72] years, the house remaining for some time untenanted[73], went to decay[74], the roof[75] fell in[76], and it became so lonely and forlorn[77] as to be[78] a resort[79] for the "good people[80]," or fairies[81], who, in Ireland[82], are supposed[83] to delight[84] in old, crazy[85], deserted[86] mansions for[87] their midnight[88] revels.[89] All attempts to repair[90] it were in vain; the fairies battled[91] stoutly[92] to maintain[93] possession. A large mis-shapen[94] hobgoblin[95] used to bestride[96] the house every evening with an immense[97] pair of jack-boots[98], which, in[99] his efforts[100] at[101] hard[102]

---

[43] pachten. [44] gelegentlich. [45] Amtsarbeit, *f.* [46] verrichten. [47] Oberprediger. [48] benachbart. [49] Kirchſpiel, *n.* [50] überſteigen. [51] *say*, passed gelten für. [52] sing. [53] *say*, the. [54] ländlich. [55] Herrnhaus, *n.* [56] aufſteigen. [57] Grund, *m.* [58] rauh. [59] einſam. [60] herabſehen auf. [61] niedrig. [62] Landſtrich. [63] zuweilen. [64] überſchwemmen. [65] würdig. [66] nach. [67] *say*, it was not quite in order, *or* right there; right geheuer. [68] Sage. [69] benachbart. [70] Landvolk, *n.* [71] melden. [72] ſpäter. [73] unverpachtet. [74] in Verfall gerathen. [75] Dach, *n.* [76] einfallen. [77] öde. [78] *say*, that it was chosen as erwählen zu. [79] Aufenthalt, *m.* [80] Völkchen, *n.*, sing. [81] Fee, *f.* [82] *say*, as is supposed in Ireland. [83] annehmen. [84] Freude haben an. [85] gebrechlich. [86] verlaſſen. [87] wegen. [88] mitternächtlich. [89] Gelag, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [90] ausbeſſern. [91] ſtreiten. [92] tapfer. [93] behaupten [94] mißgeſtaltet. [95] Kobold, *m.* [96] beſteigen. [97] ungeheuer. [98] Kanone, *f.* [99] bei. [100] Anſtrengung, sing. [101] *say*, in the im. [102] ſcharf.

riding, he would[103] thrust[104] through the roof, kicking[105] to pieces all the work of the preceding[106] day. The house was therefore left[107] to its fate, and went[108] to ruin.[109] Such is the popular[110] tradition about[111] Goldsmith's birthplace.

About[112] two years after his birth a change[113] came over[114] the circumstances of his father; by[115] the death of his wife's uncle he succeeded to[116] the rectory[117] of Kilkenny West; and, abandoning[118] the old goblin mansion[119], he removed[120] to Lissoy, in the county of Westmeath, where he occupied[121] a farm[122] of seventy acres, situated on[123] the skirts[124] of that pretty little village. This was the scene[125] of Goldsmith's boyhood[126], the little world whence[127] he drew[128] many of those pictures, rural[129] and domestic, whimsical[130] and touching[131], which abound[132] throughout his works, and which appeal[133] so eloquently[134], both to[135] the fancy[136] and the heart.

XII. Goldsmith's Father.

Lissoy is confidently[1] cited[2] as the original[3] of his "Auburn" in the "Deserted Village;" his father's establishment[4], a mixture[5] of farm[6] and parsonage[7], furnished[8] hints[9], it is said, for the rural[10] economy[11] of the Vicar of Wakefield; and his father himself, with his learned[12]

---

[103] Imperfect of mögen, Indic. [104] ſchleudern. [105] zerſchlagen, and *say*, and thus kick. [106] vorhergehen. [107] überlaſſen. [108] *say*, fell in ruins. [109] Trümmer, only used in plural. [110] volksthümlich. [111] von. [112] ungefähr. [113] Veränderung. [114] in. [115] in Folge. [116] gelangen zu. [117] Oberpfarre, *f.* [118] aufgeben. [119] Koboldwohnung. [120] ziehen. [121] pachten. [122] Landwirthſchaft, *m.* [123] an. [124] Saum, *m.*, sing. [125] Schau-platz, *m.* [126] Kinderjahr, *n.* plural. [127] woraus. [128] ſchöpfen. [129] ländlich. [130] komiſch. [131] rührend. [132] ſo reichlich zerſtreut ſein. [133] ſprechen. [134] beredt. [135] zu. [136] Einbildungskraft.

[1] zuverſichtlich. [2] angeben. [3] Urbild, *n.* [4] Haushalt. [5] Miſchung. [6] Meierei. [7] Pfarre, *f.* [8] liefern. [9] Wink, *m.* [10] ländlich. [11] Einrichtung. [12] gelehrt.

simplicity[13], his guileless[14] wisdom, his amiable piety, and utter[15] ignorance[16] of the world, has been exquisitely[17] portrayed[18] in the worthy[19] Dr. Primrose. Let us pause[20] for a moment, and draw from Goldsmith's writings one or two of those pictures which, under feigned[21] names, represent[22] his father and his family, and the happy fireside[23] of his childish days.[24]

"My father," says the man in black[25], who, in some respects[26], is a counterpart[27] of Goldsmith himself, "My father, the younger son of a good family, was possessed of[28] a small living[29] in the church. His education was[30] above his fortune, and his generosity[31] greater than his education. Poor as he was, he had his flatterers[32] poorer than himself: for every dinner he gave them, they returned[33] him an equivalent[34] in[35] praise; and this was all he wanted.[36] His pleasure increased[37] in[38] proportion[39] to the pleasure he gave: he loved all the world, so he fancied[40] all the world loved him.

"As his fortune was but small, he lived[41] up to the very extent of it: he had no intention[42] of leaving[43] his children money, for that was dross[44], he resolved they should have learning, for learning, he used[45] to observe[46], was better than silver and gold. For[47] this purpose[48] he undertook[49] to instruct[50] us himself, and took[51] as much care[52] to form[53] our morals[54] as to improve[55] our understanding[56];

---

[13] Einfachheit. [14] arglos. [15] völlig. [16] Unkenntniß. [17] vortrefflich. [18] abſchildern. [19] würdig. [20] einhalten. [21] erdichten. [22] darſtellen. [23] Kreis, *m.* [24] Kindertag, *m.* [25] *say*, in the black dress. [26] Hinſicht. [27] Gegenſtück, *n.* [28] beſitzen. [29] Pfründe, *f.* [30] *say*, went. [31] Edelmuth, and add *was*. [32] Schmeichler. [33] bezahlen. [34] Vergütung. [35] an. [36] wünſchen. [37] ſich vergrößern. [38] *say*, in the. [39] Verhältniß, *n.* [40] ſich einbilden. [41] *say*, he spent every penny of it; to spend verzehren. [42] Abſicht. [43] hinterlaſſen. [44] Schlacke, *f.* [45] pflegen. [46] bemerken. [47] zu. [48] Zweck, *m.* [49] *say*, he undertook it. [50] unterrichten. [51] tragen. [52] Sorge. [53] bilden. [54] Sitte, *f.* [55] verbeſſern. [56] Verſtand, but mark, you must say in German, *to improve our morals, and to form our understanding.*

and we were perfectly instructed[57] in the art[58] of giving away thousands before we were taught[59] the necessary[60] qualification[61] of getting[62] a farthing.[63]"

XIII. Goldsmith rejected[1] by the Bishop.[2]

The time was now arrived for Goldsmith to apply for[3] orders[4], and he presented himself[5] accordingly[6] before[7] the Bishop of Elfin for ordination.[8] We have stated[9] his objection[10] to clerical[11] life, the obligation[12] to wear a black coat; and whimsical[13] as it may appear, dress[14] seems, in fact[15], to have formed[16] an obstacle[17] to his entrance[18] into the church. He had ever a passion[19] for[20] clothing his sturdy[21] but awkward[22] little person in gay[23] colours; and on[24] this solemn[25] occasion, when it was to be supposed[26] his garb[27] would be of suitable[28] gravity[29], he appeared luminously[30] arrayed[31] in scarlet[32] breeches.[33] He was rejected by the bishop; some say for[34] want[35] of[36] sufficient studious[37] preparation[38], his rambles[39] and frolics[40] having been[41] much in the way of[42] his theological[43] studies; others attribute[44] his rejection[45] to reports[46] of[47]

---

[57] unterweiſen. [58] Kunſt, from können. [59] *say*, before we learned. [60] nöthig. [61] Tüchtigkeit. [62] erwerben. [63] Heller, *m.*

[1] *say*, is rejected abweiſen. [2] Biſchof. [3] einkommen wegen. [4] prieſterliche Beſtallung. [5] ſich melden. [6] demgemäß. [7] bei. [8] *say*, in order to obtain the same. [9] erwähnen. [10] Einwand gegen. [11] geiſtlich. [12] Verpflichtung; *say*, namely nämlich before *the*. [13] ſeltſam. [14] Anzug, with the Definite Article. [15] in der That. [16] bilden. [17] Hinderniß, *n.*, gegen. [18] Eintritt. [19] Leidenſchaft. [20] dafür, and express *clothing* with the Infinitive and zu. [21] ſtark. [22] ſchwerfällig. [23] lebhaft. [24] bei. [25] feierlich. [26] *say*, when one ought to suppose vermuthen. [27] Gewand, *n.* [28] gehörig. [29] Würde, *f.* [30] glänzend. [31] ſchmücken. [32] ſcharlachen. [33] Beinkleid, *n.* (*pl.*—er). [34] wegen. [35] Mangel, *m.* [36] an. [37] gelehrt. [38] Vorbereitung. [39] Wanderung. [40] luſtiger Streich frolic. [41] ſtehen. [42] *say*, to. [43] theologiſch. [44] zu'ſchreiben. [45] Abweiſung. [46] Gerücht, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [47] von, and *say*, his irregularities in college; *in college* is auf der Univerſität.

his college irregularities[48], which the bishop had received from his old tyrant, Wilder; but those who look into the matter with more knowing[49] eyes, pronounce[50] the scarlet breeches to have been the fundamental[51] objection.[52]

XIV. Goldsmith's Letter to[1] his Mother.

My dear Mother,—If you will sit down[2] and calmly listen to[3] what I say, you shall be fully resolved[4] in[5] every one of those many questions[6] you have asked[7] me. I went to Cork, and converted[8] my horse, which you prize[9] so highly, into cash[10], took my passage[11] in a ship bound[12] for America, and, at the same time, paid the captain for my freight[13], and all the other expenses[14] of my voyage; but it so happened[15], that the wind did not answer[16] for three weeks; and you know, mother, that I could not command[17] the elements.[18] My misfortune was, that, when the wind served[19], I happened[20] to be with a party in the country, and my friend, the captain, never[21] enquired[22] after me, but set sail[23] with as[24] much[25] indifference[26] as if I had been on board.[27] The remainder[28] of my time I employed[29] in the city and its environs[30], viewing[31] everything curious[32], and you know no one can starve[33] when he has

---

[48] unregelmäßiges Leben, sing. [49] ſcharf. [50] erklären. [51] eigentlich. [52] Einwurf.

[1] an. [2] ſich niederſetzen. [3] hören auf. [4] vollſtändige Antworten erhalten, lit., get complete answers. [5] auf. [6] Frage. [7] *say*, you have addressed to me richten an. [8] machen. [9] ſchätzen. [10] zu Geld. [11] Platz, *m.* [12] beſtimmt ſein to be bound. [13] Fracht, *f.* [14] Unkoſten only used in plural. [15] ſich treffen. [16] widrig ſein. [17] gebieten, with Dat. [18] Elemente. [19] günſtig werden. [20] express by an Adverb, gerade. [21] durchaus nicht. [22] Nachfrage thun. [23] unter Segel gehen. [24] eben ſo. [25] groß. [26] Gleichgültigkeit. [27] am Bord. [28] übrige Theil. [29] zubringen. [30] Umgebung, [31] ſich (Dat.) anſehen. [32] merkwürdig, *say*, that was curious. [33] vor Hunger ſterben.

money in his pocket. Reduced[34], however, to[35] my last two guineas, I began to think of[36] my dear mother and friends whom I had left behind me; and so bought that generous[37] beast, Fiddle-back[38], and bade adieu to Cork with only five shillings in my pocket. This, to be sure[39], was but a scanty[40] allowance[41] for man and horse towards[42] a journey of above[43] a hundred miles; but I did not despair[44], for I knew I must find friends on the road. I recollected[45], particularly[46], an old and faithful[47] acquaintance[48] I made at college, and who had often and earnestly[49] pressed[50] me to spend[51] a summer with him, and he lived but eight miles from Cork. The circumstance of vicinity[52] he would[53] expatiate to[54] me with peculiar[55] emphasis.[56] "We shall," says he, "enjoy the delights[57] of both city and country, and you shall command[58] my stable and my purse."[59] However, upon the way I met[60] a poor woman all[61] in tears, who told me her husband[62] had been arrested[63] for a debt[64] he was not able to pay, and that his eight children must now starve, bereaved[65] as[66] they were of his industry, which had been their only support.[67] I thought myself[68] at home, being not far from my friend's house, and therefore parted[69] with[70] a moiety[71] of all[72] my store[73]; and pray, Mother, ought I not to have given her the other half-crown, for what she got[74] would be of little[75] use[76] to her? However, I soon arrived at the

[34] herunterbringen. [35] auf. [36] an. [37] edelmüthig. [38] Fiedel-rücken. [39] allerdings. [40] dürftig. [41] Summe. [42] für. [43] ungefähr. [44] verzweifeln. [45] ſich erinnern, with Gen. [46] beſonders. [47] treu. [48] *say*, friend whose acquaintance I made; Bekanntſchaft acquaintance. [49] dringend. [50] einladen. [51] zubringen. [52] große Nähe, and *say*, concerning betreffend the vicinity. [53] pflegen. [54] ſich weitläufig auslaſſen vor. [55] eigenthümlich. [56] Nachdruck. [57] Freude. [58] Herr ſein über. [59] Beutel, *m.* [60] treffen. [61] ganz. [62] Mann. [63] ins Gefängniß führen. [64] Schuld. [65] berauben. [66] *say*, as they were bereaved. [67] Stütze. [68] *say*, that I was. [69] ſcheiden. [70] von. [71] Hälfte. [72] *say*, my whole store. [73] Vorrath. [74] erhalten. [75] gering. [76] Nutzen, *m.*

mansion of my affectionate friend, guarded[77] by the vigilance[78] of a huge[79] mastiff[80], who flew[81] at[82] me, and would have torn[83] me to pieces but for[84] the assistance of a woman, whose countenance was not less grim[85] than that of the dog; yet she, with great humanity[86], relieved[87] me from the jaws[88] of this Cerberus, and was prevailed on[89] to carry up[90] my name to her master. Without suffering[91] me to wait long, my old friend, who was then recovering[92] from a severe[93] fit of sickness[94] came down in his night-cap[95], night-gown[96], and slippers[97], and embraced[98] me with the most cordial[99] welcome[100], showed[101] me in, and, after giving me a history of his indisposition[102], assured me that he considered[103] himself peculiarly fortunate in having under his roof the man he most loved on earth, and whose stay[104] with him must, above[105] all things, contribute[106] to his perfect[107] recovery.[108]

I now repented[109] sorely[110] I had not given the poor woman the other half-crown, as I thought all my bills[111] of humanity[112] would be punctually[113] answered[114] by this worthy man. I revealed[115] to him my whole soul; I opened[116] to him all my distresses[117]; and freely[118] owned[119] that I had but one half-crown in my pocket, but that now, like a ship after weathering out[120] the storm, I considered myself secure[121] in a safe[122] and hospitable harbour.[123] He

---

[77] beſchützen. [78] Wachſamkeit. [79] ungeheuer. [80] Kettenhund, *m.* [81] zufliegen. [82] auf. [83] reißen. [84] *say*, if I had not received. [85] grimmig. [86] Menſchenfreundlichkeit. [87] befreien. [88] Rachen, *m.*, sing. [89] vermögen, Verb Active, Part. vermocht. [90] melden. [91] laſſen. [92] ſich erholen. [93] ſchwer. [94] Krankheitsanfall. [95] Nachtmütze, *f.* [96] Schlafrock, *m.* [97] Pantoffel, *m.* (*pl.*—). [98] umarmen. [99] warm. [100] Bewillkommung. [101] hineinführen. [102] Unwohlſein, *n.* [103] halten für. [104] Verweilen. [105] vor. [106] beitragen. [107] völlig. [108] Geneſung. [109] bereuen. [110] ſchmerzlich. [111] Wechſel, *m.* [112] Menſchlichkeit. [113] pünktlich. [114] einlöſen. [115] offenbaren. [116] darlegen. [117] Noth, sing. [118] freimüthig. [119] geſtehen. [120] beſtehen. [121] geborgen. [122] ſicher. [123] Hafen, *m.*

made no answer[124], but walked about[125] the room, rubbing[126] his hands as one in deep study.[127] This I imputed[128] to the sympathetic[129] feelings[130] of a tender[131] heart, which increased[132] my esteem[133] for him, and, as that increased[134], I gave the most favourable[135] interpretation[136] to his silence.[137] I construed it into[138] delicacy[139] of sentiment[140], as if he dreaded[141] to wound my pride by expressing[142] his commiseration[143] in words, leaving[144] his generous conduct[145] to speak for itself.

It now approached six o'clock in the[146] evening; and as I had eaten no breakfast[147], and as my spirits[148] were raised[149], my appetite[150] for[151] dinner[152] grew uncommonly[153] keen.[154] At length the old woman came into the room with two plates[155], one spoon, and a dirty[156] cloth, which she laid upon the table. This appearance[157], without increasing[158] my spirits, did not diminish[159] my appetite. My protectress[160] soon returned with a bowl[161] of sago, a small porringer[162] of sour milk, a loaf[163] of stale[164] brown bread, and the heel[165] of an old cheese, all over[166] crawling[167] with[168] mites.[169] My friend apologised[170] that his illness obliged[171] him to live on[172] slops[173], and that better fare was not in the house; observing, at the same

---

[124] *say*, he answered nothing erwiedern. [125] umher. [126] reiben. [127] Nachdenken. [128] zurechnen. [129] theilnehmend. [130] Empfindung. [131] zärtlich. [132] erhöhen. [133] Achtung. [134] mark this, *increased* is *neuter*, and must be expressed, in German, by the *reflective* form. [135] günſtig. [136] Deutung. [137] Stillſchweigen. [138] auslegen als, lit. to interpret as. [139] Feinheit. [140] Gefühl, *n.* [141] Subjunctive Imperfect. [142] ausdrücken. [143] Mitleiden. [144] überlaſſen, *say*, leaving it to his, etc. [145] Verfahren. [146] *say*, of the. [147] *say*, as I had eaten nothing for, etc. da ich Nichts zum, u. ſ. w. [148] Lebensgeiſt, *m.* [149] aufregen. [150] Appetit, *m.* [151] zum. [152] Mittagseſſen. [153] ungewöhnlich. [154] ſcharf. [155] Teller, *m.* [156] ſchmutzig. [157] Erſcheinung. [158] erhöhen. [159] vermindern. [160] Beſchützerin. [161] Schale, *f.*, and add *full* voll. [162] Napf, *m.* [163] Laib, *m.* [164] altbacken. [165] Rinde, *f.* [166] durch und durch. [167] wimmeln. [168] von. [169] Made, *f.* [170] ſich entſchuldigen. [171] zwingen. [172] von. [173] dünne Speiſen.

time, that a milk diet[174] was certainly the most healthful[175]; and at eight o'clock he again recommended a regular[176] life, declaring that, for his part[177], he *would lie down*[178] *with the lamb and rise*[179] *with the lark.*

My hunger was at[180] this time so exceedingly[181] sharp[182], that I wished for[183] another slice[184] of the loaf, but was obliged to go to bed without even that refreshment.[185] This lenten[186] entertainment[187] I had received, made[188] me resolve[189] to depart as soon as possible. Accordingly, next morning, when I spoke of going, he did not oppose[190] my resolution, — he rather[191] commended[192] my design[193]; adding[194] some very sage[195] counsel[196] upon[197] the occasion. "To be sure," said he, "the longer you stay away[198] from your mother, the more you will grieve[199] her and your friends; and possibly[200] they are already afflicted[201] at[202] hearing of this foolish[203] expedition[204] you have made." Notwithstanding[205] all this, and without any hope of softening[206] his sordid[207] heart, I again renewed[208] the tale of my distress; and, asking how he thought I could travel about a hundred miles upon[209] one half-crown, I begged[210] to borrow[211] a single guinea, which I assured him should be repaid with thanks. "And you know, Sir," said I, "it is no more than I have done for you." To which[212] he firmly[213] answered, "Why[214] look you, Mr. Goldsmith, that is neither here nor there[215]: I have paid you all you

---

[174] Milchdiät, *f.* [175] geſund. [176] regelmäßig. [177] ſeinerſeits. [178] ſich niederlegen. [179] aufſtehen. [180] zu. [181] außerordentlich. [182] beißend. [183] *say*, to have. [184] Schnitte, *f.* [185] Labſal, *n.* [186] faſtenmäßig. [187] Bewirthung. [188] laſſen. [189] den Entſchluß faſſen. [190] nichts ausſetzen gegen. [191] eher. [192] billigen. [193] Plan, *m.* [194] hinzufügen. [195] altklug. [196] Rath. [197] bei. [198] fortbleiben. [199] mit Gram erfüllen. [200] vielleicht. [201] betrüben. [202] *say*, when they hear. [203] thöricht. [204] Ausflug, *m.* [205] trotz. [206] erweichen. [207] geizig. [208] wiederholen. [209] mit. [210] *say*, I begged him. [211] *say*, to lend me leihen. [212] worauf. [213] feſt. [214] nun. [215] weder hier noch da.

ever lent me; and this sickness of mine[216] has left me bare of cash.[217] But I have bethought myself[218] of a conveyance[219] for you: sell your horse, and I will furnish[220] you a much better one to ride on." I readily[221] grasped at[222] his proposal[223], and begged[224] to see the nag[225]: on which he led me to his bed chamber[226], and from[227] under the bed he pulled out[228] a stout[229] oak-stick.[230] "Here he is," said he, "take this in your hand, and it will carry you to your mother's with more[231] safety than such a horse as you ride." I was in doubt when I got[232] it into my hand, whether I should not, in the first place[233], apply[234] it to his pate[235], but a rap[236] at[237] the street door[238] made the wretch[239] fly to it[240]; and when I returned to the parlour[241], he introduced[242] me, as if nothing of the kind[243] had happened[244], to the gentleman who entered[245], as[246] Mr. Goldsmith, his most ingenious[247] and worthy friend, of whom he had so often heard him speak with rapture.[248] I could scarcely compose[249] myself, and must have betrayed indignation[250] in my mien[251] to the stranger[252], who was a counsellor-at-law[253] in the neighbourhood, a man of engaging[254] aspect[255] and polite[256] address.[257] After spending an hour, he asked[258] my friend and me to dine[259] with[260] him at his house. This I declined[261] at first, as I

---

[216] this my sickness. [217] *say*, without (any) money. [218] denken an. [219] Fuhrwerk, *n.* [220] verſehen, Acc. of the *person*, and mit, Dat. of the *thing*. [221] gierig. [222] ergreifen. [223] Vorſchlag. [224] *say*, and wished. [225] Klepper, *m.* [226] Schlafzimmer, *n.* [227] not translated. [228] hervorziehen. [229] dick. [230] Eichenſtock. [231] größer. [232] bekommen. [233] *say*, before all things. [234] tüchtig anlegen an. [235] Kopf, *m.* [236] Pochen. [237] an. [238] Hausthüre. [239] elend, to be used as a Substantive. [240] dahin. [241] Beſuchszimmer, *n.* [242] vorſtellen. [243] Art, *f.* [244] vorfallen. [245] eintreten. [246] als. [247] geiſtreich. [248] Entzücken. [249] ſich ſammeln. [250] a feature of indignation Zug des Unwillens. [251] Miene, *f.* [252] fremd, to be treated as a Substantive. [253] Gerichtsrath. [254] einnehmen. [255] Geſicht, *n.* [256] höflich. [257] Benehmen. [258] einladen. [259] ſpeiſen. [260] bei. [261] ablehnen.

wished to have no further communication[262] with my hospitable friend; but[263] at[264] the solicitation[265] of both, I at last consented[266]; determined[267] as I was by two motives[268]: one, that I was prejudiced[269] in favour[270] of the looks[271] and manners[272] of the counsellor; and the other, that I stood in need[273] of a comfortable[274] dinner. And there, indeed, I found everything I could wish, — abundance[275] without profusion[276], and elegance[277] without affectation.[278] In the evening, when my old friend, who had eaten very plentifully[279] at[280] his neighbour's table, but talked again of lying down with the lamb, made a motion[281] to me of retiring[282], our generous host[283] requested[284] I should take a bed[285] with him[286]; upon which, I plainly[287] told my friend that he might go home and take care of[288] the horse he had given me, but that I should never re-enter his doors.[289] He went away with a laugh[290]; leaving[291] me to add[292] this to the other little things the counsellor already knew of his plausible[293] neighbour. And now, my dear mother, I found sufficient[294] to reconcile[295] me to[296] all my follies[297], for here I spent three whole days. The counsellor had two daughters, who played enchantingly[298] on the harpsichord[299], and yet it was but[300] a melancholy[301] pleasure I felt the first time I heard them; for that being

---

[262] and *say*, no more to do nicht mehr zu thun. [263] allein. [264] auf. [265] das dringende Bitten. [266] einwilligen. [267] beſtimmen. [268] Beweggrund, *m.* [269] einnehmen. [270] zu Gunſten. [271] das Aeußere. [272] Weſen. [273] I stand in need mir thut Noth. [274] behaglich. [275] Fülle. [276] Ueberladung. [277] Anmuth, *f.* [278] Ziererei. [279] reichlich. [280] an. [281] vorſchlagen. [282] ſich zurückziehen. [283] Wirth. [284] bitten. [285] mit einem Bette fürlieb nehmen, *lit.* to be content with a bed. [286] *say*, in his house. [287] gerade heraus. [288] Sorge tragen für. [289] *say*, threshold ſeine Schwelle wieder betreten. [290] *say*, laughing. [291] zurücklaſſen, introduced by indem. [292] hinzufügen. [293] *say*, of his friend who talked with so plausible reasons mit ſolchen Scheingründen. [294] hinlänglich. [295] ausſöhnen. [296] mit. [297] thörichte Streiche. [298] reizend. [299] Flügel, *m.* [300] nur. [301] wehmüthig.

the first time also that either of them[302] had touched[303] the instrument[304] since their mother's death, I saw the tears in silence[305] trickle down[306] their father's cheeks.[307] I every day endeavoured[308] to go away, but every day was pressed[309] and obliged[310] to stay.[311] On my going, the counsellor offered[312] me his purse[313], with a horse and servant to convey[314] me home[315], but the latter I declined[316], and only took a guinea to bear[317] my necessary[318] expenses[319] on the road. OLIVER GOLDSMITH.

(*Washington Irving's Life of Oliver Goldsmith.*)

XV.

MY DEAR FRIEND,

For so much undeserved[1] kindness[2] and partiality[3] as you have always shown[4] me, and for the dear little gift[5] which you have now sent me, what return[6] can I make[7] you? Only that of my very grateful[8] thanks, and most sincere[9] affection.[10] But as you always possessed the latter, I have now nothing new to offer[11] you but[12] meagre[13] thanks. I admire my new pencil very much, and think[14] the device[15] on the seal[16] both pretty and elegant.[17] I hope very soon to see you and your family: till then and ever, I remain[18]

Your very affectionate friend, N. N.

The 5th August, 1850.

---

[302] eine von beiden. [303] berühren. [304] Instrument, *n.* [305] still. [306] herabträufeln. [307] Wange, *f.* [308] versuchen. [309] dringend einladen. [310] nöthigen. [311] bleiben. [312] anbieten. [313] Börse, *f.* [314] schaffen. [315] nach Hause. [316] *say*, for the latter I thanked, by which is implied in German that he did not accept them. [317] bestreiten. [318] nothwendig. [319] Ausgabe, take Plural.

[1] unverdient. [2] Freundlichkeit. [3] Vorliebe. [4] beweisen. [5] Geschenk, *n.* [6] *say*, what can I as return Erwiederung. [7] *say*, offer anbieten. [8] *say*, hearty herzlich. [9] aufrichtig. [10] Zuneigung. [11] *say*, to give. [12] als. [13] mager. [14] halten für. [15] Figur, *f.* [16] Siegel, *n* [17] anmuthig. [18] verbleiben.

XVI. Wolves[1] in Courland.[2]

In perambulating[3] the woods, the idea[4] would[5] sometimes cross us, that the wolves, the print[6] of whose footsteps[7], intercepted[8] by the dotted[9] track[10] of the hare[11] and slenderly[12] defined[13] claws[14] of numerous birds, is seen in different directions[15], and even beneath[16] the windows of our house, might prowl[17] by day as well as by night. One day when, fortunately[18] perhaps, unescorted[19] by the huge[20] dogs, we were mounting[21] a hill to a neighbouring[22] mill[23], my companion[24] suddenly halted[25], and laying her hand on mine, silently[26] pointed to[27] a moving[28] object within fifty yards[29] of us. It was a great brute[30] of a wolf stalking leisurely[31] along[32]—its high bristly[33] back[34] set up[35]—its head prowling down[36]—who took no notice[37] of us, but slowly pursued the same path[38] into the wood which we had quitted a few minutes before. We must both plead guilty[39] to blanched cheeks[40], but beyond this[41] to no signs[42] of cowardice[43]; and, in truth, the instances are so rare of their attacking[44] human beings, even the most defenceless[45] children, that we had no cause for[46] fear. They war not on[47] men unless[48] under excessive[49] pressure[50] of hunger, or when, as in the case of a butcher[51],

[1] Wolf, *m.* [2] Curland. [3] durchwandern. [4] the idea crosses me der Gedanke begegnet mir. [5] mögen, Imperf. [6] Fährte, *f.* [7] Fußſtapfe, *f.* [8] unterbrechen. [9] punktiren. [10] Spur, *f.* [11] Haſe, *m.* [12] unmerklich. [13] bezeichnen. [14] Klaue, *f.* [15] Richtung. [16] unter. [17] auf Raub ausgehen. [18] zum Glück. [19] unbegleitet. [20] gewaltig. [21] hinaufſteigen. [22] benachbart. [23] Mühle, *f.* [24] Geſellſchafterin. [25] ſtehen bleiben. [26] ſchweigend. [27] hinweiſen auf. [28] ſich regen. [29] Elle, *f.* [30] Beſtie, *f.* [31] gemach. [32] to stalk along dahin ſchreiten. [33] borſtig. [34] Rücken, *m.* [35] aufrichten. [36] niederwärts ſuchen. [37] ſich bekümmern um. [38] Fußweg, *m.* [39] *say*, so far declare ourselves guilty. [40] *say*, that our cheeks blanched ſich entfärben. [41] außer dem. [42] *say*, that we betrayed no signs Zeichen verrathen. [43] Feigheit. [44] anfallen. [45] wehrlos. [46] Urſache zu, *f.* [47] bekriegen. [48] es ſei denn. [49] äußerſt. [50] Drang. [51] Schlächter.

his clothes are impregnated[52] with the smell[53] of fresh blood. This is so certain an attraction[54] that peasants carrying butchers'-meat[55] are followed[56] by wolves, and often obliged to compound for[57] their own safety by flinging[58] the dangerous commodity[59] amongst them; or, if in a sledge[60], three or four of these ravenous[61] animals will[62] spring upon the basket of meat[63], and tear it open[64] before their eyes. Wherever an animal falls, there, though to all appearance[65] no cover[66] nor sign of a wolf be visible[67] for miles[68] round[69], several will be found[70] congregated[71] in half an hour's time. Such is their horrid[72] thirst for blood[73], that a wounded wolf knows[74] that only by the strictest[75] concealment[76] can he escape[77] being[78] torn in pieces by his companions.[79] As for[80] the dogs, it is heart-rending[81] to think of the numbers[82] which pay for their fidelity with their lives.[83] If a couple of wolves prowl[84] round a house or fold[85] at[86] night, a dozen dogs, with every[87] variety[88] of tone, from the sharp yap[89] of the shepherd's terrier[90] to the hoarse[91] bay[92] of the cattle-hound[93], will plunge[94] after[95] them, and put them to flight.[96] But

---

[52] ſättigen. [53] Geruch, *m.* [54] Anlockungsmittel, *n.* [55] friſches Fleiſch. [56] verfolgen. [57] erkaufen. [58] ſchleudern. [59] Waare, *f.* [60] Schlitten, *m.* [61] reißend. [62] wohl mögen. [63] Fleiſchkorb, *m.* [64] aufreißen. [65] *say*, according to all appearance; nach, which is to be put after the Substantive Anſchein. [66] Lager, *n.* [67] ſichtbar. [68] Meilen weit. [69] *say*, in the round Runde. [70] take the reflective form. [71] zuſammenſchaaren. [72] ſchrecklich. [73] Blutdurſt, *m.* [74] insert *it* after *knows*. [75] ſcharf. [76] Verſteck, *n.* [77] entgehen, with the Dative; and insert *it* after *escape*; but you must then take the Dative of the Definite Article, used as Pronoun Demonstrative. [78] *say*, that they be not torn. [79] Gefährte, *m.* [80] *say*, what concerns anbetreffen. [81] herzzerreißend. [82] *say*, the great number (Anzahl, *f.*) of those. [83] Leben, only used in the singular. [84] ſchleichen. [85] Hürde, *f.* [86] bei, or *say*, at the time of night zur Nachtzeit. [87] *say*, every only possible. [88] Mannigfaltigkeit. [89] Gebell., *n.* [90] Schäferhund. [91] heiſer. [92] Klaffen. [93] Rinderhund, *m.* [94] ſich drein ſtürzen. [95] hinter. [96] in die Flucht ſchlagen.

if one, more zealous[97], venture[98] beyond[99] his companions, the cunning[100] brutes face about[101], seize him, and before three minutes are over[102] there is nothing left[103] of[104] poor *Carrier Pois*[105], or sheep-boy[106], a common name[107] for these great mastiffs[108], but a few tufts[109] of bloody hair.[110] The cattle[111] themselves valiantly[112], and the horses, and the mares[113] especially who have a foal[114] at[115] their side, put themselves in an attitude of defence[116], and parry off[117] the enemy with their fore feet[118], their iron hoofs[119] often taking[120] great effect.[121] But, woe[122] be to them, if the wolf, breaking through the shower of blows[123], spring at[124] the throat[125], or stealing[126] behind his prey[127] fasten[128] on[129] his flank[130]—once down[131] all is over[132], though there be but one wolf. Sometimes in a sudden wheel-round[133] the wolf will seize upon[134] a cow's tail[135], on[136] which he hangs[137] with his jaws[138] of ten-horse power[139] while the poor animal drags[140] him round[141] the field, and finally[142] leaves the unfortunate member in his grasp[143], too happy to escape[144] with a stump.[145] At[146] one time these animals increased[147] so frightfully[148] in number, that

---

[97] *say*, with more zeal Eifer, *m.* [98] ſich wagen, and *say*, should venture. [99] vor, and put besides voraus after companions. [100] ſchlau. [101] herum-ſchwenken. [102] vorbei. [103] übrig laſſen. [104] von, with the Definite Article. [105] a Russian expression. [106] Schafjunge, *m.* [107] Gemein-name, *m.* [108] Bullenbeißer, *m.* [109] Büſchel, *m.* [110] Haar, *n.* (*pl.*—e), take the plural. [111] Rind, *n.* (*pl.*—er). [112] gar tapfer. [113] Stute. [114] Füllen, *n.* [115] an. [116] eine Vertheidigungsſtellung annehmen. [117] zurückſchlagen. [118] Vorderfuß, *m.* [119] Huf, *m.* (*pl.*—Hufe). [120] thun. [121] Wirkung. [122] wehe, and leave out *be*. [123] Schauer, *m.*, shower; Schlag blow. [124] an. [125] Kehle, *f.* [126] ſich ſtehlen. [127] Beute, *f.* [128] *say*, seize it by the flank; seize anpacken. [129] bei. [130] Weiche, *f.* [131] auf dem Boden. [132] vorbei. [133] Schwenkung. [134] ergreifen. [135] *say*, the tail of a cow; tail Schweif, *m.* [136] an. [137] ſich hängen. [138] Kinn-lade, *f.* [139] *say*, with the power, Kraft, of ten horses. [140] ſchleppen. [141] um, and put besides herum after *field*. [142] zuletzt. [143] Griff. [144] davonkommen. [145] Stummel, *m.* [146] zu. [147] to increase in number an Zahl ſich vermehren. [148] furchtbar.

the assembly of knights[149], by which name the internal[150] senate of this province is designated[151], appointed[152] a reward[153] of five roubles[154] for every pair of ears brought to the magistrate[155] of the district.[156] This worked[157] some change[158], and in proportion as[159] the wolves have fallen off[160], the assembly of knights has dropped[161] its price[162], though an opposite[163] policy[164] would perhaps have been more politic[165]; and now a pair of ears, generally[166] secured[167] from the destruction of a nest of young ones[168] does not fetch[169] more than a silver rouble[170], or three roubles and a half.[171] Nevertheless[172] a thousand wolves upon the average[173] are killed in a year. An old plan to attract[174] them was to tie[175] a pig in a sack, squeaking[176] of course[177], upon a cart[178], and drive[179] him rapidly[180] through a wood or morass.[181] Any[182] cry of an animal is a gathering sound[183] for the wolf, but the voice of man, made in[184] his Creator's[185] image[186], will hold him aloof.[187] The blast[188] of a horn greatly[189] annoys[190], a fiddle[191] makes them fly[192], and the jingling[193] of bells[194] is also a means of scaring[195] them, which, besides the expedience[196]

---

[149] Ritterſchaft. [150] inner. [151] bezeichnen. [152] feſt ſetzen. [153] Belohnung. [154] Rubel, *m.* [155] Beamte, *m.* [156] Bezirk, *m.* [157] hervorbringen. [158] Veränderung. [159] je nachdem, or im Verhältniß wie. [160] ſich vermindern. [161] ermäßigen. [162] Preis, *m.* [163] entgegengeſetzt. [164] Verfahren. [165] weiſe. [166] gewöhnlich. [167] gewinnen. [168] Junge, *n.*, declined as an Adjective. [169] einbringen. [170] Silberrubel, *m.* [171] three and a half is either drei und ein halb, or *say*, three entire and the fourth half drei ganze, und das Vierte halb, but this phrase is shortened by only using the two last words as one Viertehalb, and understanding the rest. [172] nichts deſto weniger. [173] im Durchſchnitte. [174] herbeilocken. [175] binden. [176] quiken. [177] natürlich. [178] Leiterwagen, *m.*, lit. a waggon, the sides of which look like ladders. [179] fahren. [180] raſch. [181] Moraſt, *m.* [182] jeder. [183] Verſammlungszeichen. [184] nach. [185] Schöpfer. [186] Ebenbild, *n.* [187] fernhalten. [188] Schmettern. [189] ſehr. [190] beunruhigen. [191] Violine, *f.* [192] in die Flucht treiben. [193] Klingeln. [194] Schelle, *f.* [195] verſcheuchen. [196] Nutzen, *m.*

of proclaiming[197] your approach[198] in dark nights on these noiseless[199] sledge-roads[200], is one reason why all winter equipages[201] are fitted up[202] with bells.—*Letters from the Baltic.*

XVII. The Spectator's[1] Introduction.[2]

I have observed, that a reader seldom peruses[3] a book with pleasure till he knows whether the writer[4] of it[5] be a black[6] or a fair[7] man, of a mild or choleric[8] disposition[9], married[10] or a bachelor[11], with[12] other particulars[13] of the like[14] nature[15], that conduce[16] very much to the right understanding[17] of an author.[18] To gratify[19] this curiosity[20], which is so natural to a reader, I design[21] this paper[22] and my next, as prefatory[23] discourses[24] to[25] my following writings[26], and shall give some account[27] in them of the several persons that are engaged[28] in[29] this work. As the chief trouble[30] of compiling[31], digesting[32], and correcting[33], will fall to my share[34], I must do[35] myself the justice[36] to open[37] with my own history. I was born to[38] a small hereditary estate[39], which, according to the tradition of the

---

[197] *say*, that one proclaims one's approach; to proclaim kund machen. [198] Nahen. [199] geräuſchlos. [200] Schlittenbahn, *f.* [201] Winterfuhrwerk, *n.* [202] verzieren.

[1] Zuſchauer. [2] Einleitung. [3] durchblättern. [4] Verfaſſer. [5] as the cases of the neuter of the Personal Pronoun are not used with Prepositions, you must translate *of the same.* [6] dunkel, and say, *of dark*, or *fair complexion.* [7] hell, and *complexion* is Geſichtsfarbe, *f.* [8] zornig. [9] Gemüthsſtimmung. [10] verheirathen. [11] Junggeſelle. [12] nebſt. [13] Beſonderheit. [14] ähnlich, without the preceding Def. Art. [15] Art, *f.* [16] beitragen zu. [17] Verſtändniß. [18] Schriftſteller. [19] befriedigen. [20] Neugier, *f.* [21] beſtimmen. [22] Blatt, *n.* [23] bevorwortend. [24] Anſprache, sing. [25] für. [26] Schrift. [27] Bericht. [28] beſchäftigen. [29] bei. [30] Hauptmühe, *f.* [31] Zuſammentragen, *say*, of the compiling. [32] Verarbeiten. [33] Verbeſſern. [34] it falls to my share es wird mir zu Theil, or es fällt mir zu. [35] widerfahren laſſen. [36] Gerechtigkeit. [37] eröffnen. [38] *say*, as heir als Erbe. [39] Familiengut.

village where it lies, was bounded[40] by the same hedges[41] and ditches[42] in William the Conqueror's[43] time that[44] it is at present, and has been delivered down[45] from father to[46] son, whole[47] and entire[48], without the loss[49] or acquisition[50] of a single field or meadow[51] during the space[52] of six hundred years. The gravity[53] of my behaviour[54] in my infancy[55], seemed to favour[56] my mother's dream, in which she saw me as one of the judges of the land; for, as she has often told me, I threw away[57] my rattle[58] before I was two months old, and would not[59] make use[60] of[61] my coral[62] until they had taken away[63] the bells[64] from it. As for[65] the rest[66] of my infancy, there being nothing in it remarkable[67], I shall pass it over[68] in[69] silence.[70] I find that, during my nonage[71], I had the reputation[72] of a very sullen[73] youth[74], but was always a favourite of[75] my master, who used to say, that my parts[76] were solid[77], and would wear well.[78] I had not been long at the university, before[79] I distinguished myself[80] by a most[81] profound[82] silence; for during the space of eight years, excepting[83] in[84] the public exercises of[85] the college[86], I scarce uttered[87] the quantity[88] of a hundred words; and, indeed, do not remember that I ever spoke three sentences[89] together[90] in my whole life. Whilst I was in this learned body, I applied myself[91] with

---

[40] begränzen. [41] Hecke, *f.* [42] Graben, *m.*, with a modification in pl. [43] Eroberer. [44] *say*, with which. [45] *say*, inherited ſich forterben. [46] auf. [47] ganz. [48] vollſtändig. [49] Verluſt, *m.* [50] Erwerbung. [51] Wieſengrund, *m.* [52] Zeitraum, *m.* [53] Feierlichkeit. [54] Weſen. [55] erſte Kindheit. [56] begünſtigen. [57] fortwerfen. [58] Klapper, *f.* [59] *say*, no use. [60] Gebrauch. [61] von. [62] Koralle, *f.* [63] wegnehmen. [64] Schelle, *f.* [65] *say*, what concerns betreffen. [66] *say*, the remaining part; remaining übrig. [67] merkwürdig. [68] to pass over übergehen. [69] mit. [70] Schweigen. [71] Minderjährigkeit. [72] Ruf. [73] mürriſch. [74] Junge. [75] beliebt bei. [76] Anlage. [77] gediegen. [78] *say*, perform something good etwas Tüchtiges leiſten. [79] als ſchon, and divide them by the Pronoun Personal. [80] ſich auszeichnen. [81] höchſt. [82] tief. [83] *say*, it be then. [84] bei. [85] Uebung. [86] Collegium. [87] äußern. [88] Menge, *f.* [89] Satz. [90] im Zuſammenhang. [91] ſich befleißen, with the Gen.

so much diligence[92] to my studies[93], that there are[94] very few celebrated[95] books, either[96] in the learned[97] or the modern[98] tongues[99], which I am not acquainted with. Upon[100] the death of my father, I was resolved[101] to travel into foreign[102] countries; and therefore left the university with the character of an odd[103], unaccountable[104] fellow[105], that had[106] a great deal[107] of learning[108], If I would but show[109] it. An insatiable[110] thirst after knowledge[111], carried[112] me into all the[113] countries of Europe, in which there was anything new or strange[114] to be seen. Nay[115], to[116] such a degree was my curiosity raised[117], that, having read the controversies[118] of some great men concerning[119] the antiquities of[120] Egypt[121], I made a voyage to Grand Cairo[122] on purpose[123] to take the measure of[124] a pyramid[125]; and, as soon as I had set myself right[126] in that particular[127], returned to my native country[128] with great satisfaction.[129] I have passed[130] my latter[131] years in this city, where I am most frequently[132] seen in[133] most[134] public[135] places[136], though there are not above half a[137] dozen of my select[138] friends that know me; of whom my next paper shall give a more particular[139] account.

---

[92] Emſigkeit. [93] Studium, the plural of which, and similar Substantives, is formed by changing um in en. [94] es giebt [95] berühmt. [96] *say*, be it. [97] gelehrt. [98] neuer. [99] Sprache. [100] bei. [101] entſchließen. [102] fremd. [103] ſonderbar. [104] unerklärlich. [105] Geſell (G.—en). [106] beſitzen, and it ought to stand in the Subjunctive. [107] Schatz, *m.* [108] Gelehrſamkeit. [109] zeigen. [110] unerſättlich. [111] Wiſſensdurſt, *m.* [112] führen. [113] is not translated after all. [114] ſeltſam. [115] ja. [116] bis zu. [117] ſteigern. [118] Streitſchrift. [119] in Rückſicht. [120] Alterthum, *n.* (*pl.*—thümer). [121] Aegypten. [122] Groß Cairo. [123] abſichtlich. [124] meſſen. [125] Pyramide, *f.* [126] ſich unterrichten. [127] beſonderer Punkt. [128] *native country* is Heimath, *f.*, in social language, and Vaterland, *n.*, in poetry. [129] Befriedigung. [130] verleben. [131] ſpäter. [132] häufig. [133] an. [134] *say*, the most. [135] öffentlich. [136] Ort. (*pl.* Orte). [137] ein halb. [138] auserleſen. [139] nah.

There is no place of general resort[140] wherein[141] I do not often make my appearance.[142] Sometimes I am seen[143] thrusting[144] my head into a round[145] of politicians[146] at Wills'[147] and listening[148] with great attention to[149] the narratives[150] that are made[151] in those little circular audiences.[152] Sometimes I smoke a pipe at Child's; and whilst I seem attentive to[153] nothing but the postman[154], overhear[155] the conversation[156] of every table in the room. I appear on[157] Sunday nights at St. James's coffee-house, and sometimes join[158] the little committee[159] of politics[160] in the inner[161] room, as one who comes there to hear and improve.[162] My face is likewise well known at the Cocoa-tree[163], and in the theatres[164], both of Drury Lane and the Haymarket. I have been taken for a merchant upon the Exchange[165] for above these[166] ten years, and sometimes pass[167] for a Jew[168] in the assembly[169] of stock-jobbers[170] at[171] Jonathan's. In short[172], wherever I see a cluster of people[173] I always mix with[174] them, though I never open my lips but[175] in my own club.[176] Thus I live in the world rather[177] as a spectator of mankind, than[178] as one of the species[179], by which means[180] I have made myself a speculative[181] statesman[182], soldier, merchant, and artisan[183], without ever meddling[184] with any practical[185]

---

[140] *say*, generally frequented gewöhnlich beſucht. [141] an welchem, or wo. [142] erſcheinen to make one's appearance. [143] *say*, one sees me. [144] ſtecken, and *say*, as I trust. [145] Zirkel, *m.* [146] Politiker. [147] in Will's Caffeehauſe. [148] hören. [149] auf. [150] Erzählung. [151] geben. [152] Zuhörerkreis, *m.* [153] aufmerken auf, lit. to be attentive to. [154] Briefträger. [155] überhören. [156] Unterhaltung. [157] am Sonntag Abend. [158] ſich anſchließen, with Dat. [159] Ausſchuß. [160] *say*, political committee politiſch. [161] inner. [162] ſich belehren. [163] im Cocobaum. [164] Schauſpielhaus. [165] Börſe, *f.* [166] *say*, during more than the last. [167] gelten. [168] Jude. [169] Verſammlung. [170] Papiermäkler. [171] bei. [172] kurz. [173] Häuflein Menſchen. [174] ſich miſchen unter. [175] außer. [176] Klub, *m.* [177] eher. [178] denn, in order to avoid the two als following immediately upon each other. [179] Geſchlecht, *n.* [180] *say*, and thereby dadurch. [181] ſpekulativ. [182] Staatsmann. [183] Handwerker. [184] ſich einlaſſen. [185] praktiſch.

part[186] in life. I am very well versed in[187] the theory[188] of a husband[189], or a father, and can discern[190] the errors in the economy[191], business, and diversion[192] of others, better than those who are engaged[193] in them; as standers-by[194] discover blots[195], which are apt to escape[196] those who are in[197] the game.[198] I never espoused[199] any party[200] with violence[201], and am resolved to observe an exact[202] neutrality[203] between the Whigs and the Tories, unless[204] I shall be forced[205] to declare[206] myself by the hostilities[207] of either[208] side. In short, I have acted in all the parts of my life as a looker on[209], which[210] is the character I intend[211] to preserve[212] in this paper.[213]

I have given the reader just[214] so much of my history and character as[215] to let him see I am not altogether[216] unqualified[217] for the business I have undertaken. As for other particulars in my life and adventures[218], I shall insert[219] them in the following papers, as I shall see[220] occasion. In the mean time[221], when I consider[222] how much I have seen, read, and heard, I begin to blame my own taciturnity[223]; and since I have neither time nor inclination[224] to communicate[225] the fulness[226] of my heart in speech[227], I am resolved to do it in writing, and to print myself out[228], if possible, before I die. I have been often told by my friends, that it is a pity[229] so many useful

---

[186] part in life Lebensthätigkeit. [187] eingeweiht in. [188] Theorie, *f.* [189] Ehemann. [190] unterſcheiden. [191] Haushalt. [192] Beluſtigung. [193] betheiligt. [194] Umſtehend. [195] Fehler, *m.* [196] it is apt to escape me es entgeht mir leicht. [197] bei. [198] Spiel, *n.* [199] ergreifen. [200] Partei, *f.* [201] Heftigkeit. [202] ſtreng. [203] Unparteilichkeit. [204] *say*, it be then that. [205] zwingen, and take the Present. [206] erklären. [207] Feindſeligkeit. [208] *say*, of one of both. [209] Zuſchauer. [210] *which* is something indefinite, and therefore to be translated by the Neuter. [211] beabſichtigen. [212] bewahren. [213] Blatt, *n.* [214] gerade. [215] *say*, as is enough. [216] ganz. [217] unbefähigt. [218] Abenteuer, *n.* [219] einweben. [220] erſehen. [221] inzwiſchen. [222] bedenken, and leave the *conditional conjunction* away. [223] Schweigſamkeit. [224] Neigung. [225] mittheilen. [226] Fülle. [227] *say*. in speaking. [228] ſich ausdrucken. [229] Schade, *m.*

discoveries[230] which I have made should be in the possession[231] of a silent man. For[232] this reason, therefore, I shall publish[233] a sheet[234] full of thoughts every morning for the benefit[235] of my contemporaries[236]; and if I can in any way contribute[237] to the diversion[238] or improvement[239] of the country in which I live, I shall leave it, when I am summoned out of it[240], with the secret[241] satisfaction[242] of thinking[243] that I have not lived in vain. There are three very material[244] points[245] which I have not spoken to[246] in this paper, and which, for several important[247] reasons, I must keep[248] to[249] myself, at least for some time[250], I mean an account[251] of my name, my age, and my lodgings. I must confess[252], I would gratify[253] my reader in anything that is reasonable[254]; but as far as these three particulars, though I am sensible[255] they might[256] tend[257] very much to the embellishment[258] of my paper, I cannot yet come to a resolution[259] of communicating them to the public.[260] They would indeed draw me out of that obscurity[261] which I have enjoyed for[262] many years, and expose[263] me in public places to several salutes[264] and civilities[265], which have been always very disagreeable[266] to me; for the greatest pain[267] I can suffer, is the being talked to[268], and being stared at.[269] It is for this reason, likewise[270], that I keep[271] my complexion[272] and dress[273] a very great

---

[230] Entdeckung. [231] Beſitz. [232] aus; reason Grund. [233] veröffentlichen. [234] Bogen, *m.* [235] zum Frommen. [236] Zeitgenoſſe, *m.* [237] beitragen zu. [238] Unterhaltung. [239] Verbeſſerung. [240] hinwegrufen is *to summon away*, by which the whole English phrase is expressed. [241] geheim. [242] Befriedigung. [243] is not to be translated. [244] weſentlich. [245] Punkt, *m.* [246] über. [247] wichtig. [248] behalten. [249] für. [250] eine Zeit lang, or auf einige Zeit. [251] Bericht. [252] geſtehen. [253] willfahren, with Dat. [254] vernünftig. [255] fühlen. [256] können. [257] dahin zielen. [258] *say*, to embellish verſchönern. [259] Entſchluß. [260] Publicum. [261] Dunkelheit. [262] ſeit. [263] ausſetzen. [264] Begrüßung. [265] Höflichkeit. [266] unangenehm. [267] Schmerz, *m.* [268] anreden. [269] anſtarren. [270] gleichfalls. [271] halten. [272] Geſichtsfarbe. *f.* [273] Tracht, *f.*

secret[274], though it is not impossible but[275] I may make discoveries of[276] both in the progress[277] of the work I have undertaken.—*Addison.*

XVIII. The Vanity[1] of a Great Man.

Colonel[2] O'Moore, of[3] Cloghan Castle[4] in Ireland, told[5] me an amusing[6] instance[7] of the mingled[8] vanity and simplicity[9] of Goldsmith, which[10], though perhaps coloured[11] a little, as[12] anecdotes[13] too often are, is characteristic[14], at least, of[15] the opinion which his best friends entertained[16] of Goldsmith. One[17] afternoon, as Colonel O'Moore and Mr. Burke were going[18] to dine with[19] Sir Joshua Reynolds, they observed Goldsmith[20] (also[21] on his way to Sir Joshua's) standing near[22] a crowd[23] of people, who were staring at[24] a puppet-show[25], exhibited[26] near one of the houses in Leicester Square. "Observe[27] Goldsmith," said Mr. Burke to O'Moore, "and mark[28] what passes[29] between him and me by and by[30] at[31] Sir Joshua's." They passed on[32], and arrived[33] before Goldsmith, who came soon after[34]; and Mr. Burke affected[35] to receive[36] him very coolly.[37] This

---

[274] *say*, very secret geheim. [275] *say, that* instead of *but*. [276] *say*, discover. [277] Verfolg.

[1] Eitelkeit. [2] Obriſt, with Def. Art. [3] von. [4] Schloß, *n.* [5] erzählen. [6] unterhaltend. [7] Beiſpiel, *n.* [8] miſchen, and *say*, of the with simplicity mixed vanity. [9] Einfalt. [10] begin here a new period, and say, *although this is perhaps*, and *although* express by gleich. [11] färben. [12] *say*, as it. [13] Anekdote, *f.* [14] bezeichnend. [15] für. [16] hegen. [17] Genitive. [18] *say*, were going together in order. [19] bei. [20] *say*, as Goldsmith stood. [21] gleichfalls, and *say*, who also was. [22] unweit. [23] Menge, *f.* [24] zuſchauen, with Dat. [25] Puppenſpiel, *n.* [26] aufführen. [27] ſich (Dat.) anſehen. [28] beachten. [29] vorgehen. [30] gelegentlich. [31] bei. [32] weiter gehen. [33] anlangen. [34] nachher. [35] ſich ſtellen. [36] aufnehmen, and construe *as if he received*, but try not to translate *if*. [37] kühl.

seemed to vex[38] poor Goldsmith, who[39] begged Mr. Burke would[40] tell him how he had had[41] the misfortune to offend[42] him. Burke appeared very reluctant[43] to speak; but, after a good deal[44] of pressing[45], said, that[46] he was really[47] ashamed[48] to keep up an intimacy[49] with one who could be guilty of[50] such monstrous[51] indiscretions[52] as Goldsmith had just[53] exhibited[54] in the square. Goldsmith, with great earnestness, protested[55] he was unconscious[56] of what was meant. "Why[57]," said Burke, "did you not exclaim[58], as you were looking at[59] those puppets[60], what[61] stupid beasts[62] the crowd must be, for[63] staring with such admiration at[64] those painted[65], inanimate[66] things, while a man of your talents passed by[67] unnoticed."[68] Goldsmith was horror-stricken[69], and said, "Surely[70], surely, my dear friend, I did not say so." "Nay," replied Burke, "if you had not said so, how should I have known it?" "That's true," answered Goldsmith, with great humility.[71] "I am very sorry[72]: it was very foolish. I do recollect that something of the kind passed through[73] my mind[74], but I did not think I had uttered[75] it." (*From the Half Hours*).

XIX. On[1] Popular Superstition.[2]

Going yesterday to dine with an old acquaintance, I had the misfortune to find his whole family very much dejected.[3]

---

[38] kränken. [39] *say*, and he begged. [40] *say*, that he would, without translating *that*. [41] ſich zuziehen. [42] beleidigen. [43] unwillig, [44] viel. [45] Nöthigen. [46] omit *that*. [47] wirklich. [48] beſchämt. [49] vertraulich umgehen. [50] ſich zu Schulden kommen laſſen. [51] ungeheuer. [52] Unſchicklichkeit. [53] eben. [54] begehen. [55] verſichern. [56] unbewußt, and say, *of that, what*. [57] wie. [58] laut rufen. [59] auf. [60] Puppe, *f.* [61] was für. [62] Geſchöpf, *n.* [63] *say*, since it stared. [64] anſtaunen. [65] bemalt. [66] leblos. [67] vorbeigehen. [68] unbeachtet. [69] *say*, seized by terror von Schrecken ergriffen. [70] wahrlich. [71] Demüthigkeit. [72] es thut mir ſehr leid. [73] durchkreuzen. [74] Kopf, *m.* [75] äußern.

[1] über. [2] Volksaberglauben, *m.* [3] beſtürzt, or niedergeſchlagen.

Upon asking him the occasion[4] of it, he told me that his wife had dreamt[5] a very strange[6] dream[7] the night before[8], which[9] they were afraid[10] portended[11] some misfortune to themselves or to their children. At her coming into the room, I observed a settled[12] melancholy[13] in her countenance[14], which[15] I should have been troubled[16] for, had I not heard from whence it proceeded.[17] We were no sooner[18] sat down[19], but[20], after having looked upon me a little while, "My dear," says she, turning to her husband, "you may now see the stranger that was in the candle last night." Soon after this, they began to talk of family affairs.[21] A little boy at the lower[22] end of the table told her, that he was to go into Join-hand[23] on Thursday. "Thursday!" says she; "No, child, if it please[24] God, you shall not begin upon[25] Childermas-day:[26] tell your writing-master[27] that Friday will be soon[28] enough." I was reflecting[29] with[30] myself on[31] the oddness[32] of her fancy[33], and wondering[34] that any one would establish[35] it as a rule[36] to lose a day in every week. In the midst of these my musings[37], she desired me to reach[38] her a little[39] salt upon the top[40] of my knife, which I did in[41] such a trepidation[42] and hurry[43] of obedience, that I let it drop[44] by[45] the way; at which[46] she immediately startled[47],

---

[4] to ask the occasion nach der Urſache fragen. [5] träumen. [6] ſeltſam. [7] Traum, *m.* [8] vorher. [9] *say*, as they were. [10] fürchten. [11] vorbedeuten. [12] feſt ausgeprägt. [13] Schwermuth, *f.* [14] Geſicht, *n.* [15] for which worüber. [16] betrübt. [17] kommen. [18] ſobald. [19] ſich ſetzen. [20] als. [21] Familienangelegenheit. [22] unter, a comparative, of which there is no positive, except the Preposition unten; thus also, ober from oben. [23] *say*, into the class where they begin to join hand; class Klaſſe; to join hand die Grundſtriche zuſammenfügen. [24] gefallen. [25] an, with the Def. Art. [26] Kindertag, *m.* [27] Schreibelehrer. [28] früh. [29] zu ſinnen anfangen. [30] bei. [31] über. [32] Sonderbarkeit. [33] Grille, *f.* [34] ſich wundern. [35] feſtſetzen. [36] Regel. [37] Gedanke, *m.* [38] reichen. [39] wenig. [40] Spitze, *f.* [41] mit. [42] Beben. [43] Eilfertigkeit. [44] to let drop verſchütten. [45] unter, with the Gen. only in this combination. [46] worüber. [47] erſchrecken.

and said it fell towards her. Upon this, I looked very blank[48], and, observing the concern[49] of the whole table, began to consider[50] myself, with some confusion[51], as a person[52] that had brought a disaster[53] upon[54] the family. The lady, however, recovering herself[55] after a little space, said to her husband, with a sigh[56], "My dear, misfortunes[57] never come singly."[58] My friend, I found, acted[59] but[60] an under[61] part[62] at his table; and, being a man of more good-nature[63] than understanding[64], thinks[65] himself obliged[66] to fall in with[67] all the passions[68] and humours[69] of his yoke-fellow.[70] "Do not you remember, child," says she, "that the pigeon-house[71] fell[72] the very[73] afternoon that[74] our careless[75] wench[76] spilt[77] the salt upon the table?" "Yes, my dear," says he; "and the next post brought us the account of the battle of Almanza." The reader may guess at[78] the figure[79] I made[80] after having done all[81] this mischief.[82] I dispatched[83] my dinner as soon[84] as I could, with my usual taciturnity[85], when, to my utter confusion, the lady seeing me quitting[86] my knife and fork, and laying them across[87] one another upon my plate[88], desired me that I would humour[89] her so far as[90] to take them out of that figure[91], and place them side by side.[92] What the absurdity[93] was which I had committed[94],

---

[48] ſehr verwirrt ausſehen. [49] Beſtürzung. [50] betrachten. [51] Beſchämung. [52] Menſch. [53] Unheil anſtiften. [54] in. [55] ſich erholen. [56] Seufzer, *m.* [57] Unglück, *n.*. the plural of which is taken from the compound Unglücksfall. [58] allein. [59] ſpielen. [60] nur. [61] untergeordnet. [62] Rolle, *f.* [63] Gutmüthigkeit. [64] Verſtand. [65] halten für. [66] verpflichtet. [67] nachgeben, with Dat [68] Leidenſchaft. [69] Laune, *f.* [70] Ehehälfte. [71] Taubenhaus, *n.* [72] herabfallen. [73] *say*, same. [74] *say*, when. [75] unbehutſam. [76] Mädchen. [77] verſchütten. [78] errathen. [79] Bild, *n.* [80] darſtellen. [81] anrichten. [82] Elend. [83] verzehren. [84] *say*, as quick. [85] Schweigſamkeit. [86] aus den Händen laſſen. [87] kreuzweis über. [88] Teller, *m.* [89] willfahren, with Dat. [90] *say*. and. [91] Lage. [92] *say*, near each other. [93] Abgeſchmacktheit. [94] *say*, made myself guilty of ſich ſchuldig machen, with Gen.

I did not know, but I suppose[95] there was some traditionary[96] superstition in it; and therefore, in[97] obedience[98] to[99] the lady of the house, I disposed of[100] my knife and fork in two parallel[101] lines, which is the figure I shall always lay them in for[102] the future[103], though I do not know any reason for it. It is not difficult for a man to see that a person has conceived[104] an aversion[105] to[106] him. For my own part[107], I quickly found[108] by[109] the lady's looks, that she regarded me as a very odd[110] kind of fellow, with an unfortunate aspect[111]; for which reason, I took my leave[112] immediately after dinner, and withdrew[113] to my own lodgings. Upon my return[114] home, I fell[115] into a profound contemplation[116] on[117] the evils that attend[118] these superstitious[119] follies[120] of mankind; how they subject[121] us to the imaginary[122] afflictions[123], and additional[124] sorrows[125], that do not properly[126] come within our lot.[127]

As if the natural calamities[128] of life were not sufficient for it, we turn[129] the most indifferent[130] circumstances into misfortunes, and suffer as much from trifling[131] accidents[132] as from real evil. I have known the shooting[133] of a star[134] spoil[135] a night's rest[136]; and have seen a man in love[137] grow pale[138], and lose his appetite, upon[139] the plucking[140] of a merry-thought.[141] A screech-owl[142] at midnight has

---

[95] vermuthen. [96] überliefert. [97] aus. [98] Willfährigkeit. [99] gegen. [100] ordnen. [101] parallel, which can be joined to *lines* without declension, or declined as an Adjective. [102] in. [103] Zukunft. [104] faſſen. [105] Widerwille, *m.* [106] gegen. [107] *say*, what concerns myself. [108] erſehen. [109] aus. [110] ſonderbar. [111] Miene, *f.* [112] Abſchied, and omit *my*. [113] ſich begeben. [114] *say*, the home return Heimweg, *m.* [115] ſinken. [116] Betrachtung. [117] über. [118] begleiten. [119] abergläubiſch. [120] Thorheit [121] unterwerfen. [122] eingebildet. [123] Leiden. [124] unnöthig. [126] Sorge. [126] eigentlich. [127] einem zugetheilt ſein to come within one's lot. [128] Trübſal, *f.* (*pl.* –e). [129] verwandeln. [130] gleichgültig. [131] geringfügig. [132] Zufall. [133] Herabſchießen. [134] Sternſchnuppe, *f.* [135] verderben. [136] *say*, the sleep of a night. [137] *man in love* express by verliebt, used as a Substantive. [138] erbleichen. [139] bei. [140] zerreißen [141] Bruſtbeinchen. [142] Nachteule, *f.*

alarmed[143] a family more than a band of robbers[144]; nay, the voice of a cricket[145] has struck[146] more terror[147] than the roaring[148] of a lion. There is nothing so inconsiderable[149], which may not appear dreadful to an imagination that is filled with omens[150] and prognostics[151]: a rusty nail or a crooked[152] pin shoot up[153] into[154] prodigies.[155] I remember I was once in a mixed assembly, that was full of noise and mirth, when on a sudden[156] an old lady unluckily[157] observed there were thirteen of us[158] in company. This remark struck[159] a panic[160] terror into several who were present[161], insomuch[162] that one or two of the ladies were going to leave the room. I know but one way of fortifying[163] my soul against these gloomy[164] presages[165] and terrors of mind; and that is, by securing[166] to myself the friendship and protection[167] of that Being who disposes[168] of[169] events[170] and governs futurity.[171] He sees, at[172] one view[173], the whole thread[174] of my existence[175], —not only that part of it which I have already passed through[176], but that which runs forward[177] into all the depths of eternity. When I lay me down to sleep, I recommend myself to his care[178], —when I awake[179] I give myself up[180] to His direction.[181] Amidst all the evils that threaten[182] me, I will look up[183] to Him for[184] help; and question[185] not but[186] He will either avert[187] them, or turn[188] them to my advantage.[189] Though I know neither

---

[143] erſchrecken. [144] Räuberbande, *f.* [145] Heimchen. [146] eingejagt. [147] Schreck. [148] Brüllen. [149] unbedeutend. [150] Anzeichen. [151] Vorbedeutung, [152] krümmen. [153] aufſchwellen. [154] zu. [155] Ungeheuer, *n.* [156] plötzlich. [157] zum Unglück. [158] put *of us* before thirteen. [159] erregen. [160] gewaltig. [161] zugegen. [162] bis zu dem Grade. [163] ſtählen. [164] düſter. [165] Ahnung. [166] zuſichern. [167] Schutz, *m.* [168] verfügen. [169] über. [170] Ereigniß, *n.* [171] Zukunft. [172] auf. [173] Blick. [174] Kette, *f.* [175] Daſein. [176] verleben. [177] ſich hinziehen. [178] Obhut, *f.* [179] erwachen. [180] ſich hingeben. [181] Leitung. [182] drohen, with Dat. [183] hinaufblicken. [184] nach. [185] *say*, doubt zweifeln. [186] *say*, that. [187] abwenden. [188] lenken. [189] Wohl, *n.*, or Frommen.

the time nor the manner of the death I am to die, I am not at all solicitous[190] about[191] it; because I am sure that He knows them both; and that He will not fail[192] to comfort[193] and support[194] me under them.—*Addison.*

XX.—On Stories of Ghosts.[1]

At my coming to London it was some time before[2] I could settle myself[3] in a house to[4] my liking.[5] I was forced to quit my first lodgings by reason of[6] an officious[7] landlady[8], that would be asking me every morning how I slept. I then fell[9] into an honest family, and lived very happily for above a week, when my landlord, who was a jolly[10] good-natured[11] man, took it into his head[12] that I wanted company, and therefore would frequently come into[13] my chamber[14] to keep[15] me from being alone. This I bore for two or three days, but telling me one day that he was afraid I was melancholy[16], I thought it was high time for me to be gone[17], and accordingly took[18] new lodgings that very night. About a week after, I found my jolly landlord, who, as I said before, was an honest hearty[19] man, had put[20] me into an advertisement[21] of[22] the *Daily Courrant*, in[23] the following words: "Whereas, a melancholy man left his lodgings on Thursday last in[24] the afternoon, and was afterwards seen going to Islington; if any one can give notice[25] of him to R. B., fishmonger[26] in the Strand, he shall be very well rewarded[27] for his pains."[28]

---

[190] bekümmert. [191] um. [192] unterlaſſen. [193] tröſten. [194] ſtützen,

[1] Geiſtergeſchichte. [2] ehe. [3] ſich niederlaſſen. [4] nach. [5] Wunſch, *m.* [6] in Folge. [7] dienſtfertig. [8] Wirthin. [9] gerathen. [10] heiter. [11] gutmüthig. [12] es ſich einfallen laſſen. [13] auf. [14] Zimmer, *n.* [15] verhindern, and *say*, that I should not be alone. [16] ſchwermüthig. [17] ſich davon machen. [18] ſich (Dat.) miethen. [19] herzlich gut. [20] einrücken, and *say*, about me an advertisement. [21] Anzeige. [22] *say*, into. [23] mit without Art. [24] an. [25] Meldung. [26] Fiſchhändler. [27] belohnen. [28] Mühe, *sing.*

As I am the best man in the world to keep my own counsel[29], and my landlord, the fishmonger, not knowing my name, this incident[30] of my life was never discovered to[31] this[32] day. I am now settled[33] with[34] a widow woman, who has a great many children, and complies[35] with[36] my humour[37] in everything. I do not remember that we have exchanged[38] a word together these five years. My coffee comes into my chamber every morning without my asking for[39] it; if I want fire, I point[40] to[41] my chimney; if water, to my basin[42]; upon which my landlady nods[43], as much as to say[44], she takes[45] my meaning[46], and immediately obeys[47] my signals.[48] She has likewise modelled[49] her family so well, that when her little boy offers[50] to pull[51] me by the coat, or prattle[52] in my face, his eldest sister immediately calls him off[53], and bids[54] him not to disturb[55] the gentleman. At my first entering into the family, I was troubled[56] with the[57] civility of their rising up to[58] me every time I came into the room; but my landlady observing that upon[59] these occasions I always cried "Pish,"[60] and went out again, has forbidden[61] any[62] such ceremony[63] to be used in the house; so that at present I walk into the kitchen or parlour without being taken notice of[64], or giving[65] any interruption[66] to[67] the business or discourse[68] of the family. The maid will[69] ask her mistress, though I am by[70], whether the gentleman is ready[71] to go

---

[29] ſein Geheimmniß wahren. [30] Vorfall. [31] bis auf. [32] heutig, with the Definite Article. [33] angeſiedelt. [34] bei. [35] ſich richten. [36] nach. [37] Laune, *f.*; take plural. [38] wechſeln. [39] bitten um. [40] weiſen. [41] auf. [42] Waſchbecken, *n.* [43] nicken. [44] *say*, if she wished to say. [45] *say*, understands. [46] *say*, my wish. [47] gehorchen, with Dat. [48] Zeichen, and *say*, given signal. [49] modeln. [50] ſich anſchicken. [51] zupfen. [52] ſchwatzen. [53] wegrufen. [54] heißen. [55] ſtören. [56] beläſtigen. [57] *say*, their. [58] *say*, as they rose up aufſtehen vor. [59] bei. [60] pfui. [61] verbieten, with the Infin. Act. [62] all. [63] Höflichkeitsformen. [64] berückſichtigen. [65] machen. [66] Unterbrechung. [67] in. [68] Geſpräch, *n.* [69] also in German expressed by the Future. [70] zugegen. [71] bereit.

to dinner[72], and the mistress (who is indeed an excellent housewife) scolds[73] at[74] the servants[75] as heartily before my face as behind my back. In short, I move[76] up and down[77] the[78] house, and enter into all companies with the same liberty as a cat or any other domestic animal[79], and am[80] as[81] little suspected[82] of telling anything that I hear or see. I remember last winter there[83] were several[84] young girls of[85] the neighbourhood sitting about the fire with my landlady's[86] daughters, and telling stories of spirits[87] and apparitions.[88] Upon my opening the door the young women[89] broke off[90] their discourse[91], but my landlady's daughters telling them that it was nobody but the gentleman (for that is the name which I go by[92] in the neighbourhood as well as in the family), they went on[93] without minding[94] me. I seated myself by[95] the candle that stood on a table at[96] one end of the room; and, pretending[97] to read a book that I took out of my pocket, heard several dreadful stories of ghosts[98] as pale[99] as ashes[100] that had stood at[101] the feet[102] of a bed, or walked over a churchyard[103] by[104] moonlight[105]; and of others that had been conjured[106] into the Red Sea[107], for disturbing[108] people's rest, and drawing[109] their curtains[110] at[111] midnight. As one spirit raised[112] another, I observed[113] that at the end of

---

[72] zu Tiſche gehen. [73] ſchelten. [74] auf. [75] Dienſtbote, *m.* [76] ſich bewegen. [77] auf und ab. [78] *say*, in the. [79] Hausthier, *n.* [80] ſtehen. [81] eben ſo. [82] *say*, in suspicion Verdacht, *m.* [83] not expressed. [84] mehrere. [85] aus. [86] *say better*, with the daughters of, etc. [87] Geiſt, *m.* (*pl.*—er). [88] Erſcheinung. [89] Dirne. [90] abbrechen. [91] Unterredung. [92] unter. [93] fortfahren. [94] ſich bekümmern um. [95] an. [96] an. [97] ſich die Miene geben als ob, lit., to give one's self the appearance as if. [98] Geſpenſt, *n.* (*pl.*—er.) [99] weiß. [100] Aſche, *f.* sing. [101] an. [102] take singular. [103] Kirchhof, *m.* [104] bei, with the Definite Article. [105] Mondſchein. [106] bannen. [107] Meer, *n.* [108] *say*, because they had disturbed people in their sleep, and drawn. [109] fortziehen. [110] Vorhang. [111] um. [112] erſtehen laſſen. [113] treat *I observed that*, etc., as an adverbial sentence, led by *as* wie; and let *the whole company*, etc., be the chief sentence.

every story the whole company closed[114] their ranks, and crowded[115] about the fire. I took notice[116] in particular[117] of a little boy, who was[118] so attentive[119] to every story, that I am mistaken[120] if he ventures[121] to go to bed by himself[122] this twelvemonth.[123] Indeed, they talked so long, that the imaginations[124] of the whole assembly were manifestly crazed[125], and I am sure will be the worse[126] for it[127] as long as they live. I heard one of the girls, that had looked upon me over her shoulder, asking the company how long I had been in the room, and whether I did not look[128] paler[129] than I used[130] to do. This put me under some apprehensions[131] that I should be forced to explain[132] myself if I did not retire[133]; for which reason I took my candle in my hand and went up into my chamber, not without wondering[134] at[135] this unaccountable[136] weakness[137] in reasonable creatures, that they should love[138] to astonish and terrify[139] one another. Were I a father, I should take[140] a[141] particular[142] care[143] to preserve[144] my children from[145] these little horrors[146] of imagination[147] which they are apt[148] to contract[149] when they are young, and are not able[150] to shake off[151] when they are in[152] years. I have known a soldier that has entered a breach[153] affrighted[154] at[155] his own shadow, and look pale[156] upon

---

[114] to close their ranks ſich enger zuſammenſchließen. [115] ſich näher drängen. [116] bemerken. [117] beſonders. [118] *say*, who followed verfolgen. [119] *say*, attentively aufmerkſam. [120] ſich irren. [121] wagen. [122] allein. [123] *say*, during the next year. [124] take the singular. [125] to be crazy verwildern. [126] I am the worse ich habe zu leiden. [127] darum. [128] ausſehen. [129] blaß, the Comparative of which takes no modification of the Vowel. [130] pflegen, and omit *to do*. [131] fürchten laſſen. [132] erklären. [133] ſich zurückziehen. [134] ſich wundern. [135] über. [136] unerklärbar. [137] Schwachheit. [138] add *it*. [139] in Erſtaunen und Furcht ſetzen. [140] tragen. [141] not expressed. [142] say adverbially beſonders. [143] Sorge. [144] bewahren. [145] vor. [146] Schreckniß, *n*. [147] Phantaſie. [148] geneigt. [149] ſich einprägen. [150] vermögen. [151] los werden. [152] bei. [153] ſich in eine Breſche ſtürzen. [154] erſchrecken. [155] über. [156] bleich werden.

a little scratching[157] at[158] his door, who[159] the day before had marched up[160] against a battery[161] of cannon.[162] There are instances of persons who have been terrified, even to distraction[163], at the figure[164] of a tree, or, the shaking[165] of a bulrush.[166] The truth of it is, I look upon[167] a sound imagination as the greatest blessing of life, next to[168] a clear judgment[169] and a good conscience.[170] In the mean time, since there are very few whose minds[171] are not more or less subject[172] to these dreadful thoughts and apprehensions[173], we ought to arm[174] ourselves against them by the dictates[175] of reason[176] and religion, " to pull[177] the old woman out of our hearts," as Persius expresses it, and extinguish[178] those impertinent[179] notions[180] which we imbibed[181] at a time that we were not able to judge of[182] their absurdity.[183] Or, if we believe, as many wise and good men have done, that there are such phantoms[184] and apparitions as[185] those I have been speaking of, let us endeavour[186] to establish to[187] ourselves an interest[188] in[189] Him who holds the reins[190] of the whole creation in His hand, and moderates[191] them after[192] such a manner, that it is impossible for one being to break loose[193] upon another without His knowledge and permission. For my own part, I am apt to join[194] in opinion[195] with those who believe that all the regions[196] of nature swarm[197] with[198] spirits, and that we

---

[157] Kratzen. [158] an. [159] *say*, although he. [160] hinaufſtürmen. [161] Batterie, *f.* [162] Kanone, *f.*, take the plural. [163] Wahnſinn. [164] Geſtalt. [165] Schwanken. [166] Binſe, *f.* [167] betrachten. [168] nach. [169] Verſtand. [170] Gewiſſen. [171] Gemüth, *n.* (*pl.*—er). [172] unterworfen. [173] Beſorgniß, *f.* (*pl.*—e). [174] waffnen. [175] Gebot, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [176] Vernunft. [177] ziehen. [178] auslöſchen. [179] ſinnlos. [180] Begriff. [181] einſaugen. [182] beurtheilen. [183] Abgeſchmacktheit. [184] Gebild, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [185] gleich, with Dat. [186] verſuchen. [187] ſichern für. [188] günſtige Theilnahme. [189] bei. [190] Zügel, *m.* [191] lenken. [192] auf. [193] ſich los ſtürzen. [194] to join with ſich anſchließen, with Dat. [195] Glaube, *m.* and add the Definite Article. [196] Raum, *m.* [197] ſchwärmen. [198] von.

have multitudes[199] of spectators on[200] all our actions, when we think ourselves most alone; but instead of terrifying[201] myself with[202] such a notion[203] I am wonderfully pleased[204] to think that I am always engaged[205] with such an innumerable[206] society, in searching out[207] the wonders of the creation, and joining in[208] the same concert[209] of[210] praise[211] and adoration.[212]—*Addison.*

XXI.

My dear Friend,

Having received no answer to[1] all the letters which I wrote you a month ago, I must confess I am a little uneasy. I should almost believe you had forgotten me, if I did not know that such a thing was quite impossible. I suppose you have left home[2] for[3] some time, in order to pay visits[4] to your friends and relations; I therefore hope to hear from you as soon as you have returned.[5] In my preceding[6] letters, I have given you an account of[7] the many new things which I saw during[8] my journey in this foreign country. I will now continue[9] with my narrative. After passing[10] a few days with our friends in E., I rode northwards[11], accompanied by a young man whose acquaintance I had made in that small town. We arrived here safely about ten days ago. The last part of our journey was marked[12] by an accident[13] which would have made it the last part of our life, if Heaven had not protected us. My companion had taken with him a little dog, of which he was very fond.[14] I did not say anything against it,

---

[199] *say*, millions. [200] bei. [201] ängſtigen. [202] über. [203] Anſicht. [204] erfreut. [205] beſchäftigen. [206] zahllos. [207] erforſchen. [208] mit einſtimmen in. [209] Geſang, *m.* [210] voll. [211] Preis, *m.* [212] Anbetung.

[1] auf. [2] von Hauſe abreiſen. [3] ſeit. [4] Beſuche abſtatten. [5] zurückkehren. [6] vorig. [7] berichten. [8] auf. [9] fortfahren. [10] zubringen. [11] nordwärts. [12] bezeichnen. [13] Zufall. [14] ſehr gern haben.

although I wished in my heart that he had left it at home. Now, this young man sometimes allowed[15] the little dog to spring out of the carriage, that it might run by the side of us.[16] Once, when he had let it out[17], we were driving up[18] a steep[19] road; on one side was a great wood, and on the other a deep precipice.[20] It was noonday, and the sun shone bright[21], when all[22] of a sudden, from the wood-side[23], out rushed[24] a great wolf, seized[25] the dog by the throat[26], and rushed up[27] the hill again with him in his mouth. This was done in less than a quarter of a minute. We all saw it; yet neither we nor the servants had the presence of mind[28] nor the time to draw our pistols, or to do anything to save the dog. The horses had got frightened[29], but they went on[30] pretty[31] well for some time, until they became so restless[32] that they could not be managed.[33] They threw our carriage upon one side, within[34] two feet of the brink[35] of a precipice thirty yards deep. Here we lay for a few moments, whilst our horses flounced[36] and tried to go on. At last our servants, by[37] the help of the coachman, succeeded[38] in disengaging[39] them from the carriage, and they went off[40] at full speed.[41] A gentleman on horseback[42], who came[43] the[44] same way, and saw our distress, immediately rode up[45], and in the kindest manner inquired whether he could assist us; and having seen us fairly[46] rescued[47] from our broken vehicle[48], remounted[49] his horse, rode back to the inn[50], and soon returned with another carriage.

---

[15] laſſen. [16] neben uns her. [17] hinauslaſſen. [18] hinauffahren. [19] ſteil. [20] Abgrund, *m.* [21] hell. [22] ganz. [23] vom Walde her. [24] hervorſtürzen. [25] ergreifen. [26] Kehle, *f.* [27] hinaufeilen. [28] Geiſtesgegenwart, *f.* [29] erſchrecken. [30] entlang gehen. [31] ziemlich. [32] unſtät. [33] zügeln. [34] innerhalb. [35] Rand. *m.* [36] um ſich ſchlagen. [37] mit, and leave out the Article. [38] I succeed es gelingt mir. [39] losmachen. [40] dahin laufen. [41] in vollem Galopp. [42] zu Pferde. [43] daher kommen. [44] take the Gen. [45] auf uns zu reiten. [46] ſicher. [47] befreien. [48] Fuhrwerk, *n.* [49] wieder beſteigen. [50] Wirthshaus, *n.*

XXII. Paoli and Napoleon.

General Paoli, who had lived in England ever since the termination[1] of that civil war[2] in which Charles Buonaparte served under his banner[3], was cheered[4], when the great French Revolution first broke out, with[5] the hope that liberty was about to be restored[6] to Corsica. He came to Paris, was received with applause[7] as a tried[8] friend of freedom, and appointed[9] governor[10] of his native island[11], which for some time he ruled[12] wisely and happily. But as the revolution advanced[13], Paoli, like most other wise men, became satisfied[14] that license[15] was more likely[16] to be established[17] by its leaders[18], than law and rational liberty; and, avowing[19] his aversion to[20] the growing[21] principles[22] of Jacobinism[23], and the scenes[24] of tumult[25] and bloodshed[26] to which they gave rise[27], he was denounced[28] in the National Assembly[29] as the enemy of France. An expedition[30] was sent to deprive him of his government[31], under the command[32] of La Combe, Michel, and Salicetti, one of the Corsican deputies[33] to[34] the Convention[35]; and Paoli called on[36] his countrymen to take[37] arms in his and their own defence.[38]

Buonaparte happened[39] at that time (1793) to have leave of absence[40] from his regiment, and to be[41] in Corsica

---

[1] Beendigung. [2] Bürgerkrieg, *m.* [3] Panier, *n.* [4] erheitern. [5] durch. [6] wiedergeben. [7] Beifall. [8] versuchen. [9] ernennen zu. [10] Statthalter. [11] Geburtsinsel, *f.* [12] regieren. [13] fortschreiten. [14] überzeugen. [15] Freiheit. [16] wahrscheinlich. [17] einführen. [18] Führer. [19] offen gestehen. [20] Widerwille, *m.*, gegen. [21] zunehmen. [22] Grundsatz. [23] Jacobinismus, *m.* [24] Auftritt. [25] Tumult, *m.* (Gen.—es). [26] Blutvergießen. [27] Veranlassung geben zu. [28] verschreien. [29] National Versammlung. [30] Kriegsheer, *n.* [31] Statthalterschaft. [32] Oberbefehl. [33] Bevollmächtigt. [34] für. [35] Convent, *m.* [36] auffordern. [37] ergreifen. [38] Vertheidigung. [39] express by the Adverb gerade. [40] Urlaub haben. [41] sich befinden.

on[42] a visit[43] to[44] his mother. He had fitted up[45] a little reading-room[46] at the top[47] of the house as the quietest part of it, and was spending his mornings in[48] study[49], and his evenings among his family and old acquaintances, when the arrival of the expedition threw the island into convulsion.[50] Paoli, who knew him well, did all he could to enlist[51] him in[52] his cause.[53] He used, among other flatteries[54], to clap[55] him on the back, and tell him he was "one of Plutarch's men." But Napoleon had satisfied himself that Corsica was too small a country to maintain[56] independence[57]—that she must fall under the rule[58] either of France or England; and that her interests[59] would be best served[60] by adhering to[61] the former. He therefore resisted all Paoli's offers[62], and tendered[63] his sword to the service[64] of Salicetti. He was appointed[65] provisionally[66] to[67] the command[68] of a battalion[69] of national guards[70]; and the first military service[71] on[72] which he was employed[73] was the reduction[74] of a small fortress, called the Torre di Capitello, near Ajaccio. He took[75] it, but was soon besieged[76] in it, and he and his garrison[77], after a gallant[78] defence, and living for some time on[79] horseflesh[80], were glad[81] to evacuate[82] the tower[83] and escape[84] to the sea. The English government[85] now began to reinforce[86] Paoli; and the cause of the French party[87] seemed for the moment to be desperate.[88] The Buonapartes were banished[89] from Corsica; and their mother

---

[42] zu with the Def. Art. [43] Beſuch. [44] bei. [45] einrichten. [46] Leſezimmer, *n.* [47] unter dem Giebel. [48] mit. [49] Studiren. [50] im Innerſten erſchüttern. [51] gewinnen. [52] für. [53] Sache, *f.* [54] Schmeichelei. [55] klopfen. [56] behaupten. [57] Unabhängigkeit. [58] Herrſchaft. [59] Vortheil, *m.* [60] fördern. [61] Anhänglichkeit an. [62] Antrag. [63] anbieten zu. [64] Dienſt. [65] beſtellen. [66] vorläufig. [67] zu. [68] Befehl. [69] Bataillon, *n.* [70] Volksgarde, *f.* [71] Kriegsdienſt. [72] für. [73] beſchäftigen. [74] Eroberung. [75] einnehmen. [76] belagern. [77] Beſatzung. [78] tapfer. [79] von. [80] Pferdefleiſch, *n.* [81] froh. [82] räumen. [83] Thurm, *m.* [84] ſich flüchten. [85] Regierung. [86] verſtärken. [87] Partei, *f.* [88] hoffnungslos. [89] verbannen!

and sisters took refuge[90] first at Nice[91], and afterwards at Marseilles, where for some time they suffered all the inconveniences[92] of exile[93] and poverty. Napoleon rejoined[94] his regiment. He had chosen France for[95] his country[96]; and seems, in truth, to have preserved[97] little or no affection[98] for his native soil.[99]— *Lockhart's Life of Napoleon.*

XXIII. Napoleon at Toulon.

Buonaparte's first military service occurred[1] in the summer of 1793. The king of France had been put to death[2] on the 21st of January in that year; and in less than a month afterwards, the Convention had declared war against England. The murder[3] of the king, alike imprudent and atrocious[4], had, in fact, united the princes of Europe against the revolutionary cause[5]; and within[6] France itself, a strong reaction[7] took place.[8] The people of Toulon, the great port and arsenal of France on[9] the Mediterranean, partook[10] these sentiments[11]; and invited the English and Spanish fleets off[12] their coast to come to their assistance[13], and garrison[14] their city. The allied admirals took possession[15] accordingly of Toulon; and a motley[16] force[17] of English, Spaniards, and Neapolitans, prepared[18] to defend the place. In the harbour and roads[19], there were about twenty-five ships of the line[20], and the city contained immense naval and military stores[21] of every description[22],

---

[90] Zuflucht with the Pronoun Possessive. [91] Nizza. [92] Beſchwerde. [93] Verbannung. [94] ſich wieder begeben zu. [95] zu. [96] Heimath. [97] bewahren. [98] Zuneigung. [99] Geburtsland, *n.*

[1] *say*, fell into. fallen in. [2] hinrichten. [3] Ermordung. [4] gräßlich. [5] *say*, the cause of the revolution. [6] in. [7] Rückwirkung. [8] Statt finden [9] an. [10] theilen. [11] Anſicht. [12] vor. [13] er kommt mir zu Hülfe he comes to my assistance. [14] Beſatzung werfen in. [15] Beſitz. [16] bunt. [17] Macht. [18] Anſtalten treffen. [19] Rhede, *f.*, used in sing. [20] Linienſchiff, *n.* [21] *say*, stores (Vorräthe) for the navy, etc. [22] Art, *f.*

so that the defection[23] of Toulon was regarded as a calamity[24] of the first order[25] by the revolutionary government.

This event occurred in the midst of that period which has received the name of *the reign of terror*.[26] The streets of Paris were streaming with[27] innocent blood. Robespierre was glutting[28] himself with murder. Fear and rage[29] were the passions that divided mankind; and their struggles[30] produced[31] on either side[32] the likeness[33] of some epidemic[34] frenzy.[35] Whatever else the government wanted, vigour to repel[36] aggressions[37] from without[38], was displayed[39] in abundance.[40] Two armies[41] immediately marched[42] upon[43] Toulon; and after a series[44] of actions[45], in which the passes[46] in the hills behind the town were forced[47], the place was at last invested[48] and a memorable[49] siege[50] commenced.

It was conducted[51] with little skill[52], first by Cartaux, a vain coxcomb[53], who had been a painter, and then by Doppet, an ex-physician[54] and a coward.[55] To watch[56] and report[57] on[58] the proceedings[59] of these chiefs[60], there were present in the camp several representatives[61] of the people, as they were called,—persons holding[62] no military character or rank, but acting as honourable[63] spies for the government at Paris. The interference[64] of these personages on this, as on many other occasions, was productive of[65] delays[66], blunders[67], and misfortunes; but the terror

---

[23] Abfall. [24] Unglück, *n.* [25] *say*, of the highest signification Bedeutung. [26] Schreckensherrſchaft. [27] von. [28] überladen. [29] Wuth, *f.* [30] Kampf, *m.* [31] erzeugen. [32] *say*, on both sides. [33] Bild, *n.* [34] anſteckend. [35] Wahnſinn. [36] zurücktreiben. [37] Anfall. [38] außen. [39] entfalten. [40] Fülle, *f.* [41] Heer, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [42] ziehen. [43] auf. [44] Reihe, *f.* [45] Gefecht, *n.* [46] Paß, *m.* [47] erſtürmen. [48] einſchließen. [49] denkwürdig. [50] Belagerung. [51] leiten. [52] Geſchick, *n.* [53] Geck, *m.* (Gen.—en). [54] Arzt außer Praxis. [55] Feigling. [56] wachen. [57] berichten. [58] über. [59] Verfahren, sing. [60] Haupt, *n.* [61] Stellvertreter. [62] bekleiden. [63] ehrenwerth. [64] Einmiſchung. [65] verurſachen. [66] Verzögerung. [67] Fehler, *m.*

which their ready[68] access[69] to the despotic government inspired[70], was often, on the other hand[71], useful in stimulating[72] the exertions of the military.[73] The younger Robespierre was one of the deputies at Toulon, and his name was enough to make his presence formidable.

Cartaux had not yet been superseded[74] when Napoleon Buonaparte made his appearance[75] at head quarters[76], with a commission[77] to assume[78] the command of the artillery.[79] It has been said that he owed[80] his appointment[81] to the private[82] regard[83] of Salicetti; but the high testimonials[84] he had received from the Military Academy[85] were more likely[86] to have served him; nor is it possible to suppose that he had been so long in the regiment of La Fere without being appreciated[87] by some of his superiors.[88] He had, besides, shortly before this time, excited attention by a pamphlet[89], called the "Supper of Beaucaire," in which the politics of the Jacobin party were spiritedly[90] supported; and of which he was afterwards so ashamed[91], that he took great pains[92] to suppress it. However this may have been, he was received almost with insolence[93] by Cartaux, who, strutting about[94] in a uniform[95] covered with gold lace[96], told him his assistance was not wanted[97], but he was welcome to partake[98] in his glory.

The commandant[99] of the artillery, on examining[100] the state of affairs[101], found much to complain of. They were still disputing which extremity[102] of the town should be the chief object[103] of attack, though at the one there were two

---

[68] ſchnell. [69] Zutritt. [70] einflößen. [71] andrerſeits. [72] anſpornen. [73] Militär, *n.* [74] abrufen. [75] erſcheinen. [76] im Hauptquartier. [77] Auftrag. [78] übernehmen. [79] Geſchütz, *n.* [80] verdanken. [81] Beſtallung. [82] perſönlich. [83] Achtung. [84] Zeugniß, *n.* [85] Schule. [86] *say*, have, as is more likely, served. [87] würdigen. [88] Vorgeſetzt. [89] Flugſchrift. [90] geiſtvoll. [91] ſich ſchämen, with Gen. [92] ſich Mühe geben. [93] Uebermuth, *m.* [94] umher ſtolziren. [95] Uniform, *f.* [96] Borte, *f.*, take the plural. [97] brauchen. [98] Theil nehmen an. [99] Befehlshaber. [100] unterſuchen. [101] Ding, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [102] Ende, *n.* [103] Hauptziel, *n.*

strong and regular fortifications, and at the other only a small and imperfect fort[104], called Malbosquet. On inspecting[105] their batteries[106], he found that the guns[107] were placed[108] about two gunshots[109] from the walls[110]; and that it was the custom to heat[111] the shot[112] at a distance from the place where they were to be discharged[113], in other words, to heat them to no purpose. Choosing officers of his own acquaintance to act under him, and exerting himself to collect[114] guns from all quarters[115], Buonaparte soon remedied[116] these disorders[117], and found himself master of an efficient[118] train[119] of 200 pieces[120]; and he then urged[121] the general to adopt[122] a wholly new plan of operations[123] in the future conduct of the siege.

The plan of Buonaparte appears now the simplest and most obvious[124] that could have been suggested[125]; yet it was not without great difficulty that he could obtain the approbation of the doctor, who had by this time superseded[126] the painter. "Your object[127]," said he, "is to make the English evacuate[128] Toulon. Instead of attacking them in the town, which must involve[129] a long series of operations[130], endeavour to establish[131] batteries so as to sweep[132] the harbour and roadstead.[133] If you can do this, the English ships must take their departure, and the English troops will certainly not remain behind them." He pointed out[134] a promontory nearly opposite the town, by getting the command[135] of which he was sure the desired effect must be accomplished.[136] "Gain La Grasse,"

---

[101] Fort, *n.* [105] beſichtigen. [106] Batterie, *f.* [107] Kanone, *f.* [108] ſtellen. [109] Flintenſchuß. [110] Wall, *m.* [111] glühend machen. [112] Kugel, *f.*, take the plural. [113] abfeuern. [114] zuſammen bringen. [115] Seite, *f.* [116] abhelfen, with Dat. [117] Unordnung. [118] wirkſam. [119] Artillerie-park, *m.* [120] Stück, *n.*, and why must the singular be used? [121] bringen in. [122] befolgen. [123] Operationsplan, *m.* [124] augenfällig. [125] vorſchlagen. [126] erſetzen. [127] Abſicht. [128] räumen. [129] zur Folge haben. [130] Unternehmung. [131] hinſtellen. [132] beſtreichen. [133] Rhede, *f.* [134] bezeichnen. [135] Beſitz. [136] erreichen.

said he, " and in two days Toulon falls." His reasoning[137] at length forced[138] conviction[139], and he was permitted to follow his own plan. A month before nothing could have been more easy; but within that time the enemy had perceived the importance of the promontory, which commands[140] the narrow passage[141] between the port and the Mediterranean, and fortified it so strongly, that it passed by[142] the name of the Little Gibraltar. It was necessary, therefore, to form extensive[143] batteries in the rear[144] of La Grasse, before there could be a prospect[145] of seizing[146] it. Buonaparte laboured[147] hard[148] all day, and slept every night in his cloak by the guns, until his works approached perfection. He also formed a large battery behind Malbosquet; but this he carefully concealed from[149] the enemy. It was covered[150] by a plantation of olives, and he designed[151] to distract[152] their attention by opening its fire for the first time when he should be about to make his great effort[153] against Little Gibraltar. But the representatives of the people had nearly spoiled everything. These gentlemen walking[154] their rounds[155], discovered the battery behind the olives, and inquiring how long it had been ready, were told for eight days. Not guessing with[156] what view[157] so many guns had been kept[158] so long idle[159], they ordered an immediate cannonade.[160] The English made a vigorous sally[161], and spiked[162] the guns before Buonaparte could reach the spot. On his arrival at[163] the eminence[164] behind[165], he perceived a long deep ditch fringed[166] with brambles[167] and willows[168],

---

[137] Ueberredung. [138] erzwingen. [139] Ueberzeugung. [140] beherrſchen. [141] Engpaß, *m.* [142] gehen unter. [143] weitläufig. [144] Rücken, *m.* [145] Ausſicht. [146] ſich bemächtigen, with Gen. [147] arbeiten. [148] ſchwer. [149] vor. [150] decken. [151] beabſichtigen. [152] ablenken. [153] Hauptangriff. [154] machen. [155] Runde, *f.* [156] in. [157] Abſicht. [158] halten. [159] unbeſchäftigt. [160] Kanonade, *f.* [161] Ausfall. [162] vernageln. [163] auf. [164] Anhöhe. [165] von der Rückſeite. [166] bewachſen. [167] Brombeerſtrauch, *m.* [168] Weide, *f.*

which he[169] thought might be turned to advantage.[170] He ordered a regiment of foot[171] to creep along the ditch, which they did without being discovered until they were close[172] upon[173] the enemy. General O'Hara, the English commander, mistook[174] them for[175] some of his own allies[176], and, rushing out[177] to give them some directions[178], was wounded and made prisoner.[179] The English were dispirited[180] when they lost their general; they retreated[181], and the French were at liberty[182] to set about[183] the repair[184] of their battery. In this affair[185] much blood was shed. Napoleon himself received a bayonet thrust[186] in his thigh[187], and fell into the arms of Muiron, who carried him off[188] the field. Such was the commencement of their brotherly friendship. His wound, however, did not prevent him from continuing his labours behind Little Gibraltar.

That fort had very nearly been seized[189] by a sort of accident[190] some time before his preparations were completed; a casual[191] insult[192] excited a sudden quarrel between the men in Buonaparte's trenches[193] and the Spaniards in Little Gibraltar. The French soldiers, without waiting for[194] orders, seized their arms, and rushed[195] to the assault[196] with fury, Napoleon coming up[197] perceived that the moment was favourable, and persuaded Doppet to support the troops with more regiments; but the doctor, marching at the head of his columns, was seized with[198] a panic[199] on seeing a man killed by his side, and

---

[169] *say*, as he. [170] vortheilhaft benutzen. [171] Fußvolk, *n.* [172] dicht. [173] an. [174] verkennen. [175] als. [176] Verbündet. [177] hervoreilen. [178] Anweiſung. [179] zu, with the Def. Art.; gefangen, treated as a Substantive. [180] entmuthigen. [181] ſich zurückziehen. [182] ungehindert. [183] ſich machen an. [184] Ausbeſſerung. [185] Gefecht, *n.* [186] Bayonett-ſtich. [187] Schenkel, *m.* [188] *say*, from the. [189] nehmen. [190] Zufall. [191] gelegentlich. [192] Beleidigung. [193] Schanzgraben, *m.* [194] abwarten. [195] eilen. [196] Sturm, *m.* [197] herankommen. [198] von. [199] paniſcher Schreck.

ordered a retreat, before anything could be effected. A few days after, this poltroon[200] was in his turn[201] superseded[202] by a brave veteran[203], General Dugommier, and Napoleon could at last count on having his efforts backed.[204] But, for the second time, the representatives did their best to ruin[205] his undertaking. The siege had now lasted four months: provisions were scarce in the camp; and these civilians[206], never being able to comprehend what was meant by bestowing[207] all this care[208] on a place so far below the city as Little Gibraltar, wrote to Paris that they saw no chance[209] of success[210], and hoped the government would agree with them that the siege ought to be abandoned.[211] Two days before this letter reached Paris, Toulon had fallen, and the representatives gave out that the despatch[212] was a forgery.[213] The moment had at last come when Buonaparte judged[214] it right[215] to make his grand attempt. During the night of the 17th of December, he threw 8,000 bombs[216] and shells[217] into Little Gibraltar, and the works being thus shattered[218], at daybreak, Dugommier commanded the assault. The French, headed[219] by the brave Muiron, rushed with impetuous[220] valour through the embrazures[221], and put[222] the whole garrison to the sword. The day was spent in arranging[223] the batteries, so as to command[224] the shipping[225], and next morning, so true had been Buonaparte's prophecy, when the French stood to[226] their posts[227], the English fleet was discovered to be already under weigh.[228]

---

[200] Memme, *f.* [201] ſeinerſeits. [202] erſetzen. [203] *say*, old soldier. [204] unterſtützen. [205] zu Schanden machen. [206] der bürgerliche Beamte. [207] verwenden. [208] Sorgfalt. [209] Ausſicht. [210] ein glücklicher Erfolg. [211] aufgeben. [212] Botſchaft. [213] *say*, forged verfälſchen. [214] halten für. [215] *say*, the right time. [216] Bombe, *f.* [217] Feuerkugel, *f.* [218] erſchüttern. [219] anführen. [220] ungeſtüm. [221] Schießſcharte, *f.* [222] to put to the sword über die Klinge ſpringen laſſen. [223] ordnen. [224] beherrſchen. [225] Rhederei. [226] an. [227] Poſten, *m.* [228] unter Segel gehen.

Then followed a fearful scene. The English would not quit Toulon without destroying the French ships and arsenals that had fallen into their possession; nor could they refuse[229] to carry with them[230] the Antijacobin inhabitants, who knew that their lives would be instantly sacrificed if they should fall into the hands of the victorious Republicans, and who now flocked[231] to the beach[232] to[233] the number of 14,000, praying for[234] the means of escape.[235] The burning of ships, the explosion[236] of magazines[237], the roar[238] of artillery, and the cries of these fugitives, filled up[239] many hours. At last, the men-of-war[240] were followed[241] by a flotilla[242] bearing these miserable exiles[243], —the walls were abandoned, and Dugommier took possession of the place. The Republicans found that all persons of condition[244], who had taken part[245] against them, had escaped; and their rage was to be contented[246] with meaner victims. A day or two having been suffered[247] to pass in quiet, a proclamation[248], apparently friendly, exhorted the workmen, who had been employed on the batteries of the besieged town, to muster[249] at head-quarters. One hundred and fifty poor men, who expected to be employed again in repairing the same fortifications[250], obeyed this summons[251], were instantly marched into a field, and shot in cold blood. Not less than a thousand were massacred[252] under circumstances equally atrocious. Buonaparte himself repelled[253] with indignation[254] the charge[255] of having had a hand in this butchery.[256] Even if he had, he was

---

[229] es verweigern. [230] mitnehmen. [231] ſich drängen. [232] Strand, *m.* [233] *say*, in the number of in der Anzahl von. [234] um. [235] Flucht. [236] das in die Luft Sprengen. [237] Pulverkammer, *f.* [238] Brüllen. [239] ausfüllen. [240] Kriegsſchiff, *n.* [241] *say*, a flotilla followed. [242] kleine Flotte. [243] Verbannt. [244] Stand. [245] Partei. [246] befriedigen. [247] after they had suffered. [248] Bekanntmachung. [249] ſich einfinden. [250] Feſtungswerk, *n.* [251] Aufruf, take sing. [252] niederhauen. [253] zurückweiſen. [254] Unwille, *m.* [255] Vorwurf. [256] Metzelei.

not the chief in command[257], and durst not have disobeyed[258] orders but[259] at[260] the sacrifice of his own life. It is on all sides[261] admitted that a family of royalists[262], being shipwrecked[263] on the coast near Toulon a few days after, were rescued from the hands of the ferocious[264] Republicans, solely[265] by his interference[266] and address.[267] Putting[268] himself at the head of some of his gunners[269], he obtained possession of the unhappy prisoners, quieted[270] the mob[271] by assuring them that they should all be publicly executed the next morning, and meanwhile sent them off during the night in artillery waggons, supposed to be conveying[272] stores. The recovery[273] of Toulon was a service of the first[274] importance to the government. It suppressed all insurrectionary[275] spirit[276] in the south of France; and placed[277] a whole army at[278] their disposal[279] elsewhere. But he to whose genius the success was due, did not at first obtain the credit[280] of his important achievement[281] at Paris. The representatives of the people never made their appearance on the eventful[282] morning at the Little Gibraltar until three hours after the troops were in possession of the best part of the fortifications. Then, indeed, they were seen, sword in hand, in the trenches, blustering[283] and swaggering[284] in safety. Yet these men did not blush to represent[285] themselves as having headed[286] the assault, while, in their account of the conflict, even the name of Buonaparte did not find a place. The truth could not, however, be concealed effectually[287]; and he was appointed

---

[257] Hauptbefehlshaber. [258] zuwider handeln, with Dat. [259] *say*, it be then. [260] mit. [261] allerſeits. [262] königlich geſinnt. [263] Schiffbruch leiden. [264] wüthend. [265] einzig. [266] Vermittelung. [267] Klugheit. [268] ſetzen. [269] Kanonier, *m.* [270] beſchwichtigen. [271] Pöbel, *m.* [272] fortſchaffen. [273] Wiedereinnahme. [274] *say*, of the highest. [275] aufrühreriſch. [276] Bewegung. [277] ſtillen. [278] zu. [279] Verfügung. [280] die gebührende Anerkennung für. [281] Heldenthat. [282] bedeutungsvoll. [283] toben. [284] lärmen. [285] vorgeben, followed by *as if they had*, [286] anführen. [287] am Ende..

to survey and arrange the whole line of fortifications on the Mediterranean coast of France.

It was during the siege of Toulon, that Napoleon, while constructing[288] a battery under the enemy's fire, had occasion to prepare[289] a despatch, and called out[290] for[291] some one who could use[292] a pen. A young sergeant, named Junot, leapt out[293], and, leaning on the breastwork, wrote as he dictated. As he finished, a shot struck[294] the ground by[295] his side, scattering[296] dust in abundance over him and everything near him. "Good," said the soldier, laughing, "this time we shall spare our sand." The cool gaiety[297] of this pleased Buonaparte: he kept[298] his eye on the man; and Junot came[299] in the sequel[300] to be marshal of France and duke of Abrantes.—*Lockhart's Life of Napoleon.*

XXIV. Josephine de Beauharnois.

Buonaparte, holding[1] the chief military command[2] in the capital, and daily rising[3] in[4] importance[5], from[6] the zeal and firmness of his conduct in this high post, had now passed[7] into the order[8] of marked[9] and distinguished men. He continued, nevertheless, to lead in private[10] a quiet and modest life, studying as hard as ever, and but little seen in the circles of gaiety.[11] An accident[12] which occurred[13] one morning at[14] his military levee[15], gave at once a new

---

[288] errichten. [289] ausfertigen. [290] rufen. [291] nach. [292] führen. [293] hervorspringen. [294] ſchlagen in. [295] an. [296] ſtreuen. [297] Fröhlichkeit. [298] behalten. [299] das Glück haben. [300] ſpäter.

[1] in Händen haben. [2] Oberbefehl. [3] ſteigen. [4] an. [5] Bedeutung. [6] in Folge. [7] gelangen. [8] Reihe, *f.* [9] bemerken. [10] zu Hauſe. [11] *say*, in the gay circles. [12] Vorfall. [13] ſich ereignen. [14] während. [15] Aufwartung.

turn[16] to his mode of life[17], and a fresh impetus[18] to the advance[19] of his fortunes.[20]

A fine boy, of[21] ten or twelve years of age[22], presented[23] himself, — stated[24] to the general that his name was Eugene Beauharnois, son of Viscount[25] Beauharnois, who had served as a general officer[26] in the republican armies on the Rhine, and been murdered by Robespierre, and said his errand[27] was to recover[28] the sword of his father. Buonaparte caused[29] the request[30] to be complied with[31]; and the tears[32] of the boy, as[33] he received[34] and kissed[35] the relic[36], excited[37] his interest.[38] He treated Eugene so kindly, that next day his mother, Josephine Beauharnois, came to thank him; and her beauty and singular[39] gracefulness[40] of address[41] made a strong impression.

This charming[42] lady, the daughter of a planter, by name[43] Tascher de la Pagerie, was born in the Island of Martinico[44], June 24th, 1763. While yet an infant, according to a story which she afterwards repeated, a negro sorceress[45] had prophesied that she should one day be greater than a queen, and yet outlive[46] her dignity.

The widow of Beauharnois had herself been imprisoned until the downfall[47] of Robespierre. In that confinement[48], she had formed[49] a strict friendship[50] with another lady, who was now married to[51] Tallien, one of the most eminent[52] of[53] the leaders[54] of the Convention. Madame[55] Tallien had introduced[56] Josephine to her husband's friends; and

---

[16] Wendung. [17] Lebensweiſe, *f.* [18] Antrieb zu. [19] Hebung. [20] take sing. [21] omit *of.* [22] *say*, old. [23] vorſtellen, take the Passive form. [24] *say*, he stated er ſagte. [25] Vicegraf (Gen.—en). [26] Oberofficier. [27] Auftrag. [28] wiedererlangen. [29] befehlen, and *say*, that the request, etc. [30] Geſuch, *n.* [31] bewilligen. [32] Thräne, *f.* [33] als. [34] empfangen. [35] küſſen. [36] Ueberbleibſel, *n.* [37] erregen. [38] Theilnahme. [39] beſonder. [40] Anmuth, *f.* [41] Rede. [42] reizend. [43] Gen. of Name, *m.* [44] Martinique. [45] Negerhexe. [46] überleben. [47] Sturz, *m.* [48] Gewahrſam, *m.* [49] ſchließen. [50] innig. [51] an. [53] ausgezeichnet. [53] *say*, among. [54] Wortführer. [55] Frau. [56] einführen bei.

Barras, the first director, having now begun to hold a sort of court at the Luxembourg, these two beautiful women were the chief ornaments[57] of his society. Buonaparte offered Josephine his hand: she, after some hesitation[58], accepted[59] it; and the young general by this marriage (9th March, 1796), cemented[60] his connexion[61] with the society of the Luxembourg, and, in particular, with Barras and Tallien, at that moment the most powerful[62] men in France. Napoleon had a strong tendency[63] to the superstition[64] of fatalism[65], and he always believed that his fortunes[66] were bound up[67] in some mysterious[68] manner with those of this graceful woman. She loved him warmly[69], and served him well. Her influence over[70] him was great, and it was always exerted[71] on the side[72] of humanity. She, and she alone, could overrule[73], by gentleness[74], the excesses[75] of passion to which he was liable[76], and her subsequent[77] fate will always form one of the darkest[78] pages[79] of the history of her lord.[80]—*Lockhart's Life of Napoleon.*

XXV. The Battles[1] of the Pyramids[2] and of Aboukir.

On the twenty-first of July the army came within sight of[3] the Pyramids, which, but for[4] the regularity of the outline[5], might have been taken for a distant ridge of rocky mountains. While every eye was fixed on these

---

[57] Hauptzierde. [58] Zögern. [59] annehmen. [60] befeſtigen. [61] Verbindung. [62] mächtig. [63] Anlage. [64] Glaube, *m.*, an. [65] *say*, of a fate, Schickſal, *n.* [66] ſing. [67] innig verweben. [68] geheimnißvoll, [69] herzlich. [70] auf. [71] benutzen. [72] auf Seiten. [73] zügeln. [74] Sanftmuth. [75] *say*, the passionate excesses leidenſchaftlich Anfall. [76] unterworfen. [77] ſpäter. [78] düſter. [79] Seite, *f.* [80] Eheherr.

[1] Schlacht. [2] Pyramide, *f.* [3] zu Geſicht bekommen. [4] *say*, had there not been. [5] Umriß.

hoary[6] monuments of the past, they gained the brow[7] of a gentle[8] eminence, and saw at length spread out[9] before them the vast army of the Beys[10], its right posted[11] on an intrenched[12] camp by[13] the Nile, its centre[14] and left composed[15] of that brilliant cavalry[16] with which they were by this time[17] acquainted. Napoleon, riding forwards[18] to reconnoitre[19], perceived, (what escaped the observation of all his staff[20]), that the guns on the intrenched camp were not provided with carriages, and instantly decided on[21] his plan of attack.[22] He prepared[23] to throw his force[24] on[25] the left, where the guns could not be available.[26] Mourad Bey, who commanded in chief[27], speedily penetrated[28] his design, and the Mamelukes[29] advanced[30] gallantly to the encounter.[31] "Soldiers," said Napoleon, "from the summit[32] of yonder pyramids forty ages[33] behold[34] you;" and the battle began.

The French formed[35] into separate[36] squares[37], and awaited[38] the assaults[39] of the Mamelukes. These came on with impetuous speed and wild cries[40], and practised[41] every means to force[42] their passage[43] into the serried[44] ranks[45] of their new opponents.[46] They rushed[47] on the line of bayonets, backed[48] their horses upon them, and at last, maddened[49] by the firmness which they could not shake[50], dashed[51] their pistols and carabines[52] into the faces

---

[6] grau. [7] Spitze, *f.* [8] mäßig. [9] ausbreiten. [10] Bey, *pl.* Beys. [11] lehnen an. [12] verſchanzen. [13] an. [14] die Mitte. [15] bilden aus. [16] Reiterei. [17] nunmehr. [18] vorreiten. [19] beſichtigen, and add *the camp*. [20] Stab, *m.* [21] entwerfen. [22] Angriffsplan, *m.* [23] Anſtalten treffen. [24] Macht. [25] auf. [26] benutzt werden. [27] den Oberbefehl haben. [28] errathen; design Abſicht. [29] Mameluck, *m.* (G.—en). [30] rücken in. [31] Treffen. [32] Gipfel, *m.* [33] Jahrhundert, *n.* [34] herabſehen auf. [35] ſich ordnen. [36] einzeln. [37] Quarré, *n.*(*pl.*—s). [38] erwarten. [39] Angriff. [40] Geſchrei, *n.*, only in sing. [41] verſuchen. [42] erzwingen. [43] Bruch. [44] geſchloſſen. [45] Reihe, *f.* [46] Gegner. [47] ſich ſtürzen; bayonet das Bayonett (*pl.*—e). [48] rücklings treiben. [49] zur Verzweiflung bringen. [50] erſchüttern. [51] ſchleudern. [52] Karabiner, *m.*

of the men.[53] They who had fallen wounded from their seats, would[54] crawl[55] along the sand, and hew at[56] the legs of their enemies with their scymitars.[57] Nothing could move the French: the bayonet, and the continued[58] roll[59] of musketry[60], by degrees[61] thinned[62] the host[63] around them; and Buonaparte at last advanced.[64] Such were the confusion and terror of the enemy when he came near[65] the camp, that they abandoned their works, and flung[66] themselves by[67] hundreds into the Nile. The carnage[68] was prodigious.[69] Multitudes[70] more[71] were drowned.[72] Mourad and a remnant[73] of his Mamelukes retreated on[74] Upper Egypt.[75] Cairo surrendered[76]: Lower[77] Egypt was entirely conquered.

Such were the immediate consequences of "The Battle of the Pyramids." The name of Buonaparte now spread[78] panic through the East; and the "Sultan Kebir" (or king of fire[79], as he was called from[80] the deadly effects[81] of the musketry in this engagement[82]), was considered as the destined[83] scourge[84] of God, whom it was hopeless to resist.

The French now had recompense[85] for the toils[86] they had undergone.[87] The bodies of the slain[88] and drowned Mamelukes were rifled[89], and, it being the custom for these warriors to carry their wealth[90] about[91] them, a single corpse[92] often made a soldier's fortune. In the

---

[53] *say*, to the men into the face; and *man* is here Soldat. [54] mögen. [55] kriechen. [56] hauen nach. [57] krummer Säbel. [58] fortſetzen. [59] Rollen. [60] Musketenfeuer, *n.* [61] allmählig. [62] lichten. [63] Schaar, *f.* [64] vorrücken. [65] ſich nähern, with Dat. [66] ſtürzen. [67] zu. [68] Blutbad, *n.* [69] ungeheuer. [70] Maſſe, *f.* [71] put *more* before the Substantive. [72] ertrinken. [73] Ueberbleibſel. [74] nach. [75] Ober Aegypten. [76] ſich ergeben. [77] Unter. [78] verbreiten. [79] Feuerkönig. [80] wegen. [81] Wirkung, sing. [82] Kampf, *m.* [83] beſtimmen. [84] Geißel, *f.* [85] belohnt ſein. [86] Anſtrengung. [87] ſich unterziehen, with Dat. [88] Erſchlagen. [89] berauben. [90] Reichthum, *m.* [91] um, with the Pronoun reflective. [92] Leichnam, *m.*

deserted[93] harems[94] of the chiefs at Cairo, and in the neighbouring villages, men at length formed proofs[95] that "eastern luxury"[96] is no empty[97] name. The Savans[98] ransacked[99] the monuments[100] of antiquity, and found collections which will ever reflect[101] honour[102] on their zeal and skill. Napoleon himself visited the interior of the great Pyramid, and on entering the secret chamber, in which, 3,000 years before, some Pharaoh had been inurned[103], repeated once more his confession of faith[104]—"There is no God but God, and Mahomet is his prophet." The bearded Orientals[105], who accompanied him, concealed their doubts[106] of his orthodoxy[107], and responded[108] very solemnly: "God is merciful.[109] Thou hast spoken like the most learned of the prophets." While Napoleon was thus pursuing[110] his career[111] of victory[112] in the interior[113], Nelson, having scoured[114] the Mediterranean in quest of him[115], once more returned to the coast of Egypt. He arrived within sight[116] of the towers of Alexandria on the first of August—ten days after the battle of the Pyramids had been fought[117] and won—and found Brueyes still at his moorings[118] in the Bay of Abukir. Nothing seems to be more clear than that the French admiral ought to have made the best of his way[119] to France, or at least to Malta, the moment[120] the army had taken possession of Alexandria. Napoleon constantly asserted that he had urged[121] Brueyes to do so. Brueyes himself lived not to give his testimony, but Gantheaume, the vice-admiral,

---

[93] verlaſſen. [94] Frauengemach, *n.* (*pl.*—ächer). [95] Beweis. [96] morgenländiſche Pracht. [97] leer. [98] Gelehrt. [99] plündern. [100] Denkmal, *n.* [101] werfen. [102] ehrenvolles Licht. [103] einſargen. [104] Glaubensbekenntniß, *n.* [105] Orientale, *m.* [106] Zweifel, *m.*, an, [107] Rechtgläubigkeit. [108] antworten. [109] barmherzig. [110] verfolgen. [111] Laufbahn, *f.* [112] *say*, victorious ſiegreich. [113] das Innere. [114] durchſtreifen. [115] *say*, after him. [116] ins Bereich kommen. [117] kämpfen. [118] vor Anker. [119] *say*, returned as soon as possible. [120] *say*, as soon as. [121] drängen.

always persisted[122] in stating[123], in direct[124] contradiction[125] to Buonaparte, that the fleet remained by[126] the general's express[127] desire. The testimonials being thus balanced[128], it is necessary to consult[129] other materials[130] of judgment[131]; and it appears extremely difficult to doubt that the French admiral, who, it[132] is acknowledged on all hands, dreaded the encounter[133] of Nelson, remained off[134] Alexandria for the sole purpose[135] of aiding[136] the motions[137] of the army, and in consequence of[138] what he at least conceived[139] to be the wish of its general. However this might have been, the results[140] of his delay[141] were terrible.

The French fleet were moored[142] in a semicircle[143] in the bay of Abukir, so near the shore, that, as their admiral believed, it was impossible for the enemy to come between him and the land. He expected, therefore, to be attacked on one side only, and thought himself sure[144], that the English could not renew[145] their favourite manœuvre[146] of breaking the line, and so at once dividing the opposed[147] fleet, and placing[148] the ships individually[149] between two fires. But[150] Nelson daringly[151] judged[152] that his ships might force a passage[153] between the French and the land, and succeeding in this attempt, instantly brought on[154] the conflict[155] in the same dreaded[156] form[157] which Brueyes had believed impossible. The details[158] of this great sea-fight[159] belong to the history of the English hero. The battle was obstinate[160]; it lasted more than twenty hours,

---

[122] beſtehen auf. [123] Ausſage. [124] gerade. [125] Widerſpruch, m. mit. [126] auf. [127] ausdrücklich. [128] ſich die Wage halten. [129] um Rath fragen. [130] Quelle, f. [131] *say*, in order to form a judgment; Urtheil fällen. [132] *say*, as it is. [133] Zuſammentreffen mit. [134] vor. [135] einzig um. [136] unterſtützen. [137] Bewegung. [138] *say*, of that. [139] halten für. [140] Folge. [141] Verzug. [142] vor Anker liegen. [143] Halbkreis, m. [144] es für ſicher halten. [145] erneuern. [146] Lieblings verfahren. [147] feindlich. [148] ſetzen. [149] einzeln. [150] indeſſen. [151] voller Kühnheit. [152] dafür halten. [153] Weg, m. [154] veranlaſſen. [155] Kampf. [156] furchtbar. [157] Weiſe, f. [158] beſonderer Umſtand. [159] Seeſchlacht. [160] hartnäckig.

including[161] the whole night. A solitary[162] pause[163] occurred[164] at midnight, when the French admiral's ship[165], L'Orient, a superb[166] vessel of one hundred and twenty guns, took fire[167], and blew up[168] in the heart[169] of the conflicting squadrons[170], with an explosion[171] that for a moment silenced[172] rage in awe. The admiral himself perished. Next morning two shattered[173] ships, out of all the French fleet, with difficulty made their escape[174] to the open sea. The rest of all that magnificent array[175] had been utterly[176] destroyed, or remained in the hands of the English. Such was the battle of Abukir, in which Nelson achieved[177], with a force much inferior[178] to the French, what he himself called " not a victory but a conquest." Three thousand French seamen reached the shore: a greater number died. Had the English admiral possessed frigates[179], he must have forced his way into the harbour of Alexandria, and seized the whole stores and transports[180] of the army. As things were[181], the best fleet of the republic had ceased[182] to be; the blockade[183] of the coast was established[184]: and the invader[185] completely isolated[186] from France, must be content[187] to rely[188] on his own arms and the resources[189] of Egypt.

Before Nelson's arrival, Buonaparte is said to have meditated[190] returning to France, for the purpose of[191] extorting[192] from the government those supplies[193] of

---

[161] einſchließen; use the Past Part., and put it after *night*. [162] einzig. [163] Pauſe, *f.* [164] Statt finden. [165] Admiralſchiff, *n.* [166] herrlich. [167] in Feuer gerathen. [168] in die Luft ſpringen. [169] Mitte, *f.* [170] Geſchwader, *n.* [171] Knall, *m.* [172] *say*, turned rage into silent awe; to turn verwandeln, awe Ehrfurchtsſtaunen. [173] zertrümmert. [174] entkommen. [175] Ausrüſtung. [176] völlig. [177] erlangen. [178] geringer als. [179] Fregatte, *f.* [180] Ueberfahrtsſchiff, *n.* [181] ſtehen. [182] aufhören. [183] Blockade, *f.* [184] feſtſetzen. [185] der einfallende Eroberer. [186] abſchneiden. [187] ſich begnügen. [188] ſich verlaſſen auf. [189] Hülfsquelle, *f.* [190] im Sinne haben. [191] *say*, in order to. [192] erzwingen. [193] Ergänzung.

various kinds, which on actual[194] examination[195] he had perceived to be indispensible[196] to the permanent[197] occupation[198] of Egypt, and which he well knew the Directors would refuse to any voice but his own. He intended, it is also said, to urge on[199] the Directory the propriety[200] of resuming[201] the project[202] of a descent[203] on England itself at the moment when the mind[204] of that government might be supposed[205] to be engrossed[206] with the news[207] of his dazzling[208] successes in Egypt. All these proud visions[209] died[210] with Brueyes. On hearing of the battle of Abukir, a solitary sigh escaped from[211] Napoleon. "To France," said he, "the fates[212] have decreed[213] the empire[214] of the land—to England that of the sea."

He endured[215] this great calamity with the equanimity[216] of a masculine spirit. He gave orders that the seamen landed at Alexandria should be formed into a marine brigade[217], and thus gained a valuable[218] addition[219] to his army; and proceeded[220] himself to organise[221] a system of government[222], under which the great natural resources of the country might be turned to the best advantage.[223] —*Lockhart's Life of Napoleon.*

XXVI. The Voyage.[1]

To[2] an American[3] visiting Europe, the long voyage he has to make is an excellent preparative.[4] The temporary[5] ab-

---

[194] wirklich. [195] Unterſuchung. [196] unumgänglich nothwendig. [197] dauernd. [198] Beſetzung. [199] dringend vorſtellen. [200] Nothwendigkeit. [201] wieder aufnehmen. [202] Entwurf. [203] Landung in. [204] Gemüth, *n.* [205] *say*, adverbially, probably. [206] beſchäftigen. [207] Nachricht. [208] glänzend. [209] Bild, *n.* [210] entſchwinden. [211] entſchlüpfen. [212] ſing. [213] beſtimmen. [214] Herrſchaft über. [215] ertragen. [216] Gleichmuth, *m.* [217] Seebrigade, *f.* [218] wichtig. [219] Zuwachs. [220] daran gehen. [221] begründen. [222] Regierungsſyſtem *n.* [223] *say*, employed in the most advantageous way; to employ benutzen; advantageous vortheilhaft.

[1] Seereiſe, *f.* [2] für. [3] Amerikaner. [4] Vorbereitung. [5] zeitweilig

sence[6] of worldly[7] scenes[8] and employments[9] produces[10] a state of mind peculiarly fitted[11] to receive[12] new and vivid[13] impressions. The vast[14] space[15] of waters that separates the hemispheres[16] is like a blank[17] page[18] in[19] existence. There is no gradual[20] transition[21] by which, as in Europe, the features[22] and population[23] of one country blend[24] almost imperceptibly[25] with[26] those of another. From the moment you lose sight of[27] the land you have left, all is vacancy[28] until you step on[29] the opposite[30] shore, and are launched[31] at once into the bustle[32] and novelties[33] of another world.

In[34] travelling by[35] land there is[36] a continuity of scene[37], and a connected[38] succession[39] of persons[40] and incidents[41], that carry on[42] the story[43] of life, and lessen the effect of absence and separation.[44] We drag[45], it is true[46], a lengthening[47] chain at[48] each remove[49] of[50] our pilgrimage[51]; but the chain is unbroken: we can trace it back[52], link[53] by[54] link; and we feel that the last of them still[55] grapples[56] to[57] home. But a wide sea-voyage severs[58] us at once. It makes us conscious[59] of being cast loose[60] from the secure anchorage[61] of settled[62] life, and sent adrift[63] upon[64]

---

[6] Abweſenheit. [7] weltlich. [8] Ereigniß, *n.* [9] Beſchäftigung. [10] *say*, puts the mind into a state, verſetzen, Stimmung. [11] geeignet. [12] empfangen. [13] lebhaft. [14] weit. [15] Ausdehnung. [16] *say*, the two worlds. [17] unbeſchrieben. [18] Blatt, *n.* [19] *say*, in our. [20] allmählig. [21] Uebergang. [22] Zug. [23] Bevölkerung. [24] verſchwimmen. [25] unmerklich. [26] in. [27] aus dem Geſicht verlieren. [28] Leere, with the Indef. Art. [29] betreten. [30] gegenüberliegend. [31] verſetzen. [32] Getriebe, *n.* [33] *say*, the new phenomena Erſcheinung. [34] wenn. [35] zu. [36] *say*, one finds. [37] *say*, a continued landscape-picture fortſetzen, Landſchaftsbild, *n.* [38] zuſammenhängend. [39] Aufeinanderfolge. [40] Menſch. [41] Begebenheit. [42] fortſpinnen. [43] Erzählung. [44] Trennung. [45] ſchleppen. [46] freilich. [47] länger ſich hinziehend. [48] bei. [49] Fortſchritt. [50] in. [51] Wallfahrt. [52] *say*, we can trace the track back die Spur rückwärts verfolgen. [53] Glied, *n.* [54] vor. [55] doch immer. [56] ſich anſchließen. [57] an. [58] abſchneiden. [59] *say*, excites the consciousness in us das Bewußtſein erregen. [60] ablöſen. [61] Ankergrund, *m.* [62] regeln. [63] hinausſtoßen. [64] in.

a doubtful[65] world. It interposes[66] a gulf[67] not merely imaginary[68] but real between us and our homes[69],—a gulf subject[70] to tempest[71] and fear and uncertainty, that makes distance palpable[72], and return[73] precarious.[74]

Such, at least, was the case with[75] myself. As I saw the last blue line of my native land fade away[76] like a cloud in[77] the horizon, it seemed as if I had closed[78] one volume of the world and its concerns[79], and had time for meditation[80] before I opened another. That land, too, now vanishing from[81] my view[82], which contained all that was most dear to me in life; what vicissitudes[83] might occur[84] in it! what changes might take place[85] in me before I should visit it again! Who can tell, when he sets forth to wander[86] whither he may be driven by the uncertain currents[87] of existence; or when he may return; or whether it may ever be his lot[88] to revisit[89] the scenes[90] of his childhood?

I said that at[91] sea all is vacancy: I should correct[92] the expression. To one given[93] to day-dreamings[94], and fond of losing himself[95] in reveries[96], a sea voyage is full of subjects for meditation; but then[97] they are the wonders of the deep, and of the air, and rather tend[98] to abstract[99] the mind from worldly themes.[100] I delighted[101] to loll[102] over the quarter-railing[103], or climb to[104] the main-top[105] on[106] a

---

[65] ungewiß. [66] dazwiſchen legen. [67] Golf, *m.* [68] eingebildet. [69] sing. [70] unterworfen. [71] Sturm, *m.*, take pl. [72] fühlbar. [73] die Rückkehr. [74] zweifelhaft. [75] bei. [76] verſchweben. [77] an. [78] beenden. [79] Angelegenheit. [80] Betrachtung, take pl. [81] entſchwinden, with Dat. [82] Blick. [83] Schickſalswechſel, *m.* [84] Statt finden, and insert *not* after *might*. [85] vorgehen. [86] ſich auf die Wanderſchaft begeben. [87] Strömung. [88] Beſtimmung. [89] wiederſehen. [90] Schauplatz, *m.*, sing. [91] auf with the Def. Art. [92] *say*, choose another. [93] ſich ergeben. [94] *say*, to build castles in the air. [95] ſich gern verlieren. [96] Träumerei. [97] freilich. [98] dahin ſtreben. [99] abziehen. [100] Sache, *f.* [101] *say*, it delighted me glücklich machen. [102] hangen. [103] das Geländer des Verdeckes. [104] auf. [105] der große Maſt. [106] *say*, on a.

calm day, and muse[107] for hours together[108] on[109] the tranquil bosom of a summer's sea,—to gaze[110] upon the piles[111] of golden clouds just[112] piercing[113] above the horizon, fancy[114] them some fairy realms[115], and people[116] them with a creation[117] of my own[118],—to watch[119] the gentle[120] undulating[121] billows[122], rolling[123] their silver volumes[124], as[125] if to die away[126] on these happy shores.—

Washington Irving's Sketchbook.

XXVII. Character of Lorenzo de' Medici.

The days of Dante, of Boccacio, and of Petrarca, were indeed past[1]; but under the auspices[2] of the house of Medici, and particularly through the ardour[3] and example of Lorenzo, the empire of science and true taste was again restored.[4]

After the death of Boccacio, the survivor of[5] that celebrated triumvirate[6] who had carried[7] their native tongue[8] to a high pitch[9] of refinement[10], and endeavoured, not without success, to introduce the study of the ancient languages into Italy, a general degradation[11] of letters[12] again took place[13]; and the Italian tongue in particular was so far deteriorated[14] and debased[15] as[16], by the acknowledgment[17] of the best critics[18], to have become scarcely intelligible.[19] The first symptoms[20] of improve-

---

[107] ſinnen. [108] Stunden lang. [109] über. [110] *say*, to fix the gazing look, heften, ſtaunend. [111] Maſſe, *f.* [112] gerade. [113] emporſteigen. [114] einbilden, and *say*, fancy them to me as so many. [115] Feenreich, *n.* [116] bevölkern. [117] Schöpfung. [118] *say*, of my own imagination Phantaſie. [119] beobachten. [120] ſanft. [121] wogen. [122] Welle, *f.* [123] dahinrollen. [124] Silbermaſſe. [125] *say*, as if they were. [126] erſterben.

[1] dahin. [2] Schutz, sing. [3] Eifer, *m.* [4] wieder herſtellen. [5] *say*, who survived überleben. [6] Triumvirat, *n.* [7] erheben. [8] Landesſprache. [9] Gipfel, *m.* [10] Verfeinerung. [11] Verfall. [12] Literatur, in sing. [13] hereinbrechen. [14] ausarten. [15] verderben. [16] *say*, that it has. [17] Geſtändniß, *n.* [18] Kunſtrichter. [19] verſtändlich. [20] Anzeichen, *n.*

ment appeared about the middle of the fifteenth century, when Cosmo de' Medici, after having established[21] his authority[22] in Florence[23], devoted[24] the latter years of a long and honourable life to the encouragement[25] and even the study of philosophy and polite[26] letters.[27] He died in 1464; and the infirm[28] state of health[29] of his son Piero, who was severely[30] afflicted[31] by the gout[32], did not permit[33] him to make that progress[34] in the path which his father had pointed out[35], that his natural disposition[36] would otherwise have effected. After surviving him only about five years, the greater part of which time he was confined[37] to a sick bed[38] he died, leaving[39] two sons: to the elder of whom, Lorenzo, the praise of having restored[40] to literature its ancient honours[41] is[42] principally[43] due. In succeeding[44] times indeed[45] that praise has been almost exclusively[46] bestowed on[47] Giovanni de' Medici, afterwards[48] Leo the tenth, the second son of Lorenzo, who undoubtedly promoted[49] the views[50], but never in any degree[51] rivalled[52] the talents of his father. Certain it is that no man was ever more admired and venerated[53] by his contemporaries[54], or has been more defrauded[55] of his just fame by posterity[56], than Lorenzo de' Medici. Possessed[57] of a genius[58] more original[59] and versatile[60] than perhaps any of his countrymen[61], he has led[62] the way[63] in some of the most estimable[64] species[65] of poetic compo-

[21] begründen. [22] Anſehen. [23] Florenz. [24] widmen. [25] Ermunterung. [26] ſchön. [27] Wiſſenſchaft. [28] ſchwach. [29] Geſundheitszuſtand. [30] ſchwer. [31] behaftet mit. [32] Gicht, *f.* [33] geſtatten. [34] Plur. [35] andeuten. [36] Gemüthsart, *f.* [37] feſſeln an. [38] Krankenbett, *n.* [39] hinterlaſſen. [40] wieder verleihen. [41] sing. [42] gebühren to be due. [43] hauptſächlich. [44] ſpäter. [45] freilich. [46] ausſchließlich. [47] ertheilen. [48] *say*, to the afterwards nachherig, which is an Adjective. [49] befördern. [50] Abſicht. [51] Umfang. [52] gleichkommen, with Dat. [53] verehren. [54] Zeitgenoſſe, *m.* [55] betrügen um. [56] Nachwelt, *f.* [57] begabt mit. [58] Geiſt, *m.* [59] ſchöpferiſch. [60] vielſeitig. [61] Landsmann, and say *had* beſitzen. [62] brechen. [63] Bahn, *f.* [64] ſchätzbar. [65] Dichtungsart is species of poetic composition.

sition, and some of his productions[66] stand unrivalled[67] amongst those of his countrymen to[68] the present day. Yet such[69] has been the admiration paid[70] by the Italians to a few favourite authors[71], that they have almost closed[72] their eyes to[73] the various excellencies with[74] which his works abound.[75] From the time of his death no general collection was made of his writings for upwards of[76] sixty years, and after their first publication[77] by Aldus in 1554, upwards of[78] two centuries elapsed[79] without a new edition.[80] Neglected in Italy, they seem to have been unknown to the rest of[81] Europe. A French historian[82], Varillas, in whose narrative Lorenzo makes[83] a conspicuous[84] figure[85], assures his readers, that the writings of this great man, as well in verse as in prose, are irrevocably[86] lost; and that he would no longer be known as an author, were it not from[87] the commendations[88] bestowed upon[89] him by his friends, and the attention[90] paid[91] to him by Paulus Jovius, who has assigned[92] a place[93] to his memory[94] in his eulogies on[95] the modern writers of Italy.

But we are[96] not to consider Lorenzo de' Medici merely in the character of an author, and a patron[97] of learning. As a statesman, he was without doubt the most extraordinary person[98] of his own or perhaps of any[99] time. Though a private citizen[100] and a merchant of Florence, he not only obtained the decided[101] control[102] of that state, at[103] a period[104] when it abounded with[105] men of

---

[66] Leiſtung. [67] unvergleichlich. [68] bis zum heutigen Tage. [69] ſo groß. [70] zollen. [71] Lieblingsſchriftſteller. [72] ſchließen. [73] vor. [74] an. [75] ſo reich ſein. [76] for upwards of wohl, and put lang after *years*. [77] Veröffentlichung. [78] ungefähr. [79] vergehen. [80] Ausgabe. [81] übrig. [82] Geſchichtſchreiber. [83] ſpielen. [84] bedeutend. [85] Rolle, *f.* [86] unwiederbringlich. [87] *say*, it be then through. [88] Anpreiſung. [89] zu ſeinen Gunſten erheben. [90] Aufmerkſamkeit. [91] ſchenken. [92] anweiſen. [93] Platz, *m.* [94] Andenken. [95] Lobrede zu Ehren. [96] müſſen. [97] Beſchützer. [98] Mann. [99] irgend ein. [100] Privatmann. [101] entſchieden. [102] Leitung. [103] zu. [104] Zeit, *f.* [105] an Fülle beſitzen.

the greatest talents and acuteness[106], but raised himself to the rank[107] of sole arbiter[108] of Italy, and operated[109] with considerable effect[110] upon the politics[111] of Europe. Without attempting to subjugate[112] his native place[113], he laid the foundation[114] of the future greatness of his family. His son and his nephew were, at a short interval[115], successively[116] raised to the pontifical[117] dignity[118]; and in the succeeding[119] centuries, his descendants[120] became connected[121] by marriage[122] with the first European sovereigns. The protection[123] afforded[124] by him to all the polite[125] arts[126] gave them a permanent[127] foundation[128] in Italy In the establishment[129] of public libraries, schools, and seminaries of learning[130], he was equally[131] munificent[132], indefatigable[133], and successful[134]; and these objects[135] were all accomplished[136] by a man who died at[137] the early age of forty-four years.—*Roscoe's Life of Lorenzo de' Medici.*

XXVIII. Influence[1] of Liberty on[2] the Florentines.[3]

The great[4] degree of freedom, enjoyed[5] by the citizens of Florence, had the most favourable effects[6] on their character, and gave them a decided[7] superiority[8] over[9] the inhabitants of the rest of Italy. The popular nature of the government[10],

---

[106] Scharfſinn. [107] Rang, *m.* [108] Schiedsrichter. [109] wirken. [110] Erfolg. [111] Staatsleben. [112] unterjochen. [113] Geburtsort, *m.* [114] Grundlage. [115] Zwiſchenraum, *m.* [116] nach einander. [117] päpſtlich [118] Würde. [119] folgend. [120] Nachkomme, *m.* [121] verbinden. [122] Heirath. [123] Schutz, *m.* [124] *say*, which he afforded angedeihen laſſen. [125] ſchön. [126] Kunſt. [127] dauernd. [128] Stellung. [129] Errichtung. [130] gelehrte Anſtalt. [131] gleich. [132] freigebig. [133] unermüdlich. [134] glücklich. [135] Ding, *n.* [136] zu Stande bringen. [137] in.

[1] Einfluß. [2] auf. [3] Florentiner. [4] hoch. [5] *say*, which the citizens enjoyed; to enjoy genießen, with Gen. [6] günſtig wirken auf. [7] entſchieden. [8] Ueberlegenheit. [9] vor. [10] volksmäßige Regierungsweiſe.

not subjected to the will of an individual as in many of the surrounding[11] states, not restricted[12] like that of Venice[13] to[14] a particular class, was a constant incitement[15] to exertion. Nor[16] was it on the great body[17] of the people only that the good effects of this system[18] were apparent[19]; even those who claimed[20] the privileges[21] of ancestry[22] felt the advantages of a rivalship[23], which prevented their sinking[24] into indolence[25], and called upon[26] them to support by their own talents the rank and influence which they had derived[27] from[28] those of their ancestors.[29] Where the business[30] of government is confined[31] to a few, the faculties[32] of the many[33] become torpid[34] for[35] want of[36] exercise; but in Florence, every citizen was conversant with[37], and might hope, at least, to partake in[38] the government: and hence was derived[39] that spirit of industry which, in the pursuit[40] of[41] wealth, and the extension[42] of commerce[43], was, amidst all their intestine broils[44], so conspicuous[45] and so successful.[46] The fatigues[47] of public life, and the cares[48] of mercantile[49] avocations[50], were alleviated[51] at time[52] by the study of literature or the speculations[53] of[54] philosophy. A rational[55] and dignified[56] employment engaged[57] those moments of leisure[58] not

---

[11] umgränzend. [12] beſchränken. [13] Venedig. [14] auf. [15] Sporn, *m.* [16] auch nicht, and leave out *was it* and *that*, and put *were* between auch and nicht. [17] Maſſe, *f.* [18] Staatsſyſtem, *n.* [19] ſichtbar. [20] Anſpruch machen auf. [21] Vorrecht. [22] Ahnenreihe, *f.*, with Indef. Art. [23] Wetteifer, *m.* [24] verſinken. [25] Trägheit. [26] auffordern. [27] gewinnen. [28] durch. [29] Vorältern. [30] Geſchäft, *n.*, take pl. [31] einſchränken auf. [32] Fähigkeit. [33] *say*, the great multitude Menge. [34] verdumpfen to become torpid. [35] aus. [36] an. [37] *say*, had knowledge of the government (Regierungsweſen), and might — to partake (Theil nehmen) in it. [38] an. [39] kommen. [40] Streben. [41] nach. [42] Ausbreitung. [43] Handel, *m.* [44] innere Zwiſtigkeiten. [45] in die Augen ſpringend. [46] erfolgreich. [47] Beſchwerde. [48] Mühſeligkeit. [49] kaufmänniſch. [50] Geſchäft [51] mildern. [52] zu Zeiten. [53] Verſenkung, sing. [54] in. [55] vernünftig. [56] würdevoll. [57] ausfüllen. [58] Muße, *f.*

necessarily devoted to more important concerns, and the mind was relaxed[60] without being debilitated[61], and amused[62] without being depraved.[63] The superiority which the Florentines thus acquired, was universally acknowledged; and they became the historians, the poets, the orators, and the preceptors of Europe.—*Roscoe's Life of Lorenzo de' Medici.*

XXIX. On Dr. Johnson's Lives[1] of the Poets.

The life of Pope[2] by Dr. Johnson has been considered as one of the best of[3] that series[4] which, unfortunately for the memory of our national poets[5] and the character of our national poetry[6], he was induced[7] to undertake. Throughout[8] the whole[9] of those lives there appears an assumption[10] of superiority[11] in the biographer[12] over the subjects[13] of his labours[14], which diminishes[15] the idea[16] of their talents[17], and leaves[18] an unfavourable impression[19] on their moral character. It could only be[20] from[21] the representation[22] of Johnson, that so amiable a man as Cowper[23] could thus close[24] his remarks on[25] reading the lives of the British poets. After all[26], it is a melancholy[27] observation[28], which it is impossible not to make[29], after having run through[30] this series of poetic lives, that where there were such shining talents, there should be so little

---

[60] ſich erholen. [61] ſich abſchwächen. [62] unterhalten. [63] verderben.

[1] Leben, which has no plural, and when it is as much as *description of life*, the plural is taken from Lebensbeſchreibung. [2] *say*, Pope's life. [3] in. [4] Reihe. [5] Volksdichter. [6] Volkspoeſie. [7] bewegen. [8] durch, and put hindurch after the Acc. [9] *say*, all these. [10] Anmaßung. [11] Ueberlegenheit. [12] Lebensbeſchreiber. [13] Gegenſtand, sing. [14] take the sing. [15] verringern. [16] Begriff. [17] Talent, *n.* [18] zurückla ſſen. [19] Mahl, *n.* [20] *say*, come. [21] durch. [22] Darſtellung. [23] add *was*. [24] beſchließen. [25] *say*, after he had read. [26] am Ende, and insert doch after *it*. [27] traurig. [28] Gedanke. [29] *say*, arrive at. [30] durchlaufen.

virtue. These luminaries[31] of our country seem to have been kindled[32] into a brighter[33] blaze[34] than others, only that their spots[35] might be more noticed[36]; so much can nature do for our intellectual[37] part[38], and so little for our moral.—*Roscoe's Life of Pope.*

XXX. Study of Ancient Literature in Italy.

The extreme[1] avidity[2] for[3] the works of the ancient writers which distinguished[4] the early part of the fifteenth century, announced[5] the near approach[6] of more enlightened[7] times. Whatever were the causes that determined[8] men of wealth and learning to exert themselves so strenuously[9] in this pursuit[10], certain it is that their interference[11] was of the highest importance to the interests[12] of posterity; and that if it had been much longer delayed[13], the loss would have been in a great[14] degree irreparable[15], such of the manuscripts as then existed[16] of the ancient Greek and Roman authors, being mouldered[17] in obscure[18] corners[19] a prey to oblivion and neglect.[20] It was therefore a circumstance productive of[21] the happiest consequences[22], that the pursuits[23] of the opulent[24] were at this time directed[25] rather towards the recovery[26] of the works of the ancients, than to the encouragement[27] of contemporary[28] merit[29]; a fact that may serve in some degree[30] to

---

[31] Sternlicht, *n.* (*pl.*—er). [32] entflammen. [33] hell. [34] Gluth, *f.* [35] Fleck, *m.* [36] *say*, strike the eye ins Auge fallen. [37] geiſtig. [38] Kraft, and take plural.

[1] höchſt. [2] Begierde. [3] nach. [4] auszeichnen. [5] verkündigen. [6] Dämmerung, lit. dawn. [7] aufgeklärt. [8] beſtimmen. [9] eifrig. [10] Streben. [11] Dazwiſchenkunft. [12] Wohl, sing. [13] verſchieben. [14] hoch. [15] unerſetzlich. [16] vorhanden ſein. [17] to be mouldered vermodern. [18] finſter. [19] Winkel, *m.* [20] Vernachläſſigung. [21] erzeugend. [22] Folge. [23] Beſtrebung. [24] Wohlhabend. [25] richten. [26] Wiedererlangung. [27] Ermunterung. [28] gleichzeitig. [29] Verdienſt, *n.* [30] einiger Maßen.

account for[31] the dearth[32] of original[33] literary[34] productions[35] during this interval. Induced[36] by the rewards that invariably[37] attended a successful inquiry[38], those men who possessed any considerable share[39] of[40] learning, devoted themselves to this occupation, and to such a degree of enthusiasm[41] was it carried[42], that the discovery of an ancient manuscript was regarded almost equivalent[43] to[44] the conquest of a kingdom.—*Roscoe's Life of Lorenzo de' Medici.*

XXXI. Character of the Earl of Strafford.

Thomas Wentworth, successively[1] created[2] Lord Wentworth and Earl[3] of Strafford, a man of great abilities[4], eloquence, and courage, but of a cruel and imperious[5] nature, was the counsellor[6] most trusted[7] in political and military affairs. He had been one of the most distinguished members[8] of the opposition[9], and felt towards those whom he had deserted[10] that peculiar[11] malignity[12] which has, in all ages[13], been characteristic[14] of apostates.[15] He perfectly understood the feelings, the resources, and the policy[16] of the party to which he had lately belonged, and had formed[17] a vast[18] and deeply meditated[19] scheme[20] which very nearly confounded[21] even the able[22] tactics[23] of the statesmen by whom the House of Commons[24] had

---

[31] erklären. [32] Armuth, an. [33] freigeſchaffen. [34] literariſch. [35] Leiſtung. [36] bewegen. [37] unwandelbar. [38] Forſchung. [39] Schatz, m. [40] an. [41] Begeiſterung. [42] treiben. [43] von gleichem Werthe achten. [44] mit.

[1] hinter einander. [2] machen zu. [3] Graf (Gen.—en). [4] Fähigkeit. [5] herrſchſüchtig. [6] Rathgeber. [7] vertrauen auf, and *say*, in whom they must trusted. [8] Mitglied, n. [9] Gegenpartei, *f.* [10] abfallen von. [11] eigenthümlich. [12] Groll, m. [13] *say*, at all times. [14] bezeichnend für. [15] abtrünniger Menſch. [16] Beſtreben. [17] entwerfen. [18] weit umfaſſend. [19] erdenken. [20] Plan, m. [21] in Verwirrung bringen. [22] klug. [23] Verfahren. [24] Gemein, to be used as a Substantive.

been directed.[25] To this scheme, in his confidential[26] correspondence[27], he gave the expressive[28] name of "Thorough."[29] His object[30] was to do in England all, and more than all, that Richelieu was doing in France; to make Charles a monarch as absolute[31] as any on the continent[32]; to put[33] the estates[34] and the personal liberty of the whole people at the disposal[35] of the crown; to deprive the courts of law[36] of all independent[37] authority[38], even in ordinary[39] questions[40] of civil right[41] between man and man, and to punish with merciless[42] rigour[43] all who murmured[44] at the acts[45] of the government, or who applied[46] even in the most decent[47] and regular manner, to any tribunal[48] for[49] relief[50] against those acts.— *Macaulay's History of England.*

XXXII. Christian, King of Denmark and Sweden, in Italy.

In the year 1474, under[1] the magistracy of Donato Acciajuoli, a singular visitor[2] arrived at Florence. This was Christian, king of Denmark and Sweden, who was journeying to Rome, for the purpose[3], it was alleged[4], of discharging[5] a vow.[6] He is described by the Florentine historians as[7] of grave[8] aspect[9], with a long and white beard, and although considered as a barbarian, they admit[10] that the qualities of his mind did not derogate from[11] the

---

[25] leiten. [26] vertraut. [27] Briefwechſel, *m.* [28] ausdrucksvoll. [29] durch. [30] Ziel, *n.* [31] unumſchränkt. [32] feſtes Land.. [33] ſtellen. [34] Gut. [35] zur Verfügung. [36] Gerichtshof, *m.* [37] unabhängig. [38] Gewalt. [39] gewöhnlich. [40] Sache. [41] Privatrecht. [42] unbarmherzig. [43] Strenge. [44] murren über. [45] Handlung. [46] ſich berufen auf. [47] beſcheiden. [48] Tribunal, *n.* [49] *say*, in order to obtain relief. [50] Hülfe.

[1] unter der Magiſtratur. [2] Gaſt. [3] in der Abſicht. [4] vorgeben. [5] löſen. [6] Gelübde, *n.* [7] *say*, as a man. [8] würdig ernſt. [9] Miene, *f.* [10] zugeben. [11] Abbruch thun, with Dat.

respectability[12] of his exterior[13] appearance.[14] Having surveyed[15] the town, and paid[16] a ceremonial visit[17] to the magistrates[18], who received their royal visitor with great splendour[19], he requested to be favoured[20] with a sight of the celebrated copy[21] of the Greek Evangelists[22], which had been obtained[23] some years before from Constantinople and of the Pandects[24] of Justinian, brought from Amalfi to Pisa, and thence[25] to Florence. His laudable[26] curiosity was accordingly[27] gratified[28], and he expressed his satisfaction[29] by declaring through the medium of[30] his interpreter[31], that these were the real treasures of princes, alluding[32] as was supposed[33], to[34] the conduct of the Duke of Milan[35], who had attempted to dazzle[36] him with the display[37] of that treasure of which he had plundered[38] his subjects, to gratify[39] his vanity and his licentiousness[40]; on which occasion Christian had coldly[41] observed, that accumulation[42] of riches was an object below the attention[43] of a great and magnanimous[44] sovereign. Ammirato attempts to show[45] that this remark[46] is rather specious[47] than just, but the authority[48] of the Roman poet (Hor. lib. ii. Ode 2) is[49] in favour[50] of the Goth.[51] It was a spectacle[52] worthy of admiration[53], says the same historian, to see a king, peaceable[54] and unarmed[55], pass through[56], whose predecessors[57] had not only overthrown[58]

---

[12] Würdigkeit. [13] äußer. [14] Anſehen. [15] beſichtigen. [16] abſtatten. [17] Ehrenbeſuch, *m.* [18] Beamte, *m.* [19] Pracht, *f.* [20] *say*, that they might shew him the favour of letting him see. [21] Exemplar, *n.* [22] Evangelien. [23] erhalten. [24] Pandekten. [25] von da. [26] lobenswerth. [27] demgemäß. [28] befriedigen. [29] Freude. [30] durch. [31] Dolmetſcher. [32] anſpielen. [33] vermuthen. [34] auf. [35] Mailand. [36] blenden. [37] Ausbreitung. [38] berauben. [39] Genüge leiſten, with Dat. [40] Ausſchweifung, take plural. [41] trocken. [42] Anhäufung. [43] *an object below the attention* is unter der Würde. [44] hochſinnig. [45] zeigen. [46] Bemerkung. [47] *say*, contains more appearance (Schein) than truth. [48] Zeugniß, *n.* [49] ſprechen. [50] zu Gunſten. [51] Gothe, *m.* [52] Schauſpiel, *n.* [53] bewundernswerth. [54] friedlich. [55] unbewaffnet. [56] durchreiſen. [57] Vorfahr, *m.* (Gen.—en). [58] vernichten.

the armies of that country, and harassed[59] the kingdoms[60] of France and Spain, but had even broken[61] and overturned[62] the immense[63] fabrics[64] of the Roman empire itself.—*Roscoe's Life of Lorenzo de' Medici.*

XXXIII. William, Prince of Orange[1]—the Strength[2] of his Emotions.[3]

William was born with violent[4] passions and quick[5] sensibilities[6]; but the strength of his emotions was not suspected[7] by the world. From[8] the multitude his joy and his grief, his affection[9] and his resentment[10], were hidden by a phlegmatic[11] serenity[12], which made him pass[13] for the most coldblooded[14] of mankind. Those who brought him good news could seldom detect any sign of pleasure. Those who saw him after a defeat[15] looked[16] in vain for[17] any trace of vexation.[18] He praised and reprimanded, rewarded and punished, with the stern[19] tranquillity of a Mohawk chief[20]; but those who knew him well and saw him near were aware[21] that under all this a fierce[22] fire was constantly burning. It was seldom that anger[23] deprived him of power over himself. But when he was really enraged[24] the first outbreak of his passion was terrible. It was indeed scarcely safe to approach him. On these rare occasions, however, as soon as he regained[25] his self-command[26], he made[27] such ample[28] reparation[29]

---

[59] beunruhigen. [60] Königreich. [61] erſchüttern. [62] ſtürzen. [63] ungeheuer. [64] Schöpfung.

[1] Oranien. [2] Stärke. [3] Gemüthsbewegung. [4] heftig. [5] raſch. [6] Empfindung. [7] *say*, of the strength — the world had no notion; notion Ahnung. [8] vor. [9] Zuneigung. [10] Unwille, *m.* [11] ruhig. [12] Heiterkeit. [13] gelten laſſen. [14] kaltblütig. [15] Niederlage. [16] ſuchen. [17] nach. [18] Verdruß, *m.* [19] ſtreng. [20] Häuptling. [21] allzu wohl wiſſen. [22] wild. [23] Zorn, *m.* [24] aufbringen. [25] wiedergewinnen. [26] Selbſtbeherrſchung. [27] geben. [28] reichlich. [29] Entſchädigung.

to those whom he had wronged[30] as[31] tempted them to wish[32] that he would go[33] into a fury[34] again His affection was as impetuous[35] as his wrath.[36] Where he loved, he loved with the whole energy[37] of his strong[38] mind.[39] When death separated him from what he loved, the few who witnessed[40] his agonies[41] trembled for his reason and his life. To a very small circle of intimate friends, on whose fidelity and secrecy[42] he could absolutely[43] depend[44], he was a different man from the reserved[45] and stoical[46] William, whom the world supposed to be destitute[47] of human feeling. He was kind, cordial, open, even convivial[48] and jocose[49], would sit at table many hours, and would bear[50] his full[51] share[52] in[53] festive[54] conversation.

Highest in his favour stood a gentleman of[55] his household[56], named Bentinck, sprung[57] from a noble Batavian[58] race[59], and destined to be the founder[60] of one of the great patrician[61] houses of England. The fidelity of Bentinck had been tried[62] by no common test.[63] It was while the United[64] Provinces[65] were struggling[66] for existence[67] against the French power[68], that the young prince, on whom all their hopes were fixed, was seized by the smallpox.[69] The disease[70] had been fatal[71] to many members of his family, and at first wore[72], in his case, a peculiarly malignant[73] aspect.[74] The public consternation[75] was

---

[30] Unrecht thun, with Dat [31] *say*, that it [32] *say*, to the wish. [33] gerathen. [34] Wuth, *f.*, without Article. [35] ungeſtüm. [36] Grimm, *m.* [37] Kraft. [38] ſtark. [39] Gemüth, *n.* [40] Zeuge ſein von. [41] Seelenſchmerz, *m.*, sing. [42] Verſchwiegenheit. [43] unbeſchränkt. [44] ſich verlaſſen. [45] verſchloſſen. [46] kalt. [47] ermangeln. [48] luſtig. [49] ſpaßhaft. [50] beitragen. [51] voll. [52] Maaß, *n.* [53] zu. [54] fröhlich. [55] von. [56] Haushalt. [57] entſpringen. [58] bataviſch. [59] Geſchlecht, *n.* [60] Gründer. [61] patriziſch. [62] verſuchen. [63] Probe. [64] vereinigt. [65] Provinz. [66] ſtreiten. [67] Daſein, with the Pron. Poss. [68] Macht. [69] Pocke, *f.*, take plural. [70] Krankheit. [71] tödtlich. [72] zeigen. [73] bösartig. [74] Character. [75] Beſtürzung.

great, the streets of the Hague[76] were covered from day-break[77] to sunset[78] by persons anxiously asking how his highness[79] was.[80] At length his complaint[81] took a favourable turn.[82] His escape[83] was attributed[84] partly to his own singular equanimity[85], partly to the intrepid[86] and indefatigable friendship of Bentinck. From the hands of Bentinck alone William took food and medicine.[87] By Bentinck alone William was lifted[88] from[89] his bed, and laid down in it. "Whether Bentinck slept or not while I was ill," said William to Temple, with great tenderness,[90] "I know not. But this I know, that, through[91] sixteen days and nights, I never once called for[92] anything but[93] that Bentinck was instantly at[94] my side." Before the faithful servant had entirely performed[95] his task[96], he had himself caught[97] the contagion. Still, however, he bore up[98] against drowsiness[99] and fever till his master was pronounced[100] convalescent.[101] Then, at length, Bentinck asked[102] leave[103] to go home; it was time, for his limbs would no longer support him. He was in great danger, but recovered[104], and, as soon as he left his bed, hastened[105] to the army, where, during many sharp campaigns, he was found, as he had been in peril of a different kind, close to[106] William's side. Such was the origin[107] of a friendship as warm and pure as any that ancient or modern history records.[108]—*Macaulay's History of England.*

---

[76] Haag, *m.* [77] Tagesanbruch. [78] Sonnenuntergang. [79] Hoheit. [80] ſich befinden. [81] Uebel. [82] Wendung. [83] Rettung. [84] zuſchreiben. [85] Gleichmüthigkeit. [86] unerſchrocken. [87] Arzenei. [88] heben. [89] aus. [90] Zärtlichkeit. [91] hindurch and put it after *nights*. [92] verlangen. [93] ohne. [94] an. [95] vollenden. [96] Arbeit. [97] angeſteckt werden to catch the contagion. [98] ſich ſtemmen. [99] Schläfrigkeit. [100] erklären als. [101] faſt geſund. [102] bitten um. [103] Urlaub, *m.* [104] geneſen. [105] eilen. [106] dicht an. [107] Urſprung. [108] erwähnen.

XXXIV. Generosity[1] of Louis[2] the Fourteenth.

As soon as the news that the Queen of England was on the French coast had been brought to Versailles, a palace[3] was prepared[4] for her reception.[5] Carriages and troops of guards were despatched to await[6] her orders. Workmen[7] were employed to mend[8] the Calais road that her journey might be easy. Lauzun was not only assured that his past offences[9] were forgiven for her sake, but was honoured[10] with a friendly letter in the hand-writing of Louis. Mary was on the road towards[11] the French court, when news came, that her husband had, after a rough[12] voyage, landed safe at the little village of Ambleteuse. Persons of high rank were instantly despatched from Versailles to greet[13] and escort[14] him. Meanwhile Louis, attended by his family and his nobility, went forth[15] in state[16] to receive the exiled[17] queen. Before his gorgeous[18] coach went the Swiss[19] halberdiers.[20] On each side of it and behind it rode the body-guards[21] with cymbals[22] clashing[23] and trumpets[24] pealing.[25]

After him, in a hundred carriages, each drawn by six horses, came the most splendid aristocracy[26] of Europe, all[27] feathers, ribands, jewels, and embroidery.[28] Before the procession[29] had gone far, it was announced that Mary was approaching. Louis alighted[30], and advanced[31] on foot to meet her. She broke forth[32] into passionate expressions of gratitude. "Madam," said her host, "it is but a melancholy service that I am rendering[33] you to day.

---

[1] Großmuth, *f.* [2] Ludwig. [3] Palaſt, *m.* [4] einrichten. [5] Empfang. [6] erwarten. [7] Arbeiter. [8] ausbeſſern. [9] Vergehung. [10] beehren. [11] nach. [12] ſtürmiſch. [13] begrüßen. [14] begleiten. [15] ausziehen. [16] in vollem Staat, *m.* [17] verbannt. [18] prächtig. [19] Schweizer. [20] Hellebardier, *m.* (*pl.*—e). [21] Leibgarde, *f.* [22] Zimbel, *f.* [23] klingen. [24] Trompete, *f.* [25] ſchmettern. [26] Adel, *m.* [27] ganz in. [28] Goldſtickerei. [29] Zug. [30] ausſteigen. [31] to advance to meet entgegen gehen, with Dat. [32] ſich ergießen. [33] leiſten.

I hope that I may be able hereafter to render you services greater and more pleasing." He embraced the little Prince of Wales, and made the queen seat herself in the state coach on[34] the right hand. The cavalcade[35] then turned towards St. Germains. At St. Germains, on the verge[36] of a forest swarming[37] with beasts of chase[38], and on the brow[39] of a hill which looks down[40] on the windings[41] of the Seine, Francis[42] the first had built a castle, and Henry[43] the fourth had constructed[44] a noble terrace.[45]

Of the residences[46] of the French kings none was built in a more salubrious air or commanded[47] a fairer prospect.[48] The huge[49] size[50] and venerable[51] age of the trees, the beauty of the gardens, the abundance[52] of the springs[53], were widely famed. Louis the Fourteenth had been born there, had, when a young man, held his court there, had added several stately[54] pavilions[55] to the mansion of Francis, and had completed[56] the terrace of Henry. Soon, however, the magnificent[57] king conceived[58] an inexplicable disgust[59] for[60] his birthplace. He quitted St. Germains[61] for Versailles, and expended[62] sums almost fabulous[63] in the vain attempt to create a paradise[64] on a spot[65] singularly sterile[66] and unwholesome, all[67] sand or mud[68], without wood[69], without water, and without game.[70] St. Germains had now been selected[71] to be the abode[72] of the royal family of England. Sumptuous[73] furniture[74] had been hastily[75] sent in. The nursery[76] of the Prince

---

[34] zur Rechten. [35] Aufzug zu Pferde. [36] Saum, *m.* [37] ſchwärmen von. [38] Jagdthier, *n.* [39] Gipfel, *m.* [40] herabſehen. [41] Krümmung. [42] Franz, [43] Heinrich. [44] aufführen. [45] Terraſſe, *f.* [46] Hofſitz. [47] beherrſchen. [48] Ausſicht. [49] gewaltig. [50] Umfang. [51] ehrwürdig. [52] Fülle. [53] Springbrunnen, *m.* [54] ſtattlich. [55] Luſthaus. [56] vollenden. [57] prachtliebend. [58] erfüllt werden von. [59] Ekel, *m.* [60] gegen. [61] *add*, and transferred his residence to; verſetzen to transfer. [62] verſchwenden. [63] fabelhaft. [64] Paradies, *n.* [65] Ort, *m.* [66] unfruchtbar. [67] ganz und gar. [68] Schmutz, *m.* [69] Waldung. [70] Wild. [71] auserſehen. [72] Aufenthalt. [73] koſtbar. [74] Hausgeräth, *n.* [75] in der Eile. [76] Kinderſtube.

of Wales had been carefully[77] furnished[78] with everything that an infant could require. One of the attendants[79] presented[80] to the queen the key of a superb[81] casket[82] which stood in her apartment.[83] She opened the casket, and found in it six thousand pistoles.

On the following day James arrived at St. Germains. Louis was already there to welcome[84] him. The unfortunate exile[85] bowed[86] so low[87] that it seemed as if he was about to embrace the knees of his protector. Louis raised[88] him, and embraced him with brotherly tenderness. The two kings then entered the queen's room. "Here is a gentleman," said Louis to Mary, "whom you will be glad[89] to see." Then, after entreating[90] his guests to visit him next day at Versailles, and to let him have the pleasure of showing them his buildings, pictures, and plantations[91], took the unceremonious[92] leave of an old friend.

In a few hours the royal pair were informed[93], that as long as they would do[94] the king the favour to accept of[95] his hospitality[96], forty-five thousand pounds sterling a-year would be paid them from[97] his treasury.[98] Ten thousand pounds sterling were sent for outfit.[99] The liberality[100] of Louis, however, was much less rare and admirable than the exquisite[101] delicacy[102] with which he laboured[103] to soothe[104] the feelings of his guests, and to lighten the almost intolerable[105] weight of the obligations[106] which he laid upon[107] them. He who had hitherto[108], on[109] all questions of[110] precedence[111], been sensitive[112], litigious[113],

---

[77] ſorgfältig. [78] verzieren. [79] Hofdiener. [80] einhändigen. [81] prächtig. [82] Käſtchen. [83] Gemach, *n.* [84] bewillkommen. [85] Verbannt. [86] ſich verneigen. [87] tief. [88] aufheben. [89] express by gern. [90] erſuchen. [91] Pflanzung. [92] *say*, without ceremony—leave, ohne Umſtände, Abſchied. [93] benachrichtigen. [94] erzeigen. [95] annehmen. [96] Gaſtfreundſchaft. [97] aus. [98] Schatzkammer, *f.* [99] Einrichtung, with the Pron. Possessive. [100] Freigebigkeit. [101] ausnehmend. [102] Zartheit. [103] ſich bemühen. [104] beſänftigen. [105] unerträglich. [106] Verpflichtung. [107] auflegen, with Dat. [108] bisher. [109] bei. [110] in Rückſicht auf. [111] Vortritt, with Def. Article. [112] empfindlich. [113] ſtreitſüchtig.

insolent[114], who had been more than once ready[115] to plunge Europe into war rather than concede[116] the most frivolous[117] point of etiquette[118], was now punctilious[119], indeed[120], but punctilious for[121] his unfortunate friends against himself. He gave orders that Mary should receive all the marks[122] of respect that had ever been paid[123] to his own deceased[124] wife.[125]

A question was raised, whether the princes of[126] the house of Bourbon were entitled[127] to be indulged with[128] chairs in the presence of the queen. Such trifles[129] were serious matters[130] at[131] the old court of France. There were[132] precedents[133] on[134] both sides; but Louis decided the point against his own blood. Some ladies of illustrious[135] rank omitted the ceremony[136] of kissing the hem[137] of Mary's robe.[138] Louis remarked the omission, and noticed it in[139] such a voice and with such a look that the whole peerage[140] was ever after ready to kiss her shoe.[141]

When Esther, just written by Racine, was acted[142] at Saint Cyr, Mary had the seat of honour.[143] James was at her right hand. Louis modestly placed himself on her left. Nay, he was well pleased[144], that, in his own palace, an outcast[145] living on[146] his bounty[147] should assume[148] the title of[149] king of France, quarter[150] the lilies[151] with the English lions, and should, as king of France, dress[152] in violet[153] on days of court mourning.[154] — *Macaulay's History of England.*

---

[114] trotzig. [115] bereit. [116] nachgeben, Inf.. [117] unbedeutend. [118] Hofſitte, *f.* [119] ängſtlich. [120] in Wahrheit. [121] zum Vortheil. [122] Zeichen, *n.* [123] erweiſen. [124] verſtorben. [125] Gattin. [126] aus. [127] ein Recht haben, and use Subj. [128] *say*, to receive. [129] Kleinigkeit. [130] Sache, *f.* [131] an. [132] es findet ſich. [133] früheres Beiſpiel. [134] für. [135] höchſt. [136] Förmlichkeit. [137] Saum, *m.* [138] Gewand, *n.* [139] mit. [140] Adel, *m.* [141] Schuh, *m.* [142] aufführen. [143] Ehrenſitz. [144] es wohl zufrieden ſein. [145] Verwieſen, treated as Sub. [146] von. [147] Mildthätigkeit. [148] ſich anmaßen. [149] *say*, of a. [150] im Wappen führen. [151] Lilie, *f.* [152] ſich kleiden. [153] veilchenblau. [154] Hoftrauer, *f.*

XXXV. Sir Robert Walpole's Reply to Sir John St. Aubin's Speech for repealing the Septennial Act.

Mr. Chancellor of the Exchequer,—Though the question has been already so fully opposed, that there is no great occasion to say anything farther against it, yet I hope the house will indulge me in the liberty of giving some of those reasons which induce me to be against the motion. In general I must take notice, that the nature of our constitution seems to be very much mistaken by the gentlemen who have spoken in favour of this motion. It is certain that ours is a mixed government, and the perfection of our constitution consists in this, that the monarchical, aristocratical, and democratical forms of government are mixed and interwoven in ours, so as to give us all the advantages of each, without subjecting us to the dangers and inconveniences of either. The democratical form of government, which is the only one I have now occasion to take notice of, is liable to these inconveniences: that they are generally too tedious in their coming to any resolution, and seldom brisk and expeditious enough in carrying their resolutions into execution: that they are always wavering in their resolutions, and never steady in any of the measures they resolve to pursue; and that they are often involved in factions, seditions, and insurrections, which expose them to be made the tools, if not the prey, of their neighbours; therefore, in all the regulations we make, with respect to our constitution, we are to guard against running too much into that form of government which is properly called democratical; this was, in my opinion, the effect of the triennial law, and will again be the effect if ever it should be restored.

That triennial elections would make our government too tedious in their resolves, is evident; because, in such case,

no prudent administration would ever resolve upon any measure of consequence, till they had felt not only the pulse of the Parliament, but the pulse of the people; and the ministers of state would always labour under this disadvantage, that as secrets of state must not be immediately divulged, their enemies (and enemies they will always have) would have a handle for exposing their measures, and rendering them disagreeable to the people, and thereby carrying perhaps a new election against them, before they could have an opportunity of justifying their measures, by divulging those facts and circumstances, from whence the justice and wisdom of their measures would clearly appear.

Then, Sir, it is by experience well known, that what is called the populace of the country, are apt to be too much elated with success, and too much dejected with every misfortune; this makes them wavering in their opinions about affairs of state, and never long of the same mind: and as this house is chosen by the free and unbiassed voice of the public in general, if this choice were so often renewed, we might expect, that this house would be as wavering and as unsteady as the people usually are: and it being impossible to carry on the public affairs of the nation, without the concurrence of this house, the ministers would always be obliged to comply, and consequently would be obliged to change their measures as often as the people changed their minds.

With septennial Parliaments, Sir, we are not exposed to either of these misfortunes, because, if the ministers, after having felt the pulse of the Parliament, which they can always soon do, resolve upon any measures, they have generally time enough, before the new election comes on, to give the people proper information, in order to show them the justice and the wisdom of the measures they have pursued; and if the people should at any time be too much

elated, or too much dejected, or should without a cause change their minds, those at the helm of affairs have time to set them right before a new election comes on.

As to faction and sedition, Sir, I will grant, that in monarchical and aristocratical governments it generally arises from violence and oppression; but in democratical governments it always arises from the people having too great a share in the government; for in all countries, and in all governments, there always will be many factious and unquiet spirits, who can never be at rest either in power or out of power; when in power, they are never easy, unless every man submits entirely to their direction; and when out of power, they are always working and intriguing against those that are in, without any regard to justice or to the interest of their country: in popular governments such men have too much game, they have too many opportunities for working upon and corrupting the minds of the people, in order to give them a bad impression of, and to raise discontents against those that have the management of the public affairs for the time; and these discontents often break out into seditions and insurrections. This, Sir, would, in my opinion, be our misfortune, if our Parliaments were either annual or triennial: by such frequent elections, there would be so much power thrown into the hands of the people, as would destroy that equal mixture, which is the beauty of our constitution: in short, our government would really become a democratical government, and might from thence very probably diverge into a tyrannical. Therefore, in order to preserve our constitution, in order to prevent our falling under tyranny and arbitrary power, we ought to preserve that law, which I really think has brought our constitution to a more equal mixture, and consequently to greater perfection than it was ever in before that law took place.

XXXVI. On Sincerity.

Truth and sincerity have all the advantages of appearance, and many more. If the show of anything be good for anything, I am sure the reality is better; for why does any man dissemble, or seem to be what he is not, but because he thinks it good to have the qualities he pretends to? For to counterfeit and to dissemble is to put on the appearance of some real excellency. Now the best way for a man to seem to be anything, is really to be what he would seem to be. Besides, it is often as troublesome to support the pretence of a good quality as to have it; and if a man have it not, it is most likely he will be discovered to want it, and then all his labour to seem to have it is lost. There is something unnatural in painting, which a skilful eye will easily discern from native beauty and complexion.

It is hard to personate and act a part long; for where truth is not at the bottom, nature will always be endeavouring to return, and will betray itself at one time or other. Therefore if any man think it convenient to seem good, let him be so indeed, and then his goodness will appear to every one's satisfaction; for truth is convincing, and carries its own light and evidence along with it, and will not only commend us to every man's conscience, but, which is much more, to God, who searcheth our hearts. So that upon all accounts sincerity is true wisdom. Particularly as to the affairs of this world, integrity hath many advantages over all the artificial modes of dissimulation and deceit. It is much the plainer and easier, much the safer and more secure way of dealing in the world; it has less of trouble and difficulty, of entanglement and perplexity, of danger and hazard in it; it is the shortest and nearest way to our end, carrying us thither in a straight line, and will hold out and last longest. The arts of deceit and cunning continually grow weaker and less

effectual and serviceable to those that practise them; whereas integrity gains strength by use, and the more and longer any man practiseth it, the greater service it does him, by confirming his reputation, and encouraging those with whom he hath to do, to repose the greatest confidence in him, which is an unspeakable advantage in business and the affairs of life.

A dissembler must always be upon his guard, and watch himself carefully, that he do not contradict his own pretensions; for he acts an unnatural part, and therefore must put a continual force and restraint upon himself. Whereas he that acts sincerely hath the easiest task in the world; because he follows nature, and so is put to no trouble and care about his words and actions; he needs not invent any pretences beforehand, nor make excuses afterwards, for anything he hath said or done.

But insincerity is very troublesome to manage; a hypocrite hath so many things to attend to, as make his life a very perplexed and intricate thing. A liar hath need of a good memory lest he contradict at one time what he said at another; but truth is always consistent with itself, and needs nothing to help it out; it is always near at hand, and sits upon our lips, whereas a lie is troublesome, and needs a great many more to make it good.

Add to all this, that sincerity is the most compendious wisdom, and an excellent instrument for the speedy dispatch of business. It creates confidence in those we have to deal with, saves the labour of many inquiries, and brings things to an issue in few words. It is like travelling in a plain beaten road, which commonly brings a man sooner to his journey's end than bye-ways, in which men often lose themselves. In a word, whatsoever convenience may be thought to be in falsehood and dissimulation, it is soon over; but the inconvenience of it is perpetual, because it brings a man under an everlasting jealousy and suspicion,

so that he is not believed when he speaks truth, nor trusted when perhaps he means honestly. When a man hath once forfeited the reputation of his integrity, nothing will then serve his turn, neither truth nor falsehood.

Indeed, if a man were only to deal in the world for a day, and should never have occasion to converse more with mankind, never more need their good opinion or good word, it were then no great matter (as far as respects the affairs of this world) if he spent his reputation all at once, and ventured it at one throw. But if he be to continue in the world, and would have the advantage of reputation whilst he is in it, let him make use of truth and sincerity in all his words and actions, for nothing but this will hold out to the end. All other arts may fail, but truth and integrity will carry a man through, and bear him out to the last.—*Tillotson.*

Extract

FROM

D. NUTT'S SELECT CATALOGUE

OF

GERMAN BOOKS

(which can be had gratis).

*** *The majority of the Books in this List are kept in stock; but when this is not the case, they can always be supplied by order in the course of two or three weeks.*

	£	s.	d.
ANDERSEN'S (H. C.) Gesammelte Werke, 35 vols. 12mo.			
Vol. 1-2. Märchen meines Lebens (Life)	0	3	0
,, 3-5. Der Improvisator	0	4	6
,, 6-8. O. Z. Roman	0	4	6
,, 9-11. Nur ein Geiger	0	4	6
12-15. Gesammelte Märchen (Fairy Tales)	0	6	0
,, 16. Bilderbuch ohne Bilder	0	1	6
,, 17. Harzreise u. Sächs. Schweiz	0	1	6
18-21. Dichters Bazar	0	6	0
22-25. Dramatische Werke	0	6	0
26-28. Gedichte	0	4	6
29-30. Ahasverus	0	3	0
,, 31. Neue Märchen	0	1	6
32-35. Die zwei Baronessen	0	6	0
——— Ausg. Werke, 5 vols. 8vo *Leipzig*, 1849	1	0	0
——— ——— Bilderbuch ohne Bilder, *diamond edit., fancy cloth, gilt edges* *Ib.* 1850	0	3	0
——— Gesammelte Märchen. With 112 Illustrations by PEDERSEN and KRETZSCHMAR. Square 12mo, 2d edition *Ib.* 1849	0	9	0
ARCHENHOLTZ (J. W.), Geschichte des siebenjähr. Krieges, 2 vols. in one, 8vo, *portrait and map* *Berlin*, 1840	0	5	6
AUERBACH (B.), Schwarzwälder Dorfgeschichten, 4th edit. 12mo, 82 *woodcuts* *Mannheim*, 1848	0	5	0
——— Neue Folge, 12mo *Ib.* 1849	0	4	0
——— Deutsche Abende, 24mo *Ib.* 1851	0	3	6
BECKER'S (K. F.) Weltgeschichte, 7te Auflage, 14 vols. 8vo 1843	1	18	0

£ s. d.

BIBLIOTHEK der Classiker des Auslandes, mit biographisch-histor. Einleitungen, vol. 1-69, 12mo *Leipzig*, 1841-49

BOCCACCIO's Decameron, von WITTE, 3 vols. 9*s*.
BREMER, Die Nachbarn, 2 vols. 2*s*. 6*d*.
——— Die Töchter des Präsidenten, 1*s*. 6*d*.
——— Nina, 2 vols. 2*s*. 6*d*.
——— Das Haus, 2 vols. 2*s*. 6*d*.
——— Familie H., 1*s*. 6*d*.
——— Kleine Erzählungen, 1*s*. 6*d*.
——— Streit und Friede, 1*s*. 6*d*.
——— Ein Tagebuch, 2 vols. 2*s*. 6*d*.
——— In Dalekarlien, 2 vols. 2*s*. 6*d*.
——— Sommerreise, 2 vols. 2*s*. 6*d*.
——— Geschwisterleben, 3 v. 3*s*. 6*d*.
CALDERON's Schauspiele, von MARTIN, 3 vols. 10*s*. 6*d*.
CELESTINE, von A. von BUELOW, 4*s*. 6*d*.
DANTE, Neues Leben, von FÖRSTER, 2*s*. 6*d*.
——— Lyrische Gedichte, von WITTE, 2 vols. 8*s*. 6*d*.
——— Göttliche Comödie, von KANNEGIESSER, 3 vols. 9*s*.
——— Prosaiche Schriften, von demselben, 2 vols. 7*s*.
FOSCOLO, Letzte Briefe des Jac. Ortis, von LAUTSCH, 3*s*. 6*d*.
GOMEZ, Inez de Castro, von WITTICH, 2*s*. 6*d*.
GUSTAV III. von Schweden, Schauspiele, von EICHEL, 4*s*. 6*d*.
HERCULANO, Eurich der Priester der Gothen, 2*s*. 6*d*.
HÖFER, Indische Gedichte, 2 vols. 7*s*.
HITOPADESA. A. d. Sanscrit von M. MUELLER, 2*s*. 6*d*.
HOLBERG, Niels Klims Wallfahrt in die Unterwelt, von WOLF, 3*s*. 6*d*.
MACCHIAVELLI, Florentin. Geschichte von REUMONT, 2 vols. 10*s*. 6*d*.
PREVOST, Gesch. der Manon Lescaut, von BUELOW, 2*s*. 6*d*.
SADI's Rosengarten, 4*s*. 6*d*.
SJÖBERG, Gedichte, 2*s*. 6*d*.
SOMADEVA's Märchensammlung. A. d. Sanscrit, 2 vols. 6*s*.
STAEL, Delphine, 3 vols. 7*s*.
SUE, Ewige Jude, 11 vols. 13*s*.
TASSO, Lyrische Gedichte, von FÖRSTER, 2 vols. 5*s*. 6*d*.
——— Das befreite Jerusalem, von STRECKFUSS, 2 vols. 3*s*. 6*d*.
TASSONI, Der geraubte Eimer, 4*s*. 6*d*.
VOLTAIRE, Henriade, 3*s*. 6*d*.

BREMER, see *above*.

BRIEFWECHSEL zwischen Schiller u. Göthe, 6 vols. 12mo . 1 4 0
——— zwischen Schiller u. Körner, 4 vols. 12mo *Berlin*, 1848 0 14 0
——— Göthe's mit einem Kinde, 3 vols. 8vo 1837 0 18 0
——— zwischen Göthe und Zelter, 6 vols. 8vo . 2 2 0
BUNSEN's Allgemeines Evangelisches Gebet- und Gesangbuch, 8vo . . . . . *Hamburg*, 1846 0 9 0
BUERGER's Sämmtliche Werke, imp. 8vo *Göttingen*, 1836 0 9 0
——— 4 vols. 12mo *Ib.* 1844-45 0 10 6
——— Gedichte, 8vo, *portrait* . . . *Ib.* 1841 0 5 6
CHAMISSO (A. VON), Werke u. Leben von HITZIG, 6 vols. 12mo . . . . . *Leipzig*, 1842 0 13 6
——— 10th edition, 12mo *Ib.* 1848 0 7 0
——— Peter Schlemihl, 8vo, *woodcuts* 1840 0 2 0
CONVERSATIONSLEXICON, 9th edition, 15 vols. 8vo . *Ib.* 3 10 0
Copies are kept in stock, neatly half-bound and paper sized . 4 14 6
A new edition, the 10th, of the Conv. Lexicon is in progress, a part published every 14 days, price 8*d*.
——— Die Gegenwart. Supplement zu allen Ausgaben des Conversationslexicons, 8vo, parts 1-60 . . . . . *Ib.* 1848-51. Each part 0 0 8
DAHLMANN (F. C.), Geschichte der englischen Revolution, 5th edition, 8vo, *portrait of Hampden, cloth* . *Ib.* 0 7 0
——— Geschichte der französ. Revolution bis auf die Stiftung der Republik. 2d edit. 8vo, *portrait of Mirabeau, cloth* . . . . . *Ib.* 1847 0 8 0

	£	s.	d.
EBERHARD (A. G), Hannchen und die Küchlein, new edit. 12mo, 10 *plates by Otto Spekter* *Leipzig*, 1846	0	4	6
ENGEL (J. J.), Sämmtliche Schriften, 12 vols. 12mo *Berl.*	0	18	0
——— Herr Lorenz Stark, 12mo . *Ib.* 1845	0	2	6
ERLACH, Die Volkslieder der Deutschen, von der Mitte des 16ten bis in die erste Hälfte des 19ten Jahrhunderts, 5 vols. 8vo . . . . . *Frankfurt*, 1834-36	0	18	0
FINK (G. W.), Musikalischer Hausschatz der Deutschen. Eine Sammlung von 1000 Liedern und Gesängen, mit Singweisen und Klavierbegleitung, imp. 8vo *Leipzig*	0	14	0
FOUQUE (F. DE LA MOTTE), Ausgewählte Werke, 12 vols. 12mo . . . . . *Halle*, 1841	0	16	0
——— Der Zauberring, 3 vols. 12mo *Ib.*	0	5	6
——— Jahreszeiten, square 18mo, *cloth boards* . . . . . *London*, 1845	0	7	6
Each portion separately in fancy cloth boards: Undine, 3*s.* | Hauptleute, 2*s.* | Sintram, 3*s.* 6*d.* | Aslauga, 2*s.*			
FREILIGRATH (F.), Gedichte, 10th edition, 8vo, *portrait* *Stuttgart*, 1848	0	9	0
GELLERT'S (C. F.) Sämmtliche Werke, 10 vols. 16mo *Leipzig*	0	14	0
——— Fabeln, 13 plates, roy. 8vo *Ib.* 1844	0	6	0
——— without plates, 8vo *Ib.* 1836	0	2	0
GERVINUS, Geschichte der poetischen Nationalliteratur der Deutschen, 3d edition, 5 vols. 8vo *Leipzig*, 1846-49	2	17	0
Vols. 1-3. Von den ersten Spuren deutscher Dichtung bis auf Gottsched	1	10	0
,, 4, 5. Neuere Geschichte	1	7	6
——— Gesammelte kleine (histor.) Schriften. *Ib.*	0	8	0
——— Shakespeare, 4 vols. 8vo . . . 1850	1	12	0
GFRÖRER, Gustav Adolf von Schweden u. seine Zeit, 2d edit. 8vo . . . . . *Ib.* 1844-45	0	13	0
GÖDEKE (K.), Eilf Bücher deutscher Dichtung von Seb. Brant bis auf die Gegenwart, 2 parts, 8vo *Ib.* 1849	0	12	0
GOETHE'S Sämmtliche Werke, 3 vols. imp. 8vo *Stuttgart*, 1845-47	3	0	0
Vol. 3 may be had separately to complete sets . . .	1	4	0
A series of 8 beautifully executed line engravings, to illustrate this edition, separately . . .	0	12	0
——— 40 vols. square 12mo *Ib.*	3	0	0
A series of 32 spirited outline engravings, from Kaulbach's designs, to illustrate this edition . . .	0	10	6
A new and very beautifully printed edition of Goethe's Works is now in course of publication, to be completed in 30 vols., of which 8 are published, price 3s. 6d. each; but subscribers paying for the whole work in advance may obtain it for 4l. 4s.			
——— Gedichte, 2 vols. 8vo . . . *Ib.* 1845	0	8	0
——— 2 vols. 18mo, *diamond edition* 1845	0	8	0
——— Auswahl für Schule und Haus, von SCHÆFER, 2 vols. 12mo . . . . *Ib.* 1846	0	4	0

		£	s.	d.
GOETHE'S Faust, 2 parts in 1 vol. 12mo	*Stuttgart*, 1848	0	4	0
——— *Part I. only*, very neatly printed, with Notes by Dr. Tiarks, *bound in cloth*	*London*, 1850	0	3	6
——— *Part I. only, cloth* . .	*Ib.* 1841	0	2	6
——— Aus meinem Leben. Dichtung und Wahrheit, 3 vols. 8vo	*Stuttgart*	0	9	0
——— 3 vols. 12mo . .	*Ib.*	0	6	0
——— Italienische Reise, 2 vols. 12mo . .	*Ib.*	0	6	0
——— Wilhelm Meisters Lehrjahre, 2 vols. 8vo	*Ib.*	0	10	0
——— Wanderjahre, 1 vol. 8vo	*Ib.*	0	8	0
The two works printed together, in 1 thin vol. imp. 8vo, double columns, small type, published at Paris .		0	6	0
——— Werthers Leiden, 16mo .	*Leipzig*, 1834	0	2	6
——— Hermann u. Dorothea .	*Stuttgart*, 1847	0	2	0
——— 12mo, *cloth*	*London*, 1841	0	2	0
——— Theater, in various editions, neatly printed, and mostly uniform:				

Egmont	0	1	6	Iphigenie auf Tauris . .	0	1	0
Goetz von Berlichingen .	0	1	6	Torquato Tasso . . .	0	2	0

&c. &c.

Neatly bound in cloth at 6*d.* per volume extra.

——— Reinecke Fuchs, in 12 Gesängen, 12mo	*Stuttg.*	0	3	0
——— Prosa. Auswahl für Schule und Haus, herausgegeben von SCHÆFER, 12mo . .	*Ib.* 1846	0	7	0
GRILLPARZER (F.), Sappho Trauerspiel, 8vo	*Wien*, 1832	0	3	6
——— Die Ahnfrau, Trauerspiel, 8vo	1844	0	4	0
GRIMM (J.), Geschichte der deutschen Sprache, 2 vols. 8vo	*Leipzig*, 1849	1	4	0
——— (W.), Deutsche Heldensage, 8vo	*Berlin*, 1816	0	5	0
——— (Gebrüder), Kinder- u. Hausmährchen, kleine Ausgabe, 16mo, *cloth*	*Ib.* 1850	0	4	0
——— Grosse Ausgabe, 2 vols. 12mo	*Göttingen*, 1851	0	8	0
——— (A. L.), 5 Märchen aus Tausend und einer Nacht, new edition, 12mo	*London*, 1851	0	3	6
GRUEN (ANASTASIUS), Gedichte, 7th edit. 8vo	*Leipz.* 1847	0	7	0
HAHN-HAHN (Gräfin IDA), Aus der Gesellschaft. Gesammt-Ausgabe der Romane, 8 vols. sq. 12mo	*Berlin*, 1845	1	12	0

Or separately as follows:

Ilda Schönholm, 16mo .	0	5	6	Ulrich, 2 vols. 16mo .	0	13	6
Der Rechte, 16mo . .	0	7	0	Sigismund Forster, 16mo	0	6	6
Gräfin Faustine, 16mo .	0	7	0	Cecil, 2 vols. 16mo . .	0	14	0

——— Zwei Frauen. Ein Roman. 12mo	*Ib.* 1845	0	10	0
——— Clelia Conti, 12mo	*Ib.* 1846	0	8	0
——— Sibylle. Eine Selbstbiographie. 2 vols. 12mo	*Ib.* 1846	0	15	0
——— Levin. Ein Roman. 2 vols. 12mo	*Ib.* 1848	0	15	0
——— Jenseits der Berge (Italy). 2 vols. 12mo	*Leipzig*, 1845	0	9	0

	£	s.	d.
HAHN-HAHN (Gräfin IDA), Reisebriefe (Spain), 2 vols. 12mo *Berlin*, 1841	0	16	0
——— Erinnerungen an Frankreich, 2 vols. 12mo . . . . . *Ib.* 1842	0	10	6
——— Reiseversuch im Norden (Sweden), 12mo . . . . . *Ib.* 1843	0	5	6
HALM (F.), Griseldis, dramatisches Gedicht, 8vo. *Wien*, 1845	0	4	0
——— Der Sohn der Wildniss, 8vo . . *Ib.* 1845	0	5	6
——— Gedichte, 12mo . . . . *Stuttgart*, 1850	0	7	0
HAUFF'S Sämmtliche Werke, a new and handsomely printed edition, 10 vols. 8vo, *plates* . . . *Ib.* 1840	1	1	0
——— Mährchen, 6th edition, 6 *plates by Sonderland*, 12mo . . . . . *Ib.* 1842	0	8	0
——— Cheap edition, 12mo . . *Ib.*	0	2	0
——— Das kalte Herz, new edit. with Notes by Apel, 12mo, *cloth boards* . . . . . *London*, 1844	0	3	0
HEBEL'S Allemannische Gedichte für Freunde ländlicher Natur und Sitten. In's Hochdeutsche übertragen von R. REINICK, mit Bildern nach Zeichnungen von L. RICHTER, 8vo . . . . . *Leipz.* 1851	0	6	0
HERDER'S Sämmtliche Werke, 60 vols. 16mo. *Stuttg.* 1827-30	3	10	0
——— Ausgewählte Werke, in 1 vol. imp. 8vo. *Ib.* 1844	1	12	0
HEINE (H.), Reisebilder, 4 vols. 12mo. *Hamburg*, 1834-43	1	8	0
——— Buch der Lieder, 7th edition, 8vo. *Ib.* 1849	0	5	6
HERWEGH (G.), Gedichte eines Lebendigen, new edition, 2 parts in 1 vol. 8vo . . . . *Zürich*, 1846	0	5	6
HOFFMANN (E. T. A.), Sämmtliche Schriften, in 1 vol. imp. 8vo . . . . . *Paris*, 1847	1	1	0
——— Ausgewählte Schriften, 15 vols. 8vo *Berlin*, 1827-38	2	5	0
HUMBOLDT (ALEX. VON), Kosmos, 2 vols. 8vo *Stuttgart*	1	1	0
——— ——— ——— Vol. 3, part 1. 8vo. 1850	0	6	6
——— ——— Ansichten der Natur, 2 vols. 12mo *Ib.* 1849	0	10	6
——— (W. VON), Gesammelte Werke, vols. 1 to 6, 8vo . . . . . *Berlin*	2	5	6
——— Briefe an eine Freundin, 4th edition, 2 vols. 8vo . . . . . *Leipz.* 1850	0	16	0
JACOBS (F.), Schule der Frauen, 7 vols. 12mo *Ib.* 1828	1	1	0
Rosaliens Nachlass, 2 vols.	0	7	0
Erinnerungen aus d. Leben d. Pfarrerin von Mainau . .	0	3	6
Odo u. Amande, 2 vols.	0	7	0
Renate an ihre Tochter	0	3	6
Die beiden Marien	0	3	6
JEAN PAUL'S Sämmtliche Werke, new edit. 33 vols. 8vo *Ib.*	4	4	0
——— 4 vols. imp. 8vo . . . . . *Paris*	2	5	0
——— Ausgewählte Werke, 16 vols. 8vo . . .	1	12	0
JUGEND-ALBUM, Blätter für den häuslichen Kreis, unter Mitwirkung von G. SCHWAB, herausg. von E. VON NIENDORF, royal 8mo, *coloured plates, and music.* *Yearly* 12 *Nos.*	0	12	0

	£	s.	d.
JUNG'S (genannt STILLING) Sämmtliche Werke, new edit. 12 vols. 16mo . . . . *Stuttgart*, 1841, 42	2	16	0
Vol. 1. Biographie. Portrait	0	4	0
2. Scenen aus dem Geisterreiche, Chrysäon, Schatzkästlein	0	4	0
3. Siegesgeschichte der christl. Religion	0	4	0
4-5. Heimweh nebst Schlüssel. Die grosse Panacee. Theodicee. Schleuder eines Hirtenknaben. . . .	0	8	0
6-8. Theobald. Theorie der Geisterkunde. Der graue Mann	0	12	0
9. Florentin von Fahlendorn. Herr von Morgenthau. Theod. von Linden	0	7	0
10, 11. Der christliche Menschenfreund und dessen biblische Erzählungen. Ueber den Revolutionsgeist. Vertheidigung	0	14	0
12. Erzählungen. Gedichte. Taschenbuchaufsätze .	0	4	0
KINKEL'S (G.) Otto der Schütz. Eine rhein. Geschichte in 12 Abenteuern. 3d edit. 24mo, *fancy boards, gilt edges* *Ib.* 1850	0	3	6
——— Gedichte, 24mo, *fancy boards, gilt edges.* 1850			
KNIGGE (A. F.), Ueber den Umgang mit Menschen, 12th edition, 8vo . . . . . *Ib.* 1844	0	5	0
KÖRNER'S Sämmtliche Werke, 4th edition, 1 vol. imp. 8vo	0	10	6
——— 4 vols. 12mo *Berlin*, 1847	0	12	0
——— Leyer und Schwerdt. (Gedichte.) 12mo 1834	0	2	0
KOTZEBUE (A. VON), Theater, new edit. 40 vols. sq. 12mo	3	0	0

The most popular plays are:

Kreuzfahrer . .	0	2	0	Die beiden Klingsberge .	0	2	0
Deutsche Kleinstädter .	0	1	6	Pachter Feldkümmel . .	0	2	0
Eduard in Schottland . .	0	1	6	Pagenstreiche . . .	0	2	6
Des Hasses u. d. Liebe Rache	0	1	6	Wirrwarr	0	2	0
Menschenhass und Reue .	0	2	0	Kind der Liebe . . .	0	2	0

and all the others at similar prices.

KRUMMACHER (F.A.), Parabeln, 2 vols. in 1, 12mo, *neatly bound in cloth* . . . . . *Essen*, 1849	0	7	0
——— (F. W.), Elisa, 3 vols. 12mo. *Elberfeld*, 1845	0	13	6
——— Elias der Thisbiter, 1 vol. 8vo, *fancy cloth* 1846	0	11	0
LESSING'S Sämmtliche Werke, 13 vols. 8vo, *plates* *Ib.* 1840	2	8	0
——— new edit. 10 vols. 12mo .	0	18	0
——— 1 vol. imp. 8vo . .	0	18	0
——— Literatur und Theologie, 11 vols. 8vo. *Carlsruhe*	1	1	0
——— Poesie und Kunst, 6 vols. 8vo	0	12	0
——— Briefwechsel, 4 vols. 8vo	0	8	0

Nathan der Weise, 12mo, sewed, 1*s.* 6*d.*	Minna von Barnhelm, 12mo, 1*s.*
Emilia Galotti, do. do. 1*s.*	Fabeln, 12mo, 1*s.* 6*d.*

——— Laocoon, 8vo	0	3	6
LUTHER'S Geistliche Lieder, herausgegeben von WACKERNAGEL. Prachtausgabe mit Randzeichnungen, 4to, *red morocco, gilt edges* . . . *Stuttgart*, 1849	0	13	0
——— 12mo, *very handsomely printed with ornamented borders, and bound in fancy cloth* . . *London*	0	4	0

	£	s.	d.
MUENCHHAUSEN (FREIHERR VON), Wunderbare Reisen und Abenteuer zu Wasser und zu Lande, new edit. 18mo, 16 *plates by Hosemann* . . *Göttingen*, 1849	0	2	0
MUSÆUS, Volksmährchen, 4 vols. 18mo . *Leipzig*, 1849	0	6	0
——— 8vo . . *Paris*, 1840	0	5	0
——— Illust. edition, imp. 8vo *Leipzig*	0	18	0
NIEBUHR, Geschichte des Zeitalters der Revolution, 2 vols. 8vo . . . . . *Hamburg*, 1845	0	16	0
——— Lebensnachrichten aus Briefen desselben und Erinnerungen seiner Freunde, 3 vols. 8vo . . .	1	11	6
NOVALIS' Schriften, herausgegeben von TIECK, SCHLEGEL und BUELOW, 3 vols. 8vo . . . *Berlin*, 1837–47	0	11	0
——— Vol. 3 separately .	0	5	0
——— Vols. 1 and 2 in 1 vol. 8vo *Paris*, 1840	0	5	0
NOVELLENKRANZ. Sammlung der vorzüglichsten deutschen Erzählungen und Novellen, 8vo . . *Ib.* 1840	0	5	0
RANKE (L.), Fürsten und Völker von Südeuropa im 16ten und 17ten Jahrhundert, 8vo, vol. 1, 2d edit. *Berlin*	0	10	0
——— Vols. 2–4.			
Die römischen Päbste, ihre Kirche und ihr Staat im 16ten und 17ten Jahrhundert, 3 vols. 8vo *Ib.* 1845	1	11	6
——— Deutsche Geschichte im Zeitalter der Reformation, 6 vols. 8vo . . . . *Ib.* 1842–47	3	3	0
——— Neun Bücher preussischer Geschichte, 3 vols. 8vo . . . . . *Ib.* 1848	1	1	0
——— Die Serbische Revolution, 2d edition, 8vo *Ib.* 1844	0	7	0
RAU (H.), Geschichte des deutschen Volkes für das deutsche Volk, 12mo . . . . *Heidelberg*, 1851	0	4	0
RAUMER (FR. VON), Geschichte der Hohenstaufen, 2d edition, 6 vols. 8vo . . . . *Ib.* 1840-43	2	2	0
RELLSTAB (L.), 1812. Ein historischer Roman, 4 vols. 8vo *Leipzig*	0	18	0
RETZSCH (MOR.), Outline Illustrations of Shakespeare's Plays. A new and cheaper edition, from the original plates, with explanations in English and German. 100 plates in a portfolio, oblong 4to . *Ib.* 1847	1	11	6

Contents: Hamlet, Macbeth, Romeo and Juliet, Lear, Tempest, Othello, Merry Wives of Windsor, Henry IV.

Or separately, original edition, 4to, boards:

Hamlet	0	18	0	Tempest	0	18	0
Macbeth	0	18	0	Merry Wives . . .	0	8	0
Romeo and Juliet . .	0	10	0	Othello	0	18	0
King Lear	0	8	0	Henry IV., Part I. . .	0	18	0

——— Umrisse zu Schiller's Lied von der Glocke, 43 *plates*, 4to . . . *Stuttgart*, 1833	0	15	0
——— Kampf mit dem Drachen, 16 *plates*, 4to . . . . . *Ib.* 1825	0	10	0
——— Pegasus im Joche, 12 *plates*, 4to . . . . . *Ib.* 1833	0	7	6

	£	s.	d.
RETZSCH (MOR.), Umrisse zu Fridolin, 8 *plates*, 4to *Stutt.*	0	5	0
——— Goethe's Faust, 2 parts, 40 *plates*, 4to *Ib.* 1836	0	15	0
——— Bürger's Balladen (Leonore etc.) 15 *plates*, 4to . . . . . *Leipzig*, 1840	0	14	0
——— Der Schachspieler (Chess-player), 1 *plate* *Ib.*	0	5	0
——— The Fight of Light and Darkness, 5 *plates*, 4to *Ib.* 1846	0	7	6
——— Phantasien und Wahrheiten, 4to . *Ib.* 1838	0	7	0
RUECKERT (F.), Gesammelte Gedichte, 6 vols. 8vo. *Frankf.*	1	4	0
——— Gedichte (Auswahl des Verfassers), 8vo *Ib.* 1847	0	7	0
SCHILLER'S (FR. VON) Sämmtliche Werke, 10 vols. 8vo *Stuttgart*, 1844	1	10	0
A series of 10 *beautifully engraved steel plates to illustrate this edition*	0	4	6
——— 12 vols. sq. 12mo *Ib.* 1839	0	18	0
A series of 24 *neatly executed woodcuts to illustrate this edition*	0	3	0
——— 1 vol. imp. 8vo, *portrait.* *Ib.* 1840	1	1	0

The following works separately, all uniformly and neatly printed in 12mo, sewed; or in cloth at 6d. per vol. extra.

Braut von Messina	.	.	0	1	6	Macbeth	.	.	.	0	1	0
Don Carlos	.	.	.	0	3	0	Maria Stuart	.	.	0	2	0
Gedichte	.	.	.	0	3	6	Neffe als Onkel	.	.	0	1	0
Geisterseher	.	.	.	0	4	0	Der Parasit	.	.	0	1	0
Geschichte d. 30jähr. Krieges				0	3	0	Räuber	.	.	0	2	0
Jungfrau von Orleans	.	.	0	1	6	Wallenstein	.	.	0	3	0
Kabale und Liebe	.	.	0	2	0	Wilhelm Tell	.	.	0	1	6

——— Leben, verfasst aus den Erinnerungen der Familie, seinen Briefen und den Nachrichten Körner's (von C. VON WOLZOGEN) (uniform with the edition in 12 vols. sq. 12mo) . . . *Ib.* 1845	0	3	0
——— Don Carlos, 12mo, cloth. *London*	0	3	0
——— Geschichte des 30jährigen Krieges, 2 vols. 12mo, *cloth boards* . . . . . *Ib.*	0	4	0
——— Lied von der Glocke, with English translation on the opposite page, *handsomely printed and bound in fancy cloth, gilt edges*, 12mo . *Ib.*	0	2	0
—— HOFFMEISTER (K.), Schiller's Gedichte in allen Beziehungen erläutert, 5 vols. 12mo . *Stuttgart*, 1840	0	10	6
——— Schiller's Leben, Geistentwickelung u. Werke im Zusammenhange, 5 vols. 8vo *Ib.* 1840-42	1	3	0
——— Schiller's Leben, herausg. von VIEHOFF, 3 vols. 16mo . . . . . *Ib.* 1846	0	6	0
SCHLEGEL'S (A. W. VON) Sämmtliche Werke, herausg. von BÖCKING, 12 vols. 12mo . . . *Leipzig*, 1845	2	2	0

Vols. 1, 2. Poetische Werke.
„ 3, 4. Poetische Uebersetzungen und Nachbildungen.
„ 5, 6. Vorlesungen über dramat. Kunst und Literatur.
„ 7-12. Vermischte und kritische Schriften.

	£	s.	d.
SCHLEGEL's (A. W. VON) Vorlesungen über dramatische Kunst und Literatur, besorgt von BÖCKING, 3d edition, 2 vols. 12mo . . . . . *Leipzig*, 1846	0	8	0
SCHLEGEL (F. VON) Sämmtliche Werke, new edition, 15 vols. 8vo . . . . . *Wien*, 1846-47	3	0	0
——— Geschichte der alten und neuen Literatur, herausg. von TH. MUNDT, 2 vols. 12mo *Berlin*	0	12	0
Vol. 1. SCHLEGEL's Geschichte der Literatur . . .	0	6	0
„ 2. MUNDT, Die Literatur der Gegenwart . . .	0	6	0
SCHLOSSER (F. C.), Weltgeschichte in zusammenhängender Erzählung, vols. 1-4, in 8 parts, 8vo *Frankf.* 1815-39	4	0	0
Vol. 1. Alte Geschichte bis zum Unterg. des weströmischen Reiches.	0	12	0
„ 2. Geschichte der Weltbegebenheiten vom Untergange des weströmischen Reiches bis auf den Tod Gregor's VII. 2 parts .	1	3	0
„ 3. Geschichte der Kreuzzüge bis auf die Zeiten der osmanischen Türken, 2 vols. in 3 parts	1	7	0
„ 4. Weltbegebenheiten des 14ten und 15ten Jahrhund. 2 vols. .	1	0	0
——— Weltgeschichte für das deutsche Volk, unter Mitwirkung des Verfassers bearbeitet von KRIEGK, 2d edition, 12 vols. in 60 parts, 8vo. (Vols. 1-9 published.) . . . . . *Ib.* 1846-50	2	0	0
——— Geschichte des 18ten Jahrhunderts und des 19ten bis zum Sturz des französischen Kaiserreichs, 7 vols. 8vo . . . . *Heidelberg*, 1842-48	4	10	0
Vols. 1, 2. Bis zum allgemeinen Frieden um 1763, 2 vols. 1843	1	7	0
„ 3. Bis auf den Anfang des Krieges zwischen Frankreich und England um 1778 . . 1843	0	13	6
„ 4. Bis auf den gescheiterten Versuch der Auflösung der französischen Parlamente um 1788 . 1844	0	11	0
„ 5. Bis April 1797 1845	0	13	6
„ 6, 7. Kaiserreich	1	5	6
Index	0	3	0
SCHUBERT (G. H. v.), Erzählungen, vols. 1-3, 8vo. *Erlangen*	0	18	0
——— Vol. 4, 8vo *Ib.* 1850	0	6	6
——— Reise in das Morgenland in den Jahren 1836 und 1837, 3 vols. 8vo . . . . *Ib.* 1840	1	11	6
——— Altes und Neues aus dem Gebiete der inneren Seelenkunde, 5 vols. 12mo *Leipzig*, 1849, *and Erlangen*, 1844	0	13	6
SCHWAB (G.), Fünf Bücher deutscher Lieder und Gedichte, 12mo . . . . . *Stuttgart*, 1848	0	6	0
SHAKESPEARE'S (W.) Dramatische Werke, übersetzt von A. W. SCHLEGEL und L. TIECK, 12 vols. 12mo. *Berlin*	1	1	0
STRAUSS (F.), Glockentöne. Erinnerungen aus dem Leben eines jungen Geistlichen. 7th edition, 3 parts, 12mo *Leipzig*, 1840	0	8	6
STIFTER (A.), Studien, 2d edition, 6 vols. 12mo, *plates* *Pesth*, 1847-50	2	8	0
Vol. 1. Der Condor. Feldblumen. Das Haidedorf . .	0	7	0
„ 2. Der Hochwald. Die Narrenburg	0	7	0
„ 3. Die Mappe meines Urgrossvaters (containing seven little novels and tales)	0	7	0

	£	s.	d.
STIFTER'S STUDIEN (*continued*):			
Vol. 4. Abdias. Das alte Siegel. Brigitta	0	7	0
,, 5. Der Hagestolz	0	10	0
,, 6. Zwei Schwestern. Der beschriebene Tännling .	0	10	0
STUDENTEN-, SOLDATEN- UND VOLKSLIEDER (157), alte und neue. Mit Bildern und Singweisen von RICHTER, MARSCHNER, POCCI, JUERGENS, 8vo *Leipzig*, 1848	0	4	0
Each part can be had separately: I. *at* 1*s.*, *and* II. *at* 1*s.* 6*d. each.*			
THIMM (F. L. J.), The Literature of Germany from its earliest period to the present time. 1 vol. 12mo. *London*	0	6	6
TIECK (L.), Schriften, 20 vols. 8vo . *Berlin*, 1829-46	4	4	0
——— Gesammelte Novellen, 14 vols. 12mo. *Breslau*	1	8	0
——— Vittoria Accorombona. Ein Roman, 2 vols. 12mo . . . . . *Ib.* 1841	0	8	0
——— Kritische Schriften. Zum ersten Male gesammelt, 2 vols. 12mo . . . . *Leipzig*, 1848	0	10	6
UHLAND'S (LUDWIG) Gedichte. 18th edition, *portrait*, 12mo . . . . . *Stuttgart*, 1847	0	10	0
——— nebst dessen LUDWIG DER BAIER, 8vo . . . . . *Paris*, 1840	0	6	0
VARNHAGEN V. ENSE (K. A.), Biographische Denkmale, 5 vols. 12mo . . . . . *Berlin*, 1845	1	10	0
WEBER (Dr. G.), Lehrbuch der Weltgeschichte mit Rücksicht auf Cultur, Literatur und Religionswesen, u. e. Abriss der deutschen Literaturgesch. &c., 2 vols. 8vo, 4th edition . . . . . *Leipzig*, 1850	0	11	6
——— Die Weltgeschichte in übersichtlicher Darstellung, 1 vol. 8vo . . . . *Ib.* 1851	0	4	0
WIELAND, Sämmtliche Werke, new edition, 36 vols. 12mo *Ib.* 1839-40	2	12	6
——— Poetische Werke, 1 vol. roy. 8vo *Paris*, 1839	0	10	0
ZSCHOKKE (H.), Novellen und Dichtungen, 8th edition, 10 vols. 12mo . . . . . *Aarau*, 1847	1	5	0
——— Stunden der Andacht, 10 vols. 12mo *Ib.* 1846	1	5	0

Selected List

OF THE BEST ELEMENTARY WORKS

for the Study of the German Language.

Grammars and Guides.

AHN (F.), New practical and easy Method of learning the German Language. 2 parts, 12mo, *cloth Leipsig*, 1850	0	3	6
APEL's German Grammar, founded upon the principles of Grimm, Becker, &c. 12mo, *cloth* . . 1848	0	5	0
——— Practical Introduction to the study of the German Language. 12mo, *cloth* 1842	0	5	6
BOILEAU on the Nature and Genius of the German Language. New edit. 12mo, *cloth boards* . . 1843	0	5	0
EGESTORFF's Concise German Grammar. 12mo 1846	0	4	0
EULENSTEIN's German Grammar. 3d and much improved edition, 12mo, *cloth boards* 1851	0	4	0
FEILING's Practical Guide to the Study and Grammar of the German Language. 12mo, *roan* . . 1845	0	5	0
FLOHR's (Madame A.) Course of Instruction in the German Language, founded on the most approved systems ; to which are added complete Extracts from the best German Authors, and their Biographies. 2d edit. 8vo, *cloth*	0	10	6
HEIMANN (DR. A.), 50 Lessons on the Elements of the German Language. 12mo, *cloth* . . . 1851	0	5	0
MARCUS (L.), Declension of the German Article, Adjective, Pronoun, and Noun. 8vo, *sewed* . . 1850	0	1	0
TIARKS' German and English Grammar. 12mo, *cloth bds.* 8th edition 1849	0	6	0
——— Introductory German Grammar, with Exercises and Reader. 12mo, 5th edition 1851	0	3	6
WENDEBORN's German Grammar. 11th edition, entirely remodelled by DR. A. HEIMANN. 12mo, *cloth* 1849	0	6	0
WITTICH's German Grammar. 3d edit. 12mo, *cloth* 1849	0	6	6

Reading-Books.

APEL (H.), Auswahl deutscher Gedichte von Haller bis jetzt. 12mo, *cloth* 1841	0	3	0
——— Märchen und Sagen. Eine Auswahl des Schönsten aus den Sammlungen von Grimm, H. Steffens, Gaal, Bechstein, Mailath und Schwab. 16mo, *cloth* 1838	0	4	0
BERGER (W.), Short Moral Tales in German. New edit. improved by DR. A. HEIMANN. 12mo, *cloth* 1850	0	4	0
ERMELER (C. F.), Deutsches Lesebuch ; or, German Reading-Book. 5th edition, adapted to the use of English students by DR. A. HEIMANN. 12mo, *cloth* 1849	0	5	0
FEILING (C. A.), Course of German Literature. 2d edition	0	6	0
FOUQUE'S Works, *see the preceding List.*			
GRIMM's Fünf Mährchen aus der Tausend und Einen Nacht. 12mo, *cloth* 1850	0	3	6

GÖTHE'S Iphigenie auf Tauris. Arranged for the use of the German student, with notes, vocabulary, and interlinear translation of the first scenes, by DR. M. BEHR, 12mo, *cloth* 1850 0 2 6

——— other Works, *see preceding List.*

HAUFF, Das kalte Herz. With a literal translation of the first half-dozen pages, explanation of idiomatic peculiarities, &c. by H. APEL. 12mo, *cloth boards* 1844 0 3 0

HEIMANN (A.), First German Reading-Book for English children and beginners in the study of the Language, with explanatory Notes. 12mo, *cloth* . . 1848 0 4 0

SCHILLER'S Plays, and other Works, *see preceding List.*

TIARKS' German Reader. 12mo, 6th edition . 1850 0 3 6

———Selection of Sacred German Poetry and Hymns. 12mo 0 2 0

TIECK (L.), Der Blaubart. Ein Märchen in 5 Acten. With grammatical notes by APEL. 12mo, *cloth* . 0 3 0

WITTICH'S German Tales for Beginners, arranged in a progressive order. 3d edition, 12mo, *cloth* . 1849 0 6 0

Exercises and Keys.

BOILEAU'S Key to the German Language. 12mo, *cloth* 1843 0 3 6

EULENSTEIN'S German Exercises. 12mo, *cloth* . 1844 0 2 6

TIARKS' German Exercises. 12mo, 7th edition . 1849 0 3 0

——— Key to ditto. 12mo, 7th edition . . 1849 0 2 6

WITTICH'S German for Beginners. 3d edition, 12mo, *cloth* 0 5 0

——— Key to ditto. 3d edition . . . 1847 0 7 0

Dialogues and Conversation-Books.

BÆDECKER'S Manual of Conversation, in English, German, French, and Italian. 12mo, 7th edit. *boards* 1848 0 3 6

BARTEL'S Modern Linguist; or, Conversations in English, French, and German; preceded by Rules for the Pronunciation of German, and followed by Models of Receipts, Bills of Exchange, Letters, Tables of the English, French, and German Coins, Weights, &c. Sq. 16mo, *neatly bound* 1850 0 3 6

The same Work, in English and German. 18mo . . . 0 2 6

CAMPAN'S Conversations of a Mother with her Daughter; or a Series of Dialogues arranged for English young Ladies; translated into German by HENRIETTE VEITH. 12mo, *bound in cloth* 1850 0 4 0

Dictionaries.

FLUEGEL'S German and English, and English and German Dictionary. New edition, adapted to the English student, with great additions and improvements, by C. A. FEILING and DR. A. HEIMANN. 4th edition, 2 vols. 8vo, *cloth boards* 1849 1 8 0

——— Abridged edition, for the use of Travellers and Schools. 4th edit. royal 18mo (760 pages) . 1849 0 7 6

For a complete List of Elementary Works see separate Catalogue.

Levey, Robson, and Franklyn, Great New Street, Fetter Lane.